



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

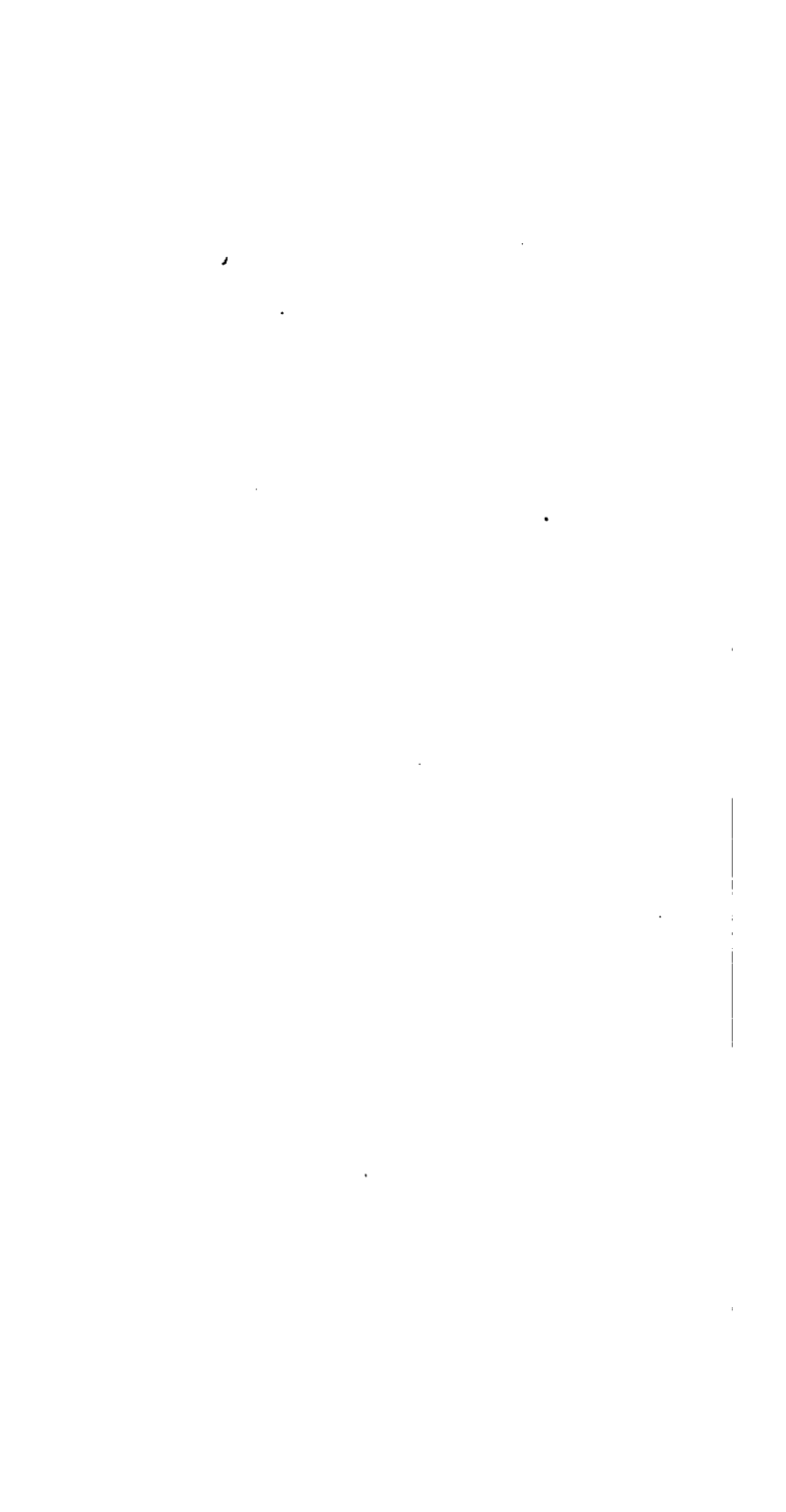
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTES 23
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE;
OR, THE
TEACHER'S FRENCH ASSISTANT:

Containing a Series of
THEORETIC, PRACTICAL, AND PROGRESSIVE LESSONS,

IN WHICH EVERY DIFFICULTY
IS EXPLAINED, EITHER IN NOTES AT THE END OF EACH EXERCISE,
OR BY REFERENCES TO PRECEDING RULES.

BY M. DE ROUILLON.

Multa potentibus derunt multa. Horat. Lib. iii. Od. 16.

SECOND EDITION.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR J. SOUTER, AT THE SCHOOL LIBRARY,
NO. 73, ST. PAUL'S CHURCH YARD.

MDCCCXXIII.

3099. f. 44.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.



NORWICH:

PRINTED BY S. WILKIN, UPPER HAY MARKET.

PREFACE.

AMONG the many excellent Grammars already published there is not one purposely written for the assistance of those Parents, Governesses, or Tutors, occasionally engaged in teaching the French language. It is with the hope of supplying this deficiency, or at least of alleviating the labour attending this kind of tuition, that the following work is offered to the public.

"Experience has long convinced me," says Salmon, "that the master of a language, or indeed of any science, should be at first sparing of precepts, but confine himself to a short easy method, lest he should discourage the pupil, whose improvement he has at heart."

This great master's observation has been attended to in the present work. The rules are simple, the examples concise, but sufficient; and the exercises having notes and references to preceding rules, will generally enable the pupil to correct his own mistakes.

At the end of each exercise, a few French sentences, illustrative of the preceding rules, are given for translation. A method of parsing follows each part of speech, and each lesson is concluded with appropriate questions, which, requiring a direct answer, will ascertain whether the rules are well understood.

As it is of the utmost importance to proceed progressively, no expression has been introduced in the exercises or reading lessons, belonging to rules as yet unexplained.

Models for the conjugation of regular and reflected verbs are given in their affirmative, negative, and interrogative forms, &c.

In order to afford the learner the means of ascertaining instantly, whether the verb, he has occasion to employ, is regular or irregular, perfect or defective, obsolete or in use, the irregular verbs are alphabetically arranged; and it is hoped that this method will answer the intention, and save the pupil considerable time and trouble.

The notes throughout the book, and particularly those at the end of the exercises, will be found to contain all the essential rules of Syntax; and if proper attention has been given to them, as well as to the rules in the text, the pupil will understand the mechanism of the language, and be able to account for every turn which may be given to any common sentence.

Some of the best Grammarians, but especially *Salmon*, *Duverger*, *Guisy*, *Ouiseau*, and *Lévizac*, have been diligently consulted; and I take this opportunity of acknowledging that they have contributed largely to what is best in this book. As to the errors which may have escaped my notice, I request the indulgence of the public in favour of the motives of this publication.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The flattering reception with which this Grammar has been honored, has induced the Author to revise it carefully; and he trusts that the additions and alterations he has made will render this Second Edition more generally useful, and consequently more worthy of the public approbation and patronage.

January, 1823.

GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTES
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

INTRODUCTION.

1. French Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the French language with propriety.

2. The French Alphabet consists of twenty-five letters : a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

3. The French language has no *w* ; this letter, as well as *k*, is only found in words derived or borrowed from other languages.

4. Letters are either vowels or consonants.

5. *A, e, i, o, u, y*, are vowels. The rest are consonants.

6. A vowel is a letter that forms a perfect sound when uttered alone.

7. A consonant cannot be perfectly pronounced till joined to a vowel.

8. A syllable consists of one or more letters, forming one sound ; as, *a, I, the*.

9. A monosyllable is a word of one syllable ; a dissyllable, of two syllables ; a trisyllable, of three syllables ; a polysyllable, of more than three syllables.

EXAMINATION.—1. What is French Grammar? 2. How many letters are there in the French alphabet? 3. Has the French language any *w*? 4. How are letters divided? 5. What are the vowels? 6. What is a vowel? 7. What is a consonant? 8. Of what does a syllable consist? 9. How are words distinguished with respect to their number of syllables?

PARTS OF SPEECH.

10. Grammarians distinguish nine kinds of words, commonly called *Parts of Speech*; these are, the Substantive or Noun, the Article, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Preposition, the Adverb, the Conjunction, and Interjection.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

11. A *Substantive* or *Noun* is a word which serves to name persons, places, or things; as, *man, London, virtue.*

[12. A substantive may in general be distinguished by its taking an article before it, or by its making sense of itself; as, *the sun, an apple, industry, temperance, charity.*]

13. Substantives are either *common, proper* or *collective.*

14. The *Substantive common* is that which belongs to several persons or things of the same kind; as, *a man, a horse, a tree.*

15. The Substantive common is either *physical* or *metaphysical*: physical, when it means persons or things which exist in nature; as, *a table, a house, an animal*: metaphysical, when it names things which can exist in the understanding only; as, *vice, virtue, thought.*

16. The *Substantive proper* is that which belongs to one person, or one thing only; as, *Joseph, London, the Danube.*

17. *Collective nouns*, or nouns of multitude, are those which, though in the singular number, signify several persons or things as united, and forming one mass or assemblage.

18. Collectives are divided into *general*, and *partitive*. The former express a whole body ; as, *army, people, forest* ; the latter express only a partial number ; as, *a quantity, a multitude, the most part*.

19. Substantives have gender, number and case. These properties are usually termed *Accidents*.

EXAMINATION.—10. Enumerate the nine parts of speech. 11. What is a substantive ? 12. How is a substantive known ? 13. How many kinds are there ? 14. What is a common substantive ? 15. How are common substantives divided ? 16. What is a proper substantive ? 17. What is a collective noun ? 18. How are collective nouns divided ? 19. How many accidents have nouns ?

OF GENDERS.

20. Gender is the distinction of sex, or the difference between male and female.

21. The French language has but two genders, the masculine and the feminine. The masculine belongs to *men* and animals of the male kind ; the feminine to *women* and animals of the female kind.

22. This distinction has, through imitation, been extended to all those substantives, which in English belong to the neuter gender. Their gender may be ascertained by the termination*.

OF NUMBERS.

23. By *Number* is understood that property which

* See my Analytical Table of the Genders of all French Nouns.

nouns have of denoting either *one* or *several* things.

24. There are two numbers, the singular which expresses but one; as, *a horse*; and the plural which expresses more than one; as, *horses*.

25. In French as well as in English, the plural of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.

EXAMINATION.—20. What do you understand by gender? 21. How many genders are there in French? 22. How is the gender of inanimate objects known? 23. What is number? 24. How many numbers are there? 25. How is the plural generally formed in both languages?

OF CASES.

26. The different relations which substantives bear to one another, and to the other parts of speech, are called *Cases*.

27. There are six cases, called *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, *Ablative*.

28. These cases are formed both in French and English by prefixing to the substantive some particular words called *Articles* and *Prepositions*.

29. The *Nominative* expresses simply the name of a thing, or the subject of a verb, that is, the person or thing that does the action expressed by the verb; as, *the lady writes, the boys play, the fire burns*.

30. The nominative usually precedes the verb.

[31. The nominative of a verb is known by putting the question *who* or *what* before the verb; as, in reference to the preceding articles, *who writes? who play? what burns?* *The lady, the boys, the fire*, which are the right answers, show the nominatives.]

32. The *Genitive* names the cause or possessor of another noun; as, *the founder of Rome, the leaves*

of the trees, the house of my father.—(This case also ends in *s*, preceded by an apostrophe; as, *my father's house.*)

33. The *Dative* case shows to whom or to what the thing spoken of is directed; as, send these strawberries *to your sister*.

34. The *Accusative* names the person or thing that receives the action of the verb; as, the master teaches *his pupils*, the fire burns *the wood*.

35. The accusative follows the verb or a preposition.

[36. The accusative is known by putting the question *whom* or *what* after the verb; as, *the master teaches whom? the fire burns what?* The right answers—*his pupils, the wood*, are the accusatives to the verbs *to teach* and *to burn*.]

37. The *Vocative* is used whenever a person or thing is addressed by name; as, *O my dear child!* I shall never see thee again! *James!* come and play. *O my Country!* to what a state art thou reduced!

✎ The *Vocative* being the same as the nominative, but without any article, it will not be mentioned in the declensions.

38. The *Ablative* names the person or thing from which something is taken away or received. I have received a letter *from my father*, the water comes *from the spring*.

EXAMINATION.—26. What is meant in grammar by cases? 27. Name the different cases. 28. How are the cases formed both in French and English? 29. What is the nominative case? 30. Where is the nominative placed? 31. How is the nominative known? 32. How is the genitive distinguished? 33. How is the dative? 34. What is the accusative case? 35. Where is the accusative placed? 36. How do you know a word to be in the accusative case? 37. What is the vocative? 38. What is the ablative?

OF ARTICLES.

39. The Article is a word prefixed to substantives to denote the sense in which they are taken.

40. There are three articles, the *definite*, the *indefinite* and the *partitive*.

OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

41. The article definite shows the particular thing or things mentioned.

42. The word *the* is the article definite in English.

43. It is translated into French by *le, la, l', les*, according to the gender, number, and first letter of the substantive to which it is joined.

Rules for the Nominative and Accusative Cases.

44. *Le* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant; as,

The father, *le père,*

45. *La* is used before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant; as,

The mother, *la mère.*

46. *L'** is prefixed to a noun of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as,

The soul, *l'âme.* The man, *l'homme.*

47. *Les* is used before a noun plural, whether masculine or feminine, and before vowels as well as consonants; as,

* *Le* or *la* becomes *l'* before a vowel or *h* mute. The suppression of a vowel is called an *elision*; it has been introduced to avoid the disagreeable sound which the meeting of two vowels would produce, being pronounced separately; yet we say without elision, *le onze, le onzième; le oui et le non.*

The fathers, *les pères*. The mothers, *les mères*. The souls, *les âmes*. The men, *les hommes*.

EXERCISE.

✍ The pupil must not neglect to ascertain the number and gender of the substantive, and to observe carefully whether its first letter is a vowel or a consonant.

The grove—The life—The shade—The key—The hand.

(a) *bosquet*. m. (b) *vie*. f. (c) *ombre*. f. (b) *clef*. f. (b) *main* f

The star—The stars—The house—† Virtue.—The

(c) *étoile*. f. (d) (b) *maison*. f. *vertu*. f. (a)

sun—† hope—The moon

soleil. m. (c) *espérance*. f. (b) *lune*. f.

The finger, the fingers—Pleasure—The vapour, the vapours. Knowledge—The sea—The universe—Glory—The scholar, the scholars.

References to the preceding Exercise.

(a) See 44. (b) See 45. (c) See 46. (d) See 47 and 25. † When a noun is intended to convey a full unlimited sense, the English generally omit the article; man is mortal (*all mankind*): the French must have it, *l'homme est mortel*.

Read and translate.

Le père et le fils. Le frère et la sœur. La mère et la fille. L'homme et la femme. La tante et les nièces. Le maître et l'écolier. Les saisons. Le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver.

METHOD OF PARSING.

✍ As it is of the utmost importance to the learner not to mistake one part of speech for another, the pupil is to parse a few sentences of the above reading lesson, after the following method.

ARTICLE. Questions.—Is it definite, indefinite*, or partitive*? What gender? What number? Is it simple, contracted*, or with an elision?

* These terms will be explained in the following rules.

SUBSTANTIVE. Questions.—Is it common, proper, or collective? What gender? What number? What is its initial letter?

EXAMINATION.—39. What is an article? 40. Enumerate the articles. 41. Why is the article definite thus called? 42. What is the article definite in English? 43. How is the English definite article translated into French? 44. When is *le* used? 45. When is *la*? 46. When is *l'* used? 46.* What is an elision? 47. When is *les* used? † Do nouns taken in a full unlimited sense, omit the article definite in French as in English?

Rules for the Genitive and Ablative Cases.

48. The prepositions *of* or *from* which are the signs of the genitive and ablative cases in English, (Nos. 32 and 38) are translated into French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, according to the gender, number and first letter of the following noun.

49. *Du* (a contraction * of *de le*) precedes a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant.

Of or from the father, du père.

50. *De la* precedes a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant.

Of or from the mother, de la mère.

51. *De l'* is used before a noun singular of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Of or from the soul, de l'âme. Of or from the man, de l'homme.

52. *Des* (a contraction of *de les*) is used before all nouns plural; as

Of or from the fathers, des pères. Of or from the mothers, des mères. Of or from the souls, des âmes. Of or from the men, des hommes.

Contraction is the reducing of *two* syllables into *one*.

EXERCISE.

Of the heart—Of the day—The rose—From the rose—
 (a) *cœur*. m. (a) *jour*. m. *rose*. f. (b)

The conduct of the prince—The billows of the sea—
conduite. f. (a) *prince*. m. *vague*. f. (b) *mer*. f.

The valour of the soldiers—The smile of the child—
valeur. f. (d) *soldat*. m. *sourire*. m. (c) *enfant*. m.

The cause of † virtue.—The certainty of † death.
cause. f. (b) *vertu*. f. *certitude*. f. (b) *mort*. f.

The magnificence of the palace.—The eloquence of the orator.—The politeness of the courtiers.—The top of the mountains.—From the foot of the tower.

References.

(a) See 49. (b) See 50. (c) See 51. (d) See 52 and 25. † See this note, Exercise page 7. therefore say : of the virtue, of the death.

Read, translate, and parse.

Le bonheur du peuple. L'honneur de la nation.
 La formation de l'univers. L'espérance des moisson-
 neurs. Les chansons des bergers. Le talent des
 acteurs. La violence des vents. L'heure du repos.
 La fraîcheur du matin. La douceur du climat.

EXAMINATION.—48. What prepositions are the signs of the genitive and ablative cases in English, and how are they translated into French? 49. When is *du* used? † What do you mean by contraction? 50. When is *de la* used? 51. When must you employ *de l'*? 52. When *des*? What words are represented by *des*?

Rules for the Dative Case.

53. The preposition *to* is the sign of the Dative.
 (See 33.) It is translated into French, by *au*, *à la*,

à *l'*, *aux*, according to the gender, number and first letter of the noun to which it is joined.

54. *Au* (a contraction of *à le*) is used before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant.

To the father, *au père*.

55. *À la* is joined to a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant.

To the mother, *à la mère*.

56. *À l'* is used before a noun singular beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

To the soul, *à l'âme*. To the man, *à l'homme*.

57. *Aux* (a contraction of *à les*) precedes all nouns plural.

To the fathers, *aux pères*. To the mothers, *aux mères*. To the souls, *aux âmes*. To the men, *aux hommes*.

EXERCISE.

The world——To the world——To the house——To the
monde. m. (a) (b) maison. f. (c)

honor of the consulship——To the power of the Tyrant——
honneur. m. consulat. m. (b) puissance. f. tyran. m.

To the doors of the temple——To † misfortunes——To the
(d) porte. f. temple. m. (d) malheur. m. (c)

harmony of the lyre——To the servant.
harmonie. f. lyre. f. (a) domestique. m.

To the remembrance——To the means——To the hope of salvation
To the sister——The return from the city——To the boy——To honesty
The rays of the sun——From the citizens to the magistrates.

References.

(a) See 54. (b) See 55. (c) See 56. (d) See 57 and 25. † See this note, reference page 7.

Read, translate and parse.

A la raison. A l'esprit. La vivacité de la jeunesse.

A l'affection du père. Aux flots de la mer. Aux idées du peuple. Au son de la cloche. Le mouvement des armées. Aux charmes de l'imagination.

EXAMINATION.—53. What preposition is the sign of the dative? How is it translated into French? 54. When is *au* used? What contraction is it? 55. When is *à la* used? 56. Before what sort of nouns is *à l'* used? 57. When is *aux* made use of? What words does *aux* represent?

OF THE ARTICLE INDEFINITE.

58. The article indefinite *a* or *an* serves to point out one single person or thing; as, *a girl, a book*; it is called indefinite, because it does not determine what particular person or thing is meant. This article is rendered into French by *un* or *une*.

59. *Un* is used before a noun masculine, and is thus declined.

Nom. & Acc.	a prince,	<i>un prince.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from a prince	<i>d'un^a prince.</i>
Dative.	to a prince,	<i>à un prince.</i>

60. *Une* is joined to a substantive feminine, thus:

Nom. & Acc.	a princess,	<i>une princesse.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from a princess,	<i>d'une princesse.</i>
Dative.	to a princess,	<i>à une princesse.</i>

EXERCISE.

A man——A book——The daughter of a tradesman——
 (a) *homme. m.* (a) *livre. m.* *filles. f.* (a) *marchand. m.*
 A house——A horse——The sails of a boat——From a town——
 (b) *maison. f.* (a) *cheval. m.* *voiles. f.* (a) *bateaux. m.* (b) *ville. f.*

* *De* loses the *e* before a vowel or *h* mute.

To a flower—An event—The invention of an artist.

(b) *fleur*. f. (a) *événement*. m. invention (a) *artiste*. m.

The violence of a storm—The arrival of a fleet—The boldness of an expedition—The tenderness of a mother—The rapidity of a torrent.

(a) See 59. (b) See 60.

Read, translate and parse.

Le protecteur d'une famille. Un parapluie. La sublimité d'une pensée. Les crimes d'un scélérat. La témérité d'un officier. L'impudence d'un laquais. L'honneur d'un gentilhomme. La richesse d'une ville. La beauté d'un paysage. La hauteur d'une montagne.

EXAMINATION.—58. What is the article indefinite and why is it so called? 59. How do you express the article indefinite *a* or *an* before a noun masculine? 59*. What do you observe about *de*, when it comes before a vowel or *h* mute? 60. Before a noun feminine, how is *a* or *an* translated into French? Decline the following nouns with the definite article; *pomme*, *conquête*, *régiment*, *feuille*, *action*, *fenêtre*, *cousin*. Decline the same nouns, with the article indefinite.

OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

61. This article precedes such nouns as denote part of a totality, but without specifying precisely *how much*, or *how many*.

62. The partitive article *some* or *any*† is expressed in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, according to the

† *Any*, in interrogative or negative sentences.

gender, number, and first letter of the substantive to which it is joined.

63. Before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant, it is thus declined—

<i>Singular.</i>		
Nom. & Acc.	some paper,	<i>du papier.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from * paper,	<i>de papier.</i>
Dative.	to some paper,	<i>à du papier.</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom. & Acc.	papers,	<i>des papiers.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from papers,	<i>de papiers.</i>
Dative.	to papers,	<i>à des papiers.</i>

64. Before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant—

<i>Singular.</i>		
Nom. & Acc.	some meat,	<i>de la viande.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from some meat,	<i>de viande.</i>
Dative.	to meat,	<i>à de la viande.</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom. & Acc.	meats,	<i>des viandes.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from meats,	<i>de viandes.</i>
Dative.	to meats,	<i>à des viandes.</i>

65. Before a noun of either gender beginning with a vowel or *h* mute—

<i>Singular.</i>		
Nom. & Acc.	some orange,	<i>de l' orange.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from some orange,	<i>d' orange.</i>
Dative.	to some orange,	<i>à de l' orange.</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom. & Acc.	some oranges,	<i>des oranges.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from oranges,	<i>d' oranges.</i>
Dative.	to some oranges,	<i>à des oranges.</i>

* The word *some* is often left out in English; it must be expressed in French.

EXERCISE.

Some wine—Some honey—Some beer—† Money—
 (a) *vin*. m. (a) *miel*. m. (b) *bière*. f. (c) *argent*. m.
 Some apples—† Poison—Some flowers—† Milk—
 (d) *pomme*. f. (a) *poison*. m. (d) *fleur*. f. (a) *lait*. m.
 Of † cloth—To some cinnamon.
 (a) *drap*. m. (b) *cannelle*. f.

Some ink—Some oysters—Cheese—Some strawberries—Eggs
 Sugar—Tea and coffee—Salt, pepper and vinegar.

References.

(a) See 63. (b) See 64. (c) See 65. (d) The plural of this article is always *des*, but remember what has been said (35). † See 63, note *

Read, translate and parse.

De la salade. Le gouverneur d'un prince. Du cidre. Des assiettes. Un couteau et une fourchette. De l'infanterie et de la cavalerie. Une semaine. Le retour du printemps. La fin d'un thème. Une page du vocabulaire. De l'or. Du cuivre. La beauté d'une expression.

EXAMINATION.—61. What nouns does the partitive article precede? 62. How do you express *some* or *any* in French? 62†. Is not the word *some* or *any* often understood in English? 63. When is *du* used, and what is its plural? 64. How is that article expressed before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant? 65. When is *de l'* used?

OF PROPER NAMES.

66. A proper name, or substantive proper, is the name of any particular person or place.

67. These nouns do not take any articles; they form their genitive and ablative cases with *de*, and their dative with *à*; thus:

Paris,	<i>Paris.</i>	Amelia,	<i>Emilie.</i>
of or from Paris,	<i>de Paris.</i>	of or from Amelia,	<i>d' Emilie.</i>
to Paris,	<i>à Paris.</i>	to Amelia,	<i>à Emilie.</i>

EXERCISE.

The fan of Caroline——The distance from London to
éventail m. (a) Caroline distance. f. (a) Londres (a)

Bristol——The lyre of Apollo——† Sophia's book——The
Bristol. lyre. f. (a) Apollon. (a) Sophie livre. m.

armies of Rome and † Carthage——† Lucy's candour.
armée. f. (a) Rome Carthage. (a) Lucie candeur. f.

The neighbourhood of Naples—Nelson's glory—The beauty
 of Helen—The island of Calypso—The works of Voltaire and
 Marmontel.

References.

(a) See 67. † The French language does not admit of such a construction; the order of the words must be inverted, the first coming last with the sign of the genitive before it: *the book of Sophia* &c. See 32. † The word *of*, which is omitted in English, must be expressed in French.

Read, translate and parse.

Le courage d'Achille. La valeur de Diomède. La
 fidélité de Pénélope. La ville de Troie. La route de
 Rome à Venise. Les tragédies de Racine et de Cor-
 neille. Les lettres de Voltaire et de Sévigné. La
 république de Gènes. Les batailles de Leipsic et de
 Waterloo. Le détronement de Bonaparté.

EXAMINATION.—66. What is a substantive proper? 67. How
 are the cases of proper names formed? Decline *Louis, Lille,*
Alexandre, Elise, Agathe, Lisbonne, Rome.

How to Frenchify many English substantives.

1. Most substantives are alike in both languages, (except the occasional accents) when terminated in—

<i>able, ible,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>table, bible.</i>
<i>ace, ice,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>face, caprice.</i>
<i>acle,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>miracle, obstacle.</i>
<i>ade,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>brigade.</i>
<i>ance, ence,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>ignorance, diligence.</i>
<i>al,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>animal.</i>
<i>ant, ent,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>elephant, element.</i>
<i>ge, gue,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>age, refuge, charge, fatigue.</i>
<i>ile,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>reptile, bile.</i>
<i>ine,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>doctrine.</i>
<i>ude,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>fortitude.</i>
<i>ule,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>formule.</i>

2. Most English substantives become French, by changing their terminations as follows :

<i>acy,</i>	into <i>atie,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>aristocracy, aristocratie.</i>
<i>ary,</i>	into <i>aire,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>calvary, calvaire.</i>
<i>ancy,</i>	into <i>ance,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>constancy, constance.</i>
<i>ency,</i>	into <i>ence,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>clemency, clémence.</i>
<i>ic,</i>	into <i>ique,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>music, musique.</i>
<i>ist,</i>	into <i>iste,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>artist, artiste.</i>
<i>or, our,</i>	into <i>eur,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>error, erreur; favour, faveur.</i>
<i>ory,</i>	into <i>oire,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>glory, gloire.</i>
<i>ty, (after a vowel)</i>	into <i>té,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>beauty beauté, fidelity fidélité.</i>
<i>y, other than the preceding</i>	into <i>ie,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>fury furie, modesty modestie.</i>

3. Proper names of persons or nations ending in *ian*, change that termination into *ien*; *as*.

Sebastian,	<i>Sébastien.</i>
Athenian,	<i>Athénien.</i>

4. Proper names ending in *o*, generally change that termination into *on**:

Cicero,	<i>Cicéron.</i>
Plato,	<i>Platon.</i>

* Except *Calypso, Clio, Echo, Erato, Sappho.*

5. Proper names of men ending in English in *a*, are the same in French.

Agrippa, Nerva, Caligula.

6. Proper names ending in *is* or *al*, are the same in both languages.

Sesostris, Juvenal.

7. Proper names ending in *ander* change that termination into *andre*.

Alexander, Alexandre.

8. The generality of proper names ending in *us* or *ius*, are the same in French as in English, when they are of two syllables only, as, *Brutus, Cyrus*; but when they are composed of three or more syllables, they usually change that termination into *e* mute.

Tacitus, Tacite. Octavius, Octave.

9. Proper names ending in *es*, or *as*, become French by changing *es* or *as* into *e* mute.

Demosthenes, Démosthène. Socrates, Socrate. Æneas, Enée. Pythagoras, Pythagore.

10. Proper names of women and Goddesses ending in *a* become French by changing that *a* into *e* mute.

Sophia, Sophie. Diana, Diane.

IN FUTURE EXERCISES

This mark — will denote that the word under which it is placed, is the same in both languages; and this mark . . . will denote that the French word differs from the English by its termination.

GENERAL EXERCISE

*On the definite, indefinite, and partitive articles,
and on proper names.*

The time of † reflection—The decision of a wager—The
temps. m. réflexion. f. — f. pari. m.
 front of the house—The death of the queen—The peace of the
façade. f. maison. f. mort. f. reine. pair. f.
 kingdom—The foliage of a tree—The privileges of the
royaume. m. feuillage. m. arbre. m. — m.
 nobility—The sagacity of an animal—The depth of a well—
noblesse. f. f. — m. profondeur. f. puits. m.
 The corner of a street—The approbation of the multitude—
coin. m. rue. f. — f. — f.
 The fatigue of a journey—The severity of a reprimand—
— f. voyage. m. f. réprimande. f.
 The length of a story—A support of the throne—The
longueur. f. histoire. f. soutien. m. trône. m.
 bravery of the troops—The beginning of a discourse—
bravoure. f. troupe. f. commencement. m. discours. m.
 The shame of a defeat—The beauty of a fable—The horror
honte. f. défaite. f. — f. f.
 of † vice—The utility of † science—The atrocity of a crime—
— m. f. — f. f. — m.
 The organist of a church—The democracy of the Athenians—
.... m. église. f. f.
 The memory of a child—The humanity of a stranger—The
.... f. enfant. m. f. étranger. m.
 inconstancy of the weather—The flowers of a meadow—The
temps. m. fleur. f. prairie. f.
 city of Westminster—Westminster bridge—Socrates' wisdom—
... f. — (a) pont. m. (b) sagesse. f.
 Achilles' valour—The character of Æsop's fables—The nicety of
..... (b) f. caractère. m. Esop (b) — f. délicatesse. f.
 languages—The feathers of a bird—The victory of the Nile.
langue. f. plume. f. oiseau. m. f. Nil. m.

References.

(a) English compound words must be transposed, the last coming first: *the bridge of Westminster*, &c. (b) See reference † page 15.

† See reference † page 7.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

69. The plural of nouns (either substantive or adjective) is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.

A man,	<i>un homme.</i>
Men,	<i>des hommes.</i>

70. Nouns ending in *s*, *x* or *z*, do not vary in the plural.

The son, the sons,	<i>le fils, les fils.</i>
The voice, the voices,	<i>la voix, les voix.</i>
A nose, noses,	<i>un nez, des nez.</i>

71. Nouns of several syllables ending in *ant* or *ent*, generally form their plural by changing the final *t* into *s*; but they may be regularly formed by adding an *s* to the *t*; as,

A child,	<i>un enfant,</i>
Children,	<i>des enfans, or, des enfants.</i>

72. Monosyllables in *ent* or *ant** preserve the *t*; as,

A tooth,	<i>une dent.</i>
Teeth,	<i>des dents.</i>

EXERCISE.

The revolution of a planet—The revolutions of the planets—
 _____ f. *planète. f.* (a)

The root of a plant—The roots of † trees—An arm—The
 racine. f. plante. f. (a) (a) *arbrs. m. bras. m.*

* Words compounded of monosyllables also retain the *t*; as *vent*, wind, *contrevents*, outside shutters.

arms of a child—A nut—Some nuts—An event—The
 (b) noir. f. (b) événement. m.
 events of a campaign.
 (c) campagne. f.

The marshes of a country—The punishment of the cross—The
 crosses of the Knights—The virtue of a Roman (*Romain*)—The
 virtues of the Romans—The teeth of serpents.

References.

(a) See 69. (b) See 70. (c) See 71. † See reference † page 7.

Read, translate and parse.

✎ In parsing, do not omit to name the singular of every noun,
 and by what rule it is made plural.

Les roues d'une montre. La beauté d'un prélude.
 Les beautés d'un poëme. La délicatesse d'une ex-
 pression. La réponse d'un oracle. Le bras du
 Tout-puissant. La vanité d'une épitaphe. Les
 forêts d'un pays. Le palais d'un roi. Les palais
 des rois. La religion des Mahométans.

EXAMINATION.—69. How is the plural of adjectives and substan-
 tives generally formed? 70. How is the plural formed in
 nouns ending in *s*, *x* or *z*? 71. What is the general way of
 forming the plural of nouns in *ant* or *ent*? 72. Do monosylla-
 bles ending in *ant* or *ent*, follow the same rule?

73. Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *œu* and *ou*, take *x*
 instead of *s*, for their plural.

A curtain,	un rideau,	des rideaux.
A game,	un jeu,	des jeux.
A vow,	un vœu,	des vœux.
The knee,	le genou,	les genoux.

74. The following nouns in *ou* are excepted, and take *s* for their plural.

A nail,	<i>un clou,</i>	<i>des clous.</i>
A sharper,	<i>un filou,</i>	<i>des filous.</i>
A halter,	<i>un licou,</i>	<i>des licous.</i>
A penny,	<i>un sou,</i>	<i>des sous.</i>
A hole,	<i>un trou,</i>	<i>des trous.</i>

[To which may be added, *matou*, cat; and the adjectives *fon*, foolish; *mou*, soft.]

75. Of nouns ending in *eu*, *bleu*, blue, is the only one which takes an *s* for its plural.

EXERCISE.

A hat——The hats——A castle——The castles——The
chapeau. m. (a) château. m. (a) (a)
 knives——A raven——The croaking of ravens——The ships of a
couteau. m. corbeau. m. croassement. m. (a) (a) vaisseau. m.
 fleet——The sports of † infancy.
flotte. f. (a) jeu. m. enfance. f.

The safety of bolts——The God of war——The Gods of Homer
 (*Homère*)——The holes of a sieve——The halter of a mare——The
 halters of mares.

(a) See 73. † See reference † page 7.

Read, translate and parse.

Le fils du commandant de la ville. Les comman-
 dans des places. L'erreur d'un moment. Des
 bâtimens. Les filous de Paris et de Londres. Des
 complimens de condoléance. Les bijoux de la
 couronne.

EXAMINATION.—73. What nouns take *s* for their plural instead

of *s*? 74. Mention the exception to nouns in *ou*. 75. What exception is there in nouns in *eu*?

76. Nouns ending in *al* and *ail*, form their plural by changing *al* or *ail* into *aux*.

Horse,	<i>cheval,</i>	<i>chevaux.</i>
Labour,	<i>travail,*</i>	<i>travaux.</i>

77. Except the following, which form their plural by adding *s* to the singular.

A ball,	<i>un bal,</i>	<i>des bals.</i>
Particulars,	<i>détail,</i>	<i>détails.</i>
A fan,	<i>un éventail,</i>	<i>des éventails.</i>
A helm,	<i>un gouvernail,</i>	<i>les gouvernails.</i>
A seraglio,	<i>un sérail,</i>	<i>les sérails.</i>

[And the following; *bocal*, a decanter; *carnaval*, carnival; *pale*, pale (in heraldry); *régat*, treat; *attirail*, apparatus; *mail*, mall; and a few others.]

78. The following irregular nouns cannot be brought under any rule.

Garlic,	<i>ail,</i>	<i>aïux.</i>
Grandfather,	<i>aïeul,</i>	<i>aïeux.</i>
Cattle,	<i>bétail,</i>	<i>bestiaux.</i>
Heaven,	<i>ciel,</i>	<i>cieux.</i>
Eye,	<i>œil,</i>	<i>yeux.</i>

[*Tout*, all, makes *tous*.—*Ciel* and *œil* follow the general rule when forming a compound word; as, *des ciels de lits*, bed testers; *des œils de bœuf*, oval windows.—*Aïeul*, makes *aïeux* when it means ancestors, but it is regular in this sentence; *ses deux aïeuls ont rempli les premières charges*, both his grandfathers have filled the highest stations.]

* But we say, *les travaux d'un ministre*; the account, the projects, which a minister presents to his sovereign. *Bercail*, sheepfold, has no plural.

[Few nouns have no plural ; as, *sommeil, colère, jeunesse*, &c. others have no singular in use ; as, *ciseaux, funérailles, mœurs*, &c. Latin words have no plural ; as, *un duo, deux duo*; except *opéra*.]

EXERCISE.

An hospital—The hospitals of the army—The talents of the
hôpital. m. (a) armée. f. talent. m.
 general—The generals of the allies—The skin of an animal—
général. m. (a) allié. m. animal. m.
 The skins of animals—The fans of the ladies—The birds of
(a) (b) éventail. m. dame. f. oiseaux. m.
 heaven—The kingdom of heavens—A seraglio—The seraglios of
ciel. m. royaume. m. (c) sérail. m. (b)
 the Turks—The compliments of the season—The evils of war—
Turc. m. compliment. m. saison. f. (a) mal. m. guerre. f.
 The † king's grandfather—The forefathers of a family.
aïeul.

The helms of the ships—The season of the ball—The tribunals
 of a kingdom—An admiral—The admirals—The indifference of
 a relation—The relations of an orphan—The eyes of a fish.

References.

(a) See 76. (b) See 77. (c) See 78. † See this reference page 18.

Read, translate and parse.

Un maréchal de France. Les maréchaux de
 France. Les papiers de la correspondance d'un
 ministre. Les régimens d'une garnison. Les habi-
 tans de la campagne. La curiosité d'un voyageur.
 La reconnaissance d'un ami. Les exploits d'un
 héros.

EXAMINATION.—76. How do you form the plural of nouns end-
 ing in *al* and *ail*? 77. Mention the exceptions. 78. What
 nouns form their plural irregularly?

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

✍ As several parts of speech are here introduced which have not yet been explained, no exercise has been given, and these rules may be passed over for the present.

79. When a noun is compounded of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural.

A nobleman, *un gentilhomme, des gentilshommes.*

80. In nouns compounded of a preposition or verb and a substantive*, the noun alone takes the sign of the plural.

A forerunner, *un avant-coureur, des avant-coueurs.*

81. When a noun is compounded of two substantives united by a preposition, the first alone takes the mark of the plural†; as,

A steward, *un maître d'hôtel, des maîtres d'hôtel.*

82. Nouns compounded of the pronoun *mon* or *ma*, change it into *mes*.

Sir,	<i>Monsieur,</i>	<i>Messieurs.</i>
Madam,	<i>Madame,</i>	<i>Mesdames.</i>

83. Words compounded of a verb and an adverb, or preposition, remain undeclined.

A master key, *un passe-partout, des passe-partout.*

EXAMINATION.—79. How is the plural formed in nouns compounded of an adjective and a substantive? 80. When a noun

* According to this rule we write without an *s*, *des garde-fous*, rails; but we ought to write, *les gardes Françaises*, because the word *gardes* is then considered as a substantive.

† *Cog-à-l'âne* and *tête à tête*, do not take the mark of the plural.

is compounded of a preposition and a substantive, how is its plural formed? 81. When two substantives joined by a preposition form a compound word, are both nouns to take the mark of the plural? 82. What do you observe concerning the pronouns *mon* and *ma*, when they serve to form compound words? 83. What compound words do not take the mark of the plural?

OF ADJECTIVES.

84. An adjective expresses a particular quality ascribed to a substantive.

[Adjectives in English, are alike in the singular and plural, in the masculine and feminine ; as, a *learned* man, a *learned* woman, *learned* men, *learned* women. In French, they have two distinct genders and numbers, and *learned*, which does not vary in the preceding sentences, will have four different terminations in French ; as, un homme *savant*, une femme *savante* ; des hommes *savants*, des femmes *savantes*.—This difference of termination in an adjective is called *agreeing in gender and number*.]

How to Frenchify many English adjectives.

Most adjectives of the following terminations are alike in both languages.

<i>able, ible, oble, uble,</i>	capable, sensible, noble, soluble.
<i>al,</i>	fatal, general.
<i>ant, ent,</i>	constant, diligent.
<i>ile,</i>	docile.

Many English adjectives are made French by a slight change in their termination.

<i>ar, ary,</i>	are changed into <i>aire,</i>	{ military, <i>militaire</i> .
		{ titular, <i>titulaire</i> .
<i>ic, ical,</i>	<i>ique,</i>	comic, <i>comique</i> .
<i>ine,</i>	<i>in,</i>	divine, <i>divin</i> .
<i>ive,</i>	<i>if,</i>	expressive, <i>expressif</i> .
<i>ory,</i>	<i>oire,</i>	transitory, <i>transitoire</i> .
<i>or,</i>	<i>eur,</i>	interior, <i>intérieur</i> .
<i>ous,</i>	<i>eux,</i>	dangerous, <i>dangereux</i> .

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

85. GENERAL RULE. An adjective* is made feminine, by adding an *e* mute to its masculine termination.

A polite man,	<i>un homme poli.</i>
A polite woman,	<i>une femme polie.</i>

86. Adjectives ending in *e* mute are both masculine and feminine.

An amiable man,	<i>un homme aimable.</i>
An amiable woman,	<i>une femme aimable.</i>

87. Adjectives ending in *f* change that letter into *ve* for the feminine.

A lively sentiment,	<i>un sentiment vif.</i>
A lively imagination,	<i>une imagination vive.</i>

88. Contrary to the English construction, the French adjectives usually follow the substantives; except the following:

<i>beau,</i>	handsome.	<i>mauvais,</i>	bad.
<i>bon,</i>	good.	<i>méchant,</i>	wicked.
<i>brave,</i>	brave.	<i>petit,</i>	little, small.
<i>grand,</i>	great.	<i>saint,</i>	holy.
<i>gros,</i>	big.	<i>sot,</i>	foolish.
<i>jeune,</i>	young.	<i>vieux,</i>	old.
<i>joli,</i>	pretty.		

EXERCISE.

A credulous man—A credulous woman—A modest beauty—
 (b) (b) *modeste*f.

* Observe that we say *adjective*, and not *adjective* and *substantive*. Substantives never vary but to form their plural—beginners often fall into the error of adding an *e* mute to all the substantives feminine they have occasion to employ.

An amiable simplicity—A pretty picture—A pretty girl—
aimable f. (d) *tableau*. m. (e) *fille*. f.

Two pretty pictures—Two pretty girls—A little poem—The
deux (f) (g) (d) *poème*. m.

lively sprightliness of youth—A great kingdom—A brave
piquant. *vivacité*. f. *jeunesse*. f. (d) *royaume*. m. (d)

officer—A small horse—Three small horses—A large town—
officier. m. *cheval*. m. *trois*. (f) (e) *grand*. *ville*. f.

A bold action—An imprudent valour—An attentive scholar—
 (a) *hardi*.—f. (a) — f. *écolier*. m.

An attentive ear.

(c) — *oreille*. f.

The eloquent speech of a magistrate—The noble † disinterestedness of a friend—The lovely qualities of a young lady—A steep mountain—A great design—The persuasive eloquence of Nestor.

References.

(a) See 85. (b) See 86. (c) See 87. (d) See 88. (e) 85 and 88.
 (f) See 69. (g) See 85 and 69. † This adjective must precede its substantive.

Read, translate, and parse.

Une histoire intéressante et instructive. Une famille illustre. Un génie solide et brillant. Un caractère vif. Les événemens remarquables de l'histoire Romaine. La cruauté féroce des tyrans de Syracuse. Les avantages d'une éducation soignée. Les décisions arbitraires d'un despote.

METHOD OF PARSING AN ADJECTIVE.

Questions. What gender? What number? What does it agree with in the sentence? If it be masculine, name its feminine and repeat the rule. If it be feminine, name its masculine.

EXAMINATION.—84. What is the use of adjectives? [What is the difference between a French and English adjective?] 85.

What is the general rule to form the feminine in French adjectives, that is, how do you express the adjective *poli*, when it is joined to a noun feminine? 86. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in *e* mute? 87. How do you form the feminine of adjectives ending in *f*? 88. What is the usual place of an adjective in the sentence? Name the adjectives which generally precede the nouns they qualify.

89. Adjectives ending in *el* or *eil*, double the *l* and take an *e* for their feminine.

Natural,	<i>naturel,</i>	<i>naturelle.</i>
Florid,	<i>vermeil,</i>	<i>vermeille.</i>

90. Adjectives ending in *as*, *ais*, *es*, *os*; double the final *s* and take an *e* mute for their feminine.

Fat,	<i>gras,</i>	<i>grasse.</i>
Thick,	<i>épais,</i>	<i>épaisse.</i>
Express,	<i>exprès,</i>	<i>expresse.</i>
Big,	<i>gros,</i>	<i>grosse.</i>

91. Except the following, which take an *e* mute:

Close,	<i>clos,</i>	<i>close.</i>
Bad,	<i>mauvais,</i>	<i>mauvaise.</i>
Silly,	<i>niais,</i>	<i>niaise.</i>
Bare,	<i>ras,</i>	<i>rase.</i>

Frais, fresh, is another exception, and makes *fraîche*.

92. Adjectives ending in *et* form their feminine by doubling their final consonant before *e* mute.

Clean,	<i>net,</i>	<i>nette.</i>
--------	-------------	---------------

93. The following are excepted :

Complete,	<i>complet,</i>	<i>complète.</i>
Discreet,	<i>discret,</i>	<i>discrète.</i>
Uneasy,	<i>inquiet,</i>	<i>inquiète.</i>
Ready,	<i>prêt,</i>	<i>prête.</i>
Secret,	<i>secret,</i>	<i>secrète.</i>

[To which may be added, *concret*, *replet*, *sûret*.]

EXERCISE.

A natural sentiment—The natural law—A florid complexion—
sentiment. m. (a) loi. f. teint. m.

The natural rights—The natural faculties—A mutual affection—
droit. m. (b) faculté. f. (a) mutuel. — f.

A cruel animal—‡ Cruel animals—A revengeful disposition—
 ——— m. (b) *vindictif. caractère. m.*

A thick smoke—A bad heart—A bad year—The bad voices—
 (c) *fumée. f. (d) cœur. m. (e) année. f. (f) voix. f.*

Amiable children—‡ Great actions.
aimable enfant. m. action. f.

Thick forests—A secret impulse—A secret intrigue—The complete works of an author—A cool night—The cool winds.

References.

(a) See 89. (b) See 89 and 69. (c) See 90. (d) See 88. (e) See 91 and 88. (f) See 91 and 69.

‡ When a substantive taken in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used instead of *du, de la, de l', des*.
 Ex. large apples, *de grosses pommes*, and not *des grosses pommes*.

Read, translate and parse.

Une école excellente. Les attentions touchantes d'un ami. Un enfant muet. L'estime générale des habitants d'une ville. Les bords fleuris d'un fleuve. Les services signalés d'un militaire. Les écrits estimables des philosophes de l'antiquité. Le zèle cruel d'une populace effrénée.

EXAMINATION.—89. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in *et, ail*? 90. How do you form the feminine of adjectives in *as, ais, es* and *os*? 91. Mention the exceptions. 92. How are adjectives ending in *et* made feminine? 93. What are the exceptions? ‡ When a noun in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, is any article used before that adjective?

94. Adjectives ending in *ien* and *on* form their feminine by adding *ne* to that termination.

Christian,	<i>chrétien,</i>	<i>chrétienne.</i>
Good,	<i>bon,</i>	<i>bonne.</i>

95. Adjectives in *eux* and *eur*, change their termination into *euse* for the feminine.

Happy,	<i>heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse.</i>
Flattering,	<i>flatteur,</i>	<i>flatteuse.</i>

[96. The following adjectives in *eur* take an *e* mute for their feminine.

Antérieur, citérieur, extérieur, inférieur, intérieur, majeur, meilleur, mineur, postérieur, prieur, supérieur, ultérieur, which make, *antérieure, citérieure, &c.*]

97. Adjectives ending in *c* form their feminine as follows :

White,	<i>blanc,</i>	<i>blanche.</i>
Sincere,	<i>franc,</i>	<i>franche.</i>
Dry,	<i>sec,</i>	<i>sèche.</i>
Decaying,	<i>caduc,</i>	<i>caduque.</i>
Public,	<i>public,</i>	<i>publique.</i>
Greek,	<i>grec,</i>	<i>grecque or grecque.</i>
Turkish,	<i>turc,</i>	<i>turque.</i>

EXERCISE.

An ancient custom—An Italian opera—The Italian music—
(a) *ancien* † *coutume. f.* *Italien. opéra. m.* (a) *musique. f.*

A pagan ceremony—The pagan superstitions—A good work—
(a) *païen. cérémonie. f.* (e) *superstition. f.* (g) *ouvrage. m.*

A good thought—A deceitful woman—A delightful valley—
(h) *pensée. f.* (b) *trompeuse.* (b) *délicieux vallée. f.*

A happy condition—A superior power—A white feather.
(b) *condition. f.* (c) *puissance. f.* (d) *plume. f.*

A white handkerchief—The public tranquillity—Delusive promises—A great garden—A great house—A bitter apple—A

figurative expression — A specious pretence — A pernicious maxim.

References.

(a) See 94. (b) See 95. (c) See 96. † This adjective precedes its substantive. (d) See 97. (e) See 94 and 99. (g) See 88. (h) See 94 and 88.

Read, translate and parse.

Un chemin sec. Des branches sèches. Le bien public. Les femmes Turques. La douceur ravissante de la langue Grecque. L'oreille délicate d'un musicien. La bienfaisance active d'un protecteur. Un grand général à la tête d'une armée formidable.

EXAMINATION.—94. What is the feminine of adjectives in *ien* and *on*? 95. How are adjectives in *eur* and *eur* made feminine? 96. What adjectives in *eur* follow the general rule? 97. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in *c*?

98. These five adjectives have two masculines in use, and form their feminine as follows :

Handsome,	<i>beau,</i>	or, <i>bel,*</i>	<i>belle.</i>
Foolish,	<i>fol,</i>	or, <i>fol,</i>	<i>folle.</i>
Soft,	<i>mou,</i>	or, <i>mol,</i>	<i>molle.</i>
New,	<i>nouveau,</i>	or, <i>nouvel,</i>	<i>nouvelle.</i>
Old,	<i>vieux,</i>	or, <i>vieil,</i>	<i>vieille.</i>

99. The following adjectives cannot be brought

* *Bel, fol, mol, nouvel* and *vieil* are used before substantives masculine beginning with a vowel or *h* silent; as, *un bel homme*, a handsome man; *un nouvel acteur*, a new actor; *un fol espoir*, a foolish hope. But we say indifferently, *un vieil* or *un vieux officier*, an old officer.

under any rule on account of their irregularities:

Sweet,	<i>doux,</i>	<i>douce.</i>
Bewitching,	<i>enchanteur,</i>	<i>enchanteresse.</i>
False,	<i>faux,</i>	<i>fausse.</i>
Favourite,	<i>favori,</i>	<i>favorite.</i>
Pretty,	<i>gentil,</i>	<i>gentille.</i>
Jealous,	<i>jaloux,</i>	<i>jalouse.</i>
Long,	<i>long,</i>	<i>longue.</i>
Malicious,	<i>malin,</i>	<i>maligne.</i>
Protecting,	<i>protecteur,</i>	<i>protectrice.</i>
Treacherous,	<i>traître,</i>	<i>traïtesse.</i>
Avenging,	<i>vengeur,</i>	<i>vengeresse.</i>

[To which may be added *béuin, jumeau, mat, nul, roux, tiers*, which make for their feminine, *bénigne, jumelle, matte, nulle, rousse* and *tierce*.

Many nouns in *leur* become feminine by changing that termination into *trice*—*Bienfaiteur, bienfaitrice; acteur, actrice, &c.* But, *Empereur* makes *Impératrice, pêcheur, pécheresse; chasseur* makes *chasseuse* in prose, and *chasseresse* in poetry; *gouverneur* makes *gouvernante*.—*Auteur* and *poëte* are of both genders.]

EXERCISE.

A fine poem—A fine statue—Fine pictures—Handsome
beau poëme. m. (a) statue. f. (f) tableau. m. (d)

ladies—A new fan—A new discovery—An old
dame (c) nouveau éventail. m. (e) découverte. f. vieux

hat—An old coat—A sweet temper—A bewitching
chapeau. m. (c) habit. m. doux caractère. m. enchanteur

smile—A bewitching voice.
sourire. m. (b) voi. f.

The protecting hand of providence—An avenging Deity—
A favorite dog—A favorite walk—A false assertion—A false
reasoning.

References.

(a) See 88 and 98. (b) See 99. (c) See note to 98. (d) See †
page 29. (e) See 98. (f) See 73.

Read, translate and parse.

Un mari jaloux. Une longue expérience. De

beaux yeux. Une femme jalouse. Les vieux titres d'une famille noble. Un long voyage. Le style enchanteur de Marmontel. Une fièvre maligne. Un gentilhomme d'ancienne extraction.

EXAMINATION.—98. Mention those adjectives which have two masculine terminations. 99. What are the adjectives which form their feminine too irregularly to be classed? [What do you observe concerning nouns in *leur*?]

GENERAL EXERCISE

On adjectives.

An immortal memory—A dangerous passage—A dangerous
immortel f. m.

road—A dark room—A narrow street—A good model—
route. f. *obscur* *chambre*. f. *étroit* *rue*. f. *modèle*. m.

A cruel and revengeful animal—Cruel and revengeful animals—
(a)—*vindictif* — m. (a)

The public authority—A bewitching smile—A benevolent
autorité. f. *enchanteur* *sourire*. m. *bénin*

character—A favorite walk—The pernicious properties of a
humeur. f. *promenade*. f. *qualité*. f.

plant—A delightful prospect—The heir apparent to the
plante. f. *délicieux* *vue*. f. *héritier*. m. *présomptif* de

crown—An old acquaintance—A long tedious journey—
couronne. f. * *ancien* *connaissance*. f. (a) *long* *ennuyeux* *voyage*. m.

Great and extensive projects—A liberal prince—A plain, simple
† *vaste* *projet*. m. — m. (a) *uni* *simple*

and natural style—The inventive power of Shakespear—The
naturel *style*. m. *créateur* *esprit*. m.

sublime conceptions of Milton—The pathetic simplicity of Sterne
— *pensée*. f.

The general officers of an army—Gentle, amiable and docile
officier. m. *armés*. f. (a) *doux* *aimable* —

children—A sensible young man—Pastoral poetry—A final
enfant. m. sensé (b) —† poésie. f. —
 answer—Fatal events—An amicable conversation.
réponse. f. § événement. m. amical — f.

References.

✎ (a) When several adjectives qualify a substantive, they are placed after it, and the conjunction *et* (and) is put before the last, whether it is expressed in English or not: an amiable, virtuous man; *un homme aimable et vertueux.*

✎ (b) When one of the adjectives belongs to those which generally precede, and the other to those which must be placed after the substantive, they retain their natural order—a thoughtless young man; *un jeune homme étourdi.*

* This adjective must precede its substantive. † Both these adjectives may either precede or follow their substantive. ‡ The following adjectives in *al* have no plural in use for the masculine, *boréal, claustral, conjugal, fatal, flûtal, final, frugal, lustral, matinal, martial, nasal, natal, naval, pastoral, vénal*, and perhaps two or three others less useful. *Pénitenciaux* is the plural of an obsolete word, *pénitentiel*; and *universal*, as a term of philosophy, makes *universaux*; in any other sense it makes *universels*. § Another adjective must be used, as *fatal* has no masculine plural; *funeste* may supply it.

✎ The comparison of adjectives should naturally follow; but as this cannot be done without employing verbs and adverbs, with which the learner is not yet acquainted, it does not enter into our plan to treat of them in this place.

OF PRONOUNS.

100. A pronoun is a word which generally supplies the place of a noun.

101. There are six kinds of pronouns; *possessive, demonstrative, personal, relative, interrogative and indeterminate.*

OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

102. Possessive pronouns are so called because they denote property or possession.

103. There are two sorts of possessive pronouns ; those that are *always*, and those that are *never* joined to a noun : the former are called *possessive conjunctive*, the latter, *possessive relative*, pronouns.

OF POSSESSIVE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

104. The possessive conjunctive pronouns are always joined to a noun which they precede, and with which they agree in gender and number.

105. They are, *my, thy, his, her* or *its, our, your, their*, and are translated into French, as follows :

My,	<i>mon.</i> m.	<i>ma.</i> f.	<i>mes.</i> m. f. pl.
Thy,	<i>ton,</i>	<i>ta,</i>	<i>tes.</i>
His, her, its,	<i>son,</i>	<i>sa,</i>	<i>ses.</i>
Our,	<i>notre,</i>	<i>notre,</i>	<i>nos.</i>
Your,	<i>votre,</i>	<i>votre,</i>	<i>vos.</i>
Their,	<i>leur,</i>	<i>leur,</i>	<i>leurs.</i>

106. *Mon, ton, son,* precede substantives masculine singular.

My father,	<i>mon père.</i>
Thy brother,	<i>ton frère.</i>
*His, her or its courage,	<i>son courage.</i>

107. *Ma, ta, sa,* are placed before nouns feminine singular, beginning with a consonant.

My mother,	<i>ma mère.</i>
Thy sister,	<i>ta sœur.</i>
His, her or its beauty,	<i>sa beauté.</i>

108. But instead of *ma, ta, sa,* we use *mon, ton,*

* The possessive conjunctive pronouns do not agree in gender with the possessor, as in English, but with the thing possessed : your uncle has seen his daughter ; *votre oncle a vu sa fille.* Your aunt has lost her son ; *votre tante a perdu son fils.*

son, when the noun feminine which follows, begins with a vowel or *h* mute.

My soul, *mon âme*, not *ma âme*.
 Thy history, *ton histoire*, — *ta histoire*.
 His or her avarice, *son avarice*, — *sa avarice*.

109. *Notre, votre, leur*, are put before nouns singular of either gender.

Our friend, *notre ami*.
 Your house, *votre maison*.
 Their garden, *leur jardin*.

110. *Mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs*, precede nouns masculine or feminine plural.

My brothers, *mes frères*.
 Thy sisters, *tes sœurs*.
 His, her or its qualities, *ses qualités*.
 Our masters, *nos maîtres*.
 Your flowers, *vos fleurs*.
 Their friends, *leurs amis*.

Declension of the possessive conjunctive pronouns.

My——— *mon livre*, *ma plume*, *mes amis*.
 Of or from my *de mon livre*, *de ma plume*, *de mes amis*.
 To my——— *à mon livre*, *à ma plume*, *à mes amis*.

EXERCISE.

My fan———My carriage——My white hat——My hand——
 (a) *éventail*.m.(b) *voiture*. f. (a) *blanc chapeau* (b) *main*. f.
 My illusion——My industry——My servants——Thy modesty——
 (c) —— f. (c) f. (e) *domestique*.m.(b) f.
 Thy sincerity——The regularity of thy features——His young friend
 (b) f. f. (e) *trait*. m. (a) † *ami*.m.
 The delicacy of his behaviour——Her insufferable pride——Her
délicatesse.f. (b) *conduite*. f. (a) *insupportable orgueil*.m. (b)

gratitude——Its colour—Our opinion—Our family—Our
reconnaissance.f. (b) couleur.f.(d) ——f. (d) famille.f. (e)
 friends—Your dexterity—Your servants—Your connexions—
ami. m. (d) adresse. f. (e) domestique. (e) liaison. f.
 Their virtue—Their house—Their inviolable fidelity—The
(d) vertu. f. (d) maison. f. (d) f.
 honour of their family—The tenderness of their mother—Their
honneur.m. (d) tendresse. f. (d) mère. f. (e)
 amiable qualities.
çaimable qualité. f.

My obedience to his orders—My application to study—Thy
 obliging answer—His qualifications—His humility—The im-
 mense riches of her uncle—The novelty of their pamphlet—The
 purity of her soul—Its vivacity—The gracefulness of their
 sister—The unanimity of their resolutions.

References.

(a) See 106. (b) See 107. (c) See 108. (d) See 109. (e) See
 110. † See 88. ‡ This adjective to precede its substantive.

METHOD OF PARSING A PRONOUN.

Questions. Is it possessive, demonstrative, personal, relative,
 interrogative or indeterminate? What gender? What number?
 With what does it agree in the sentence?

Read, translate and parse.

La douceur de ses paroles. L'origine de ta fa-
 mille. La violence de sa conduite. L'irrégularité
 de ses mœurs. Mon approbation. Son dictionnaire.
 L'indigence de son ami. Ton violon et sa harpe.
 Ta sincérité. Son amour-propre. Sa hauteur. Leurs
 plaintes perpétuelles. La franchise de leurs pro-
 cédés. Sa part de la conquête. Notre persévérance
 et nos efforts.

EXAMINATION.—100. What is a pronoun? 101. How many kinds of pronouns are there? 102. Why are possessive pronouns so called? 103. How are they divided? 104. What is the place of the possessive conjunctive pronouns? 105. What are the possessive pronouns in English, and how are they translated? 106. How do you express *my, thy, his, her* or *its*, for the masculine singular? 106 *. Does the conjunctive possessive pronoun agree with the possessor in French as in English? 107. When are *ma, ta, sa*, used? 108. Are *ma, ta, sa*, always used before a noun singular feminine? 109. How do you express the pronouns *our, your* and *their*? 110. Of what gender are *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs*?

OF POSSESSIVE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

111. Possessive relative pronouns are never joined to substantives, but relate to some noun spoken of before or understood, with which they agree in gender and number.

112. The possessive relative pronouns are :

	masc.	fem.	masc. pl.	fem. pl.
Mine,	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
Thine,	<i>le tien,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>les tiennes.</i>
His, hers, its,	<i>le sien,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>les siennes.</i>
Ours,	<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>
Yours,	<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>les vôtres.</i>
Theirs,	<i>le leur,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>les leurs.</i>

113. *Le mien, le tien, le sien, le nôtre, le vôtre* and *le leur*, are used when the noun they relate to, is masculine singular.

Your hat and mine, *votre chapeau et le mien.*
 My book and his or hers, *mon livre et le sien.*
 His penknife and yours, *son canif et le vôtre.*

114. *La mienne, la tienne, la sienne, la nôtre, la*

vôtre, la leur, relate to a noun feminine singular.

Your house and mine, *votre maison et la mienne.*
 My watch and his or hers, *ma montre et la sienne.*
 Your affection and theirs, *votre affection et la leur.*

115. The relatives *les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nôtres, les vôtres, les leurs*, have a reference to a noun masculine plural.

Your relations and mine, *vos parens et les miens.*
 Thy talents and hers, *tes talens et les siens,*
 My horses and yours, *mes chevaux et les vôtres.*

116. *Les miennes, les tiennes, les siennes, les nôtres, les vôtres, les leurs*, refer to a substantive feminine plural.

His sisters and thine, *ses sœurs et les tiennes.*
 My flowers and hers, *mes fleurs et les siennes.*
 Their oranges and ours, *leurs oranges et les nôtres.*

These pronouns are declined with the article definite, thus :

	masc.	fem.	masc. pl.	fem. pl.
Mine,	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
Of mine,	<i>du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne,</i>	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes.</i>
To mine,	<i>au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne,</i>	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes.</i>

EXERCISE.

My happiness and yours—My courage and his—My father and
bonheur. m. (a) ——— m. (a)

thine—His complaisance and hers—Your friendship and his—
(a) ——— f. (b) amitié. f. (b)

The civil behaviour of your brother and *his—Thy maps and
honnête procédé. m. † carte. f.

my own—Your horse and mine—His watch and yours—Your
(d) † cheval. m. (a) montre. f. (b)

books and theirs—Your laws and ours—His wit and hers—
livre. f. (c) loi. f. (d) esprit. m. (a)

Your songs and his—His country house and theirs—The
chanson. f. (d) maison de campagne. f. (b)

sprightliness of your daughters and * theirs—Her stubbornness
vivacité. f. fille. f. (d) † opiniâtreté. f.

and yours.

(b)

Your fickleness and hers—Our memory and theirs—His great politeness and yours—His benefactor and hers—Their misfortunes and ours—My duty and yours—Her nosegay and thine—The distinguished merit of his friends and mine—Your ambition and his—The sweetness of your temper and hers.

References.

(a) See 113. (b) See 114. (c) See 115. (d) See 116.

* The preposition *of*, which is understood in English, must be expressed in French. † *Du sien*, if you speak of one only, but *des siens*, if you speak of several. ‡ *My own, thy own, his own, &c.* are rendered in the same manner as *mine, thine, &c.* when they supply these pronouns.

Read, translate and parse.

Son humeur et la sienne. Le courage de nos guerriers et des leurs. L'orgueil insupportable de votre frère et du mien. Mes pistolets et les siens. Vos troupeaux et les miens. Notre mémoire et la leur.

EXAMINATION.—111. With what word do the possessive relative pronouns agree? 112. Name the possessive relative pronouns. 113. How do you express the possessive relative *mine, thine, his or hers, ours, yours and theirs*, with reference to a noun masculine singular? 114. And with reference to a noun feminine singular? 115. How do you express the same pronouns when they have for their antecedent a noun masculine plural? 116. And when their antecedent is feminine plural?

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

117. The demonstrative pronouns are so called, because they point out the objects of which we were speaking; they are, *this* and *that* for the singular; *these* and *those* for the plural.

118. *This* and *that* are expressed by *ce*, before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant.

This or that general, *ce général.*

This or that gentleman, *ce monsieur.*

119. *This* or *that* is expressed by *cet*, when the noun joined to it is of the masculine gender, but beginning with a vowel or *h* silent.

This or that angel, *cet ange.*

This or that man, *cet homme.*

120. When the noun is feminine singular, *this* and *that* are expressed by *cette*, before vowels as well as before consonants.

This woman, *cette femme.*

That friendship, *cette amitié.*

121. *These* and *those* are always translated by *ces*, before all sorts of nouns; as,

These men, *ces hommes.*

Those trees, *ces arbres.*

These flowers, *ces fleurs.*

[The French make use of the adverbs *ci* and *là*, (which correspond to the English adverbs *here* and *there*,) to denote the person or thing more particularly.

This man, *cet homme-ci.*

That woman, *cette femme-là.*

Or, to avoid an ambiguity; *là* denoting a distant object, and *ci*, one that is present or at least near the place, where the person is, who speaks.]

*Declension of the demonstrative conjunctive
pronouns.*

Ce général, cet ange, cette femme, ces hommes.
De ce général, de cet ange, de cette femme, de ces hommes.
A ce général, à cet ange, à cette femme, à ces hommes.

EXERCISE.

The colouring of that picture—This danger—The tears of this
coloris. m. (a) tableau. m. (a) pleurs. m. pl. (b)
 child—To the flowers of that nosegay—The shade of that grove—
(a) bouquet. m. ombre. f. (a) bosquet. m.
 Of that light—To these officers—The eloquence of that orator
(c) lumière. f. (d) officier. m. ——— f. (b) . . . m.
 This horse—That honour—These fertile provinces—That
*(a) cheval. m. (b) honneur. m. (d) * ——— f. (a)*
 fine kingdom—The nymphs of these meadows—The elegant
beau royaume. m. nymphes. (d) prairies. f. ———
 form of that carriage—The goodness of that lady.
forme. f. (c) voiture. f. bonté. f. (c) dame. f.

The great ambition of that minister—The abundance of that
 fine country—The misery of that family—The lofty language of
 that historian—The description of that city—The affability of
 that gentleman—The down of these peaches—The unhappy vic-
 tims of that revolution—The rapidity of this torrent—This rash
 behaviour.

References.

(a) See 118. (b) See 119. (c) See 120. (d) See 121. * This
 adjective may precede its substantive.

Read, translate, and parse.

La dorure de cet étui et du vôtre. Le tourment
 de cette longue absence. La modération de ses dés-
 sirs. L'utilité de ce thermomètre. Le ressort de cette
 machine.

EXAMINATION.—117. Why are the demonstrative pronouns so called, and what are they? 118. How are *this* and *that* translated into French? 119. When is *this* or *that* translated by *cet*? 120. How do you express *this* and *that* before a noun feminine? 121. How are *these* and *those* translated? [When are the adverbs *ci* and *là* added to the demonstrative pronouns?]

GENERAL EXERCISE

On the possessive, conjunctive and demonstrative pronouns.

My room—Their military hospitals—Her alliance—Your
chambre. f. f.

time and mine—This mill and that farm—That skilful surgeon—
*temps. m. moulin. m. ferme. f. *habile chirurgien.*

His jealous disposition—The great efforts of your friends and
caractère. m. — m.

hers—The cheapness of your house and mine—The loose morality
bon marché. m. licentieux morale. f.

of those plays—His consent and yours—Its perfect maturity—
comédie. f. consentement. m. parfait f.

Her affected modesty—The mild administration of their
affecté f. doux ——— f.

government and ours—Their numerous congregation—Our holy
gouvernement. m. nombreux ——— f.

religion—Our noble grandfather—His brave companions and ours
*—— f. *aïeul. m. ——— compagnon. m.*

My pupils and yours—The shameful flight of their troops and ours
élève. m. honteux fuite. f.

The absurdity of your conjectures and hers—The fervency of our
. f. ——— f. ferveur. f.

prayers—The price of these gloves and theirs—The beauty of that
prière. f. prix. m. gant. m. f.

landscape—The insolent threat of his son and yours—The costly
paysage. m. ——— menace. f. précieux.

furniture of that palace—The robust constitution of his children.
ameublement. m. palais. m. robuste tempérament. m.

* This adjective to precede its substantive.

☞ *As the personal, relative, interrogative and indeterminate pronouns are so much connected with verbs, that it is impossible to give exercises on the former, without introducing the latter; I shall treat of verbs first.*

OF VERBS.

122. The verb is a word which signifies *to be, to do, or to suffer.*

123. There are six sorts of verbs; the *active, passive, neuter, reflected, reciprocal and impersonal.*

A verb is

ACTIVE*,

When the sentence { doing something, or { *He writes a*
shows the person † { acting upon something. { *letter.*

PASSIVE‡,

When the nomina- { bearing the effect of { *Eliza was hurt*
tive § or subject is { another's action. { *by her sister.*

NEUTER||,

When the nomina- tive is	{	acting, but not doing {	<i>She dances.</i>
		any thing to another.	
	{	merely existing.	<i>I am, I exist.</i>
When the verb	{	expresses the state of	<i>Peter sits.</i>
		its nominative.	

* A verb is known to be active, when we may add to it the word *somebody or something—he writes something.*

† The word *person* is used in speaking both of animate and inanimate objects.

‡ *Passive* from the latin *passivus*, derived from *patior*, I suffer, means one that bears the effect of another's action.

§ The nominative of a verb is always a noun or pronoun.

|| *Neuter* is the latin for *neither*, and means that these verbs are neither active nor passive.

REFLECTED*,

When the phrase { the action of a subject { *I hurt myself.*
shows { upon itself.

RECIPROCAL†,

When two or more { act upon each other. { *We love one*
nominatives { *another.*

IMPERSONAL‡,

When the phrase { what happens. { *It rains.*
shows

124. Verbs are also divided into *regular* and *irregular*, *perfect* and *defective*.

125. Regular verbs are those whose tenses are formed in a uniform manner, according to some general rules.

126. Irregular verbs are those which deviate from the rules by which regular verbs are conjugated.

127. Perfect verbs have all their moods and tenses.

128. Defective verbs are those which want some of their moods or tenses.

129. The French have also two *auxiliary verbs*, so called because they serve to conjugate all the other verbs.

* *Reflected* verbs have sometimes an active signification, as in the above example.—Sometimes they are used in a passive sense, as, *je m'ennuie*, that is, *je suis ennuyé*. They are also neuter, when they express neither action nor passion, but a situation or mode of existing; as, *Elle s'endort*, *elle se meurt*, that is, she is in a situation next to sleep or death.—These verbs are also called *pronominal*.

† *Reciprocal* verbs have no singular—The reflected and reciprocal verbs, though not noticed by English Grammarians, make an essential part of French grammar, since they are conjugated differently from other verbs.

‡ *Impersonal*, so called, because their effects are attributed to no person. The others are *personal*.

OF THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

130. To conjugate a verb is to repeat its different terminations, through every *mood, tense, number* and *person*.

131. There are four different ways of conjugating the same verbs, viz.

<i>Affirmatively</i> , when we declare	
that a person acts, or is,	as, <i>I do ; I am.</i>
<i>Negatively</i> , when we deny it,	— <i>I do not ; I am not.</i>
<i>Interrogatively</i> , when a question is asked,	— <i>Do I ? Am I ?</i>
<i>Interrogatively</i> and <i>negatively</i> ,	— <i>Do I not ? Am I not ?</i>

OF MOODS.

132. Moods are the different manners of using the verb. There are four moods, the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *imperative*, and the *subjunctive*.

133. The infinitive expresses an action, but in a general and unlimited manner, without any distinction of number or person ; as, *to speak, to act, to have received, being loved*.

134. The indicative serves to express events in which the speaker is *positive*, and which therefore he declares as facts, either present, past or future.

He knows that you are here,	<i>Il sait que vous êtes ici.</i>
He does not know that you are	<i>Il ne sait pas que vous êtes</i>
here,	<i>ici.</i>
Does he know that you are here?	<i>Sait-il que vous êtes ici ?</i>
Does he not know that you	<i>Ne sait-il pas que vous</i>
are here ?	<i>êtes ici ?</i>

[In the above examples, *that you are here* is a fact with respect to the speaker ; *he knows* and *he does not know*, are also facts with respect to him : and as to *does he know ?* and *does he*

not know? though *not facts* with respect to the speaker, yet they are in the indicative, because *questioning verbs always remain in the indicative.*]

135. The imperative *commands, prays, forbids, enjoins, advises, exhorts, permits*; as,

Stop !	<i>arrêtez !</i>
Do it,	<i>faites-le.</i>
Let us write,	<i>écrivons.</i>

136. The subjunctive mood is so called from its dependency on a conjunction which precedes it—it generally serves to express an event in which the speaker is *not positive*, but rather doubtful. The subjunctive is also used after verbs expressing *desire, fear, satisfaction or dissatisfaction, approbation or blame, astonishment, &c.*

I question whether he will come,	<i>Je doute qu'il vienne.</i>
It is possible that I may be wrong,	<i>Il est possible (or il se peut) que j'aie tort.</i>
I am surprised you question it,	<i>Je suis surpris que vous en doutiez.</i>

OF TENSES, NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

137. Tenses indicate whether an action is doing, has been done, or will be done. There are naturally but three tenses, the *present*, the *perfect* or *past*, and *future*; but these have been subdivided, to mark their differences with accuracy.

138. The infinitive has six tenses.

The present, (*which is the root of the verb.*)
 the perfect,
 the gerund,
 the gerund past,
 the participle,
 the future.

139. The indicative mood has ten tenses.

The present,
 the imperfect,
 the perfect definite,
 the perfect indefinite, (*compound of the present.*)
 the perfect anterior, (*compound of the perfect definite.*)
 the pluperfect, (*compound of the imperfect.*)
 the future absolute,
 the future anterior, (*compound of the future.*)
 the conditional present,
 the conditional past, (*compound of the conditional.*)

[The French use several other tenses which form idiomatical expressions. These tenses will be noticed in the conjugations of regular verbs.]

140. The imperative has but one tense, which is at once *present* and *future*; present, with respect to the action of commanding, and future, with respect to the thing enjoined.

141. The subjunctive mood has four tenses.

The present or future,
 the imperfect,
 the perfect, (*compound of the present.*)
 the pluperfect, (*compound of the imperfect.*)

142. Each tense has two numbers, the singular and the plural;—(*singular*;) I love, *j'aime*:—(*plural*;) we love, *nous aimons*.

143. Each number has three persons.

First person.

144. When a person speaks of himself only, he does it in the first person singular, provided he uses a pronoun to stand in place of his name; as, I am, *je suis*.

145. But if he speaks of another, or of others, besides himself, he does it in the first person plural, and then he uses a pronoun to stand both for himself and the rest; as, we are, *nous sommes*.

Second person.

146. When the speaker addresses himself to one person, he may do it in the singular, but he will generally do it in the second person plural through politeness, and because we are seldom allowed to use *thee* and *thou*; thou doest, *tu fais*; you do right, sir, *vous faites bien, monsieur*.

147. If he speaks to several persons, he always does it in the second person plural; you all do, *vous faites tous*; you run, *vous courez*.

[When, in speaking to one person, we wish through politeness to give the pronoun and the verb a plural form, the adjectives relating to that pronoun are to remain in the singular; as, you are the only one; *vous êtes le seul*.—Nouns in the vocative are of the second person, whether a pronoun is used with the same or not.]

Third person.

148. When we speak of one person or thing, we do it in the third person singular, whether we use a pronoun to stand instead of the noun, or mention the very name of the person or thing; he does, *il fait*; she writes, *elle écrit*; my father pretends, *mon père prétend*.

149. If we speak of several persons or things, we do it in the third person plural; they do, *ils font* or *elles font*; your friends are rich, *vos amis sont riches*.

[When, in addressing ourselves to a person, politeness or respect induces us to use a dignifying expression, instead of a personal pronoun, the verb, as well as what relates to that expression, is

to be in the third person. Have you been so kind, my Lord, as to think of what you promised me? *Monseigneur a-t-il eu la bonté de penser à ce qu'il m'a promis ?*]

EXAMINATION.—122. What is a verb? 123. How many kinds of verbs are there? Define the active verb; the passive; the neuter; the reflected; the reciprocal; the impersonal. 124. How are verbs divided with respect to their formation? 125. What is meant by a regular verb? 126. What is an irregular verb? 127. What is a perfect verb? 128. What is a defective verb? 129. Why are the auxiliary verbs so called? 130. What is meant by conjugating a verb? 131. How many ways are there of conjugating the same verb? 132. What do you understand by moods, and how many are there? 133—6. What is the meaning of infinitive, indicative, imperative and subjunctive mood? 137. What do the tenses express? 138. How many tenses are there in the infinitive mood? 139. How many tenses has the indicative? 140. And the imperative? 141. Which are the tenses of the subjunctive? 142. How many numbers are there in verbs? 143. How many persons are there in each number? 144. When is the first person singular used? 145. When is the first person plural used? 146. When we address one person only, what person of the verb must we employ? 147. If we address several persons, what must we observe? 148. When is the third person used in the singular? 149. When is the plural used?

CONJUGATION

OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To have,</i>	<i>Avoir.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have had,</i>	<i>avoir eu.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Having,</i>	<i>ayant.</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having had,</i>	<i>ayant eu.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Had,</i>	<i>en.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to have,</i>	<i>devant avoir.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE*.

Sing.	Sing.
<i>I have</i>	<i>j'ai</i>
<i>Thou hast</i>	<i>tu as</i>
<i>He has</i>	<i>il a</i>
<i>my brother has</i>	<i>mon frère a</i>
<i>she has</i>	<i>elle a</i>
<i>my sister has</i>	<i>ma sœur a</i>
Plural.	Plural.
<i>We have</i>	<i>nous avons</i>
<i>you have</i>	<i>vous avez</i>
<i>they have</i> —masc.	<i>ils ont</i>
<i>my brothers have</i>	<i>mes frères ont</i>
<i>they have</i> —fem.	<i>elles ont</i>
<i>my sisters have</i>	<i>mes sœurs ont</i>

IMPERFECT†.

<i>I had</i>	<i>j'avais</i>
<i>thou hadst</i>	<i>tu avais</i>
<i>he had</i>	<i>il avait</i>
<i>we had</i>	<i>nous avions</i>
<i>you had</i>	<i>vous aviez</i>
<i>they had</i>	<i>ils avaient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE‡.

<i>I had</i>	<i>j'eus</i>
<i>thou hadst</i>	<i>tu eus</i>
<i>he had</i>	<i>il eut</i>
<i>we had</i>	<i>nous eûmes</i>
<i>you had</i>	<i>vous eûtes</i>
<i>they had</i>	<i>ils eurent</i>

* The *present* denotes a thing that is doing actually or habitually; as, I write; I am here; when it is fine weather, I take a walk; *j'écris, je suis ici, &c.*

† The *imperfect* denotes that an action was not finished, at a certain time; as, I was writing when my sister played, *j'écrivais tandis que ma sœur jouait*; or that an action was often repeated, at a time which is past; as, when I was at Paris I often went to the opera; *quand j'étais à Paris j'allais souvent à l'opéra.*

‡ The *perfect definite* denotes a time entirely past and of which nothing is left; as, I wrote yesterday to Rome, *j'écrivis hier à Rome*; I took a

PERFECT INDEFINITE*.

(Compound of the present.)

<i>I have had</i>	<i>j'ai eu</i>
<i>thou hast had</i>	<i>tu as eu</i>
<i>he has had</i>	<i>il a eu</i>
<i>we have had</i>	<i>nous avons eu</i>
<i>you have had</i>	<i>vous avez eu</i>
<i>they have had</i>	<i>ils ont eu</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR†.

(Compound of the perfect definite.)

<i>I had had</i>	<i>j'eus eu</i>
<i>thou hadst had</i>	<i>tu eus eu</i>
<i>he had had</i>	<i>il eut eu</i>
<i>we had had</i>	<i>nous eûmes eu</i>
<i>you had had</i>	<i>vous eûtes eu</i>
<i>they had had</i>	<i>ils eurent eu</i>

PLUPERFECT‡.

(Compound of the imperfect.)

<i>I had had</i>	<i>j'avais eu</i>
<i>thou hadst had</i>	<i>tu avais eu</i>
<i>he had had</i>	<i>il avait eu</i>
<i>we had had</i>	<i>nous avions eu</i>
<i>you had had</i>	<i>vous aviez eu</i>
<i>they had had</i>	<i>ils avaient eu</i>

journey to Bath last month, *je fis un voyage à Bath le mois dernier*. To authorise the use of this tense there must be the interval of at least one day. *N. B.* This tense is particularly adapted to historical relations.

* The *perfect indefinite* is used either for a past indeterminate, or for a past of which something still remains; as, I have travelled through Italy, *J'ai voyagé en Italie*; I breakfasted this morning in London, *J'ai déjeuné ce matin à Londres*. Therefore, when the thing spoken of, is represented as happening in the *day, week, month, year, or age* wherein we are, this tense must be used.

† The *perfect anterior* is used in the same sense as the perfect definite: it denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to elapse; but it besides expresses most commonly, a thing past before another, and is almost always construed with the conjunctions *quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que, &c.* When I had finished my letter she desired me to read it to her, *quand j'eus fini ma lettre elle me pria de la lui lire*.

‡ The *pluperfect* imports that at a certain specified time past, the thing spoken of was also past; I had written my letter when he came in, *J'avais écrit ma lettre quand il entra*.

[IDIOMATICAL PAST TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.

<i>I have just had</i>	<i>je viens d'avoir</i>
<i>thou hast just had</i>	<i>tu viens d'avoir</i>
<i>he has just had</i>	<i>il vient d'avoir</i>
<i>we have just had</i>	<i>nous venons d'avoir</i>
<i>you have just had</i>	<i>vous venez d'avoir</i>
<i>they have just had</i>	<i>ils viennent d'avoir</i>

Past definite anterior.

<i>I had just had</i>	<i>je venais d'avoir</i>
<i>thou hadst just had</i>	<i>tu venais d'avoir</i>
<i>he had just had</i>	<i>il venait d'avoir</i>
<i>we had just had</i>	<i>nous venions d'avoir</i>
<i>you had just had</i>	<i>vous veniez d'avoir</i>
<i>they had just had</i>	<i>ils venaient d'avoir</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE*.

<i>I shall or will have</i>	<i>j'aurai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt have</i>	<i>tu auras</i>
<i>he shall or will have</i>	<i>il aura</i>
<i>we shall or will have</i>	<i>nous aurons</i>
<i>you shall or will have</i>	<i>vous aurez</i>
<i>they shall or will have</i>	<i>ils auront</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR†.

(Compound of the future absolute.)

<i>I shall or will have had</i>	<i>j'aurai eu</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt have had</i>	<i>tu auras eu</i>
<i>he shall or will have had</i>	<i>il aura eu</i>

[It may appear to an Englishman, that the sense expressed by the pluperfect and perfect anterior, is nearly similar; yet there is that essential difference, that the action expressed by the perfect anterior, is subordinate to the following sentence, which is the principal object of our attention; thus, in—*dès que j'eus reconnu mon erreur, je lui fis des excuses*, as soon as I was sensible of my error, I made him an apology—my intention is to say that *je lui fis mes excuses*, but only after I was sensible of my error. It is quite the contrary with the pluperfect; in the sentence, *j'avais écrit ma lettre quand il entra*, my principal object is expressed by the pluperfect *j'avais écrit*, and the following words *quand il entra* are only subordinate, for they do not expressly mention at what time he came in.]

* The *future* denotes a thing which is to be, at a time not yet come; we shall have peace, *nous aurons la paix*.

† The *future anterior* shews that a thing will be done before another; I shall have finished my letter when you come, *j'aurai fini ma lettre quand vous viendrez*.

<i>we shall or will have had</i>	nous aurons eu
<i>you shall or will have had</i>	vous aurez eu
<i>they shall or will have had</i>	ils auront eu

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

Future indefinite positive.

<i>I am to have</i>	je dois avoir
<i>thou art to have</i>	tu dois avoir
<i>he is to have</i>	il doit avoir
<i>we are to have</i>	nous devons avoir
<i>you are to have</i>	vous devez avoir
<i>they are to have</i>	ils doivent avoir

Future instant.

<i>I am going to have</i>	je vais avoir
<i>thou art going to have</i>	tu vas avoir
<i>he is going to have</i>	il va avoir
<i>we are going to have</i>	nous allons avoir
<i>you are going to have</i>	vous allez avoir
<i>they are going to have</i>	ils vont avoir

Future imperfect.

<i>I was going to have</i>	j'allais avoir
<i>thou wast going to have</i>	tu allais avoir
<i>he was going to have</i>	il allait avoir
<i>we were going to have</i>	nous allions avoir
<i>you were going to have</i>	vous alliez avoir
<i>they were going to have</i>	ils allaient avoir

CONDITIONAL PRESENT*.

<i>I should or would have</i>	j'aurais
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have</i>	tu aurais
<i>he should or would have</i>	il aurait
<i>we should or would have</i>	nous aurions
<i>you should or would have</i>	vous auriez
<i>they should or would have</i>	ils auraient

* The conditional present denotes that a thing would happen upon a certain condition; as, I should go with you if I had time, *j'irais avec vous si j'avais le temps*. The conditional is also used in sentences of wishing; as, I wish it would be fair weather on Sunday, *je voudrais*, or, *je souhaiterais qu'il fût beau Dimanche*.

CONDITIONAL PAST*.

(Compound of the conditional.)

<i>I should or would have had</i>	<i>j'aurais eu</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have had</i>	<i>tu aurais eu</i>
<i>he should or would have had</i>	<i>il aurait eu</i>
<i>we should or would have had</i>	<i>nous aurions eu</i>
<i>you should or would have had</i>	<i>vous auriez eu</i>
<i>they should or would have had</i>	<i>ils auraient eu</i>

or	{	<i>j'eusse eu</i>	<i>nous eussions eu</i>
		<i>tu eusses eu</i>	<i>vous eussiez eu</i>
		<i>il eut eu</i>	<i>ils eussent eu</i>

[IDIOMATICAL TENSE.]

Future conditional.

<i>I should or ought to have</i>	<i>je devrais avoir</i>
<i>thou oughtest to have</i>	<i>tu devrais avoir</i>
<i>he ought to have</i>	<i>il devrait avoir</i>
<i>we ought to have</i>	<i>nous devrions avoir</i>
<i>you ought to have</i>	<i>vous devriez avoir</i>
<i>they ought to have</i>	<i>ils devraient avoir</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

(No first person singular.)

<i>Have (thou)</i>	<i>aie</i>
<i>let him have—let her have</i>	<i>qu'il ait—qu'elle ait</i>
<i>let us have</i>	<i>ayons</i>
<i>have (ye)</i>	<i>ayez</i>
<i>let them have</i>	<i>qu'ils aient—qu'elles aient</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND FUTURE.

<i>That I may have</i>	<i>que j'aie</i>
<i>that thou mayst have</i>	<i>que tu aies</i>
<i>that he may have</i>	<i>qu'il ait</i>

* The conditional past suggests the idea of a thing which might, could, would, or should, have happened, in an uncertain time, if another thing had taken place; the Minister would have given him that place, had he asked for it; *le Ministre lui aurait donné cette place, s'il l'avait demandée.*

that we may have
that you may have
that they may have

que nous ayons
que vous ayez
qu'ils aient

IMPERFECT.

That I might have
that thou mightst have
that he might have
that we might have
that you might have
that they might have

que j'eusse
que tu eusses
qu'il eût
que nous eussions
que vous eussiez
qu'ils eussent

PERFECT.

That I may have had
that thou mayst have had
that he may have had
that we may have had
that you may have had
that they may have had

que j'aie eu
que tu aies eu
qu'il ait eu
que nous ayons eu
que vous ayez eu
qu'ils aient eu

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have had
that thou mightst have had
that he might have had
that we might have had
that you might have had
that they might have had

que j'eusse eu
que tu eusses eu
qu'il eût eu
que nous eussions eu
que vous eussiez eu
qu'ils eussent eu

Observations on the following Exercises.

150. The verb must always be of the same person and number with its nominative.

151. Two or more nominatives singular require the verb to be in the plural.

152. When the nominative is a substantive, the verb must be in the third person singular or plural, according to the number of that substantive, and the pronoun is then omitted.

[Observe that the auxiliary *Avoir* serves to conjugate 1. Its own tenses. 2. The compound tenses of all active verbs. 3. The impersonal verbs. 4. Almost all neuter verbs.]

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. I have a favourable opportunity
favorable occasion. f.

Thou hast an implacable enemy—He has a good sword—We
_____ *ennemi. m.* (b) *épée. f.*

have books—You have friends—They have oranges.
(c) _____ (c) _____ (c) _____ *f.*

IMPERF. I had credit—Thou hadst ambition—He had riches—
(c) _____ *m.* (c) _____ *f.* (c) *richesse. f.*

She had modesty—We had paper—You had a flower—They had
(c) *f.* (c) *papier. m.* *fleur. f.*

apples—They had youth and beauty.
(c) *pomme. f. elles* *jeunesse. f.* (c) *f.*

PERFECT DEFIN. I had pears—Thou hadst wealth—He had
(c) *poire. f.* (c) *bien. m.*

politeness—Lucy had a pretty nosegay—We had lemons—
(c) *politesse. f.* *Lucie* (b) *bouquet. m.* (c) *citron. m.*

You had a fan—They had a splendid carriage—These
éventail. m. *magnifique voiture. f.*

ladies had an interview.
dame *entrevue. f.*

PERF. INDEF. I have had pens—Miss Julia has had violets—
(c) *plume. f.* * (c) *violette. f.*

We have had cherries—You have had almonds—My young
(c) *cerise. f.* (c) *amande. f.* (b)

cousins Henry and William have had gooseberries.
Henri † (a) (c) *groseille. f.*

PERFECT ANT. I had had strawberries—He had had the
(c) *fraise. f.*

command of a ship—We had had money—You had had a
commandement. m. *vaisseau. m.* (c) *argent. m.*

harp—Sophia and Elizabeth had had green parasols.
harpe. f. (c) *vert parasol. m.*

PLUPERFECT. I had had peaches—She had had an amiable
(c) *pêches*. f. ‡

companion—My brother had had an helmet—You had had a
compagne. f. *casque*. m.

little bird—They had had suspicions of the truth.
(b) *oiseau*. m. (c) *soupçon*. m. *vérité*. f.

FUT. ABSOL. I shall have a worthy friend—Thou wilt have
§ *digne*

a favourable answer—He will have a faithful dog—She will have
favorable *fidelle* *chien*. m.

coloured maps—We shall have news from the continent—You
(c) *coloré* *carte*. f. (c) *nouvelle*. f. pl. ——— m.

will have a considerable fortune—They will have convincing
————— f. *convaincant*

proofs of my sincere affection.
(c) *preuve*. f. ——— f.

FUT. ANT. I shall have had a note from my mother—He
billet. m.

will have had the new pamphlet—She will have had horrid
§ *nouveau* *brochure*. f. (c) *horrible*

pains—We shall have had a satisfactory explanation—You
peine. f. *satisfaisant* *explication*. f.

will have had unavailing cares—They will have had ridiculous
inutile *soin*. m. *ridicule*

pretensions—My sisters will have had a pleasant walk.
prétention. f. *promenade*. f.

CONDIT. PRÆS. I should have a powerful protector—The
puissant m.

prince would have a brilliant retinue—We should have the
——— *brillant* *suite*. f.

guardianship of that young lady—You would have a great fortune
tutelle. f. (b) (b) ——— f.

They would have pleasures and pains.
(c) *plaisir*. m. || (c) *peine*. f.

CONDIT. PAST. I should have had a formidable rival—Thou
redoutable ——— m.

wouldst have had a magnificent country seat—She would have
magnifique *château* m.

had a sound judgment—She would have had a great misfortune
sain jugement. m. (b) malheur. m.

We should have had an erroneous opinion—You would have
erroné — f.

had lace—They would have had dignities.

(c) dentelle. f. (c) dignité. f.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. Have (thou) complaisance, attention and
(c) — f. — f.

politeness—Let him have courage—Let the boy have patience—
politesse. f. (c) — m. (c) — f.

Let us have irreproachable manners—Have humanity—Let them
irréprochable (c) mœurs. f. pl. (c) f.

have respectable acquaintances—Let the ladies have the choice
— (c) connaissance. f. choix. m.

of those books.

References.

(a) See 151. (b) See 88. (c) See 62. * Mentioning an English young lady, particularly in a French letter, *miss* is used ; but addressing her, write or say *mademoiselle*. † An English christian name should not be translated, unless the French corresponding one does not differ much, such as *Edouard* ; but *Guillaume* should not be used for *William*, *Jacques* for *James*, &c. ‡ This adjective may precede its substantive. § This adjective must precede its noun. ¶ The article must be repeated before every substantive.

METHOD OF PARSING A VERB.

Questions.—Name its infinitive. Its person. Its number. Its tense. Its mood. What kind of verb is it ? Is it active, neuter, passive, reflected, reciprocal or impersonal ? What is its nominative ? What case does it govern ?

Read, translate, and parse.

J'ai des prunes. Il avait une voiture élégante et commode. Nous aurons de la prudence. Charlotte et George auraient eu des présents. J'ai eu des amis fidèles.

CONJUGATION

OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To be,</i>	<i>Etre.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have been,</i>	<i>avoir été.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Being,</i>	<i>étant.</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having been,</i>	<i>ayant été.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Been,</i>	<i>été.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to be,</i>	<i>devant être.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<p>Sing.</p> <p><i>I am</i> <i>thou art</i> <i>he is</i> <i>my brother is</i> <i>she is</i> <i>my sister is</i></p> <p>Plural.</p> <p><i>We are</i> <i>you are</i> <i>they are—masc.</i> <i>my brothers are</i> <i>they are—fem.</i> <i>my sisters are</i></p>	<p>Sing.</p> <p><i>je suis</i> <i>tu es</i> <i>il est</i> <i>mon frère est</i> <i>elle est</i> <i>ma sœur est</i></p> <p>Plural.</p> <p><i>nous sommes</i> <i>vous êtes</i> <i>ils sont</i> <i>mes frères sont</i> <i>elles sont</i> <i>mes sœurs sont</i></p>
--	--

IMPERFECT.

<p><i>I was</i> <i>thou wast</i> <i>he was</i> <i>we were</i> <i>you were</i> <i>they were</i></p>	<p><i>j'étais</i> <i>tu étais</i> <i>il était</i> <i>nous étions</i> <i>vous étiez</i> <i>ils étaient</i></p>
---	--

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I was</i>	<i>je fus</i>
<i>thou wast</i>	<i>tu fus</i>
<i>he was</i>	<i>il fut</i>
<i>we were</i>	<i>nous fûmes</i>
<i>you were</i>	<i>vous fûtes</i>
<i>they were</i>	<i>ils furent</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

(Compound of the present.)

<i>I have been</i>	<i>j'ai été</i>
<i>thou hast been</i>	<i>tu as été</i>
<i>he has been</i>	<i>il a été</i>
<i>we have been</i>	<i>nous avons été</i>
<i>you have been</i>	<i>vous avez été</i>
<i>they have been</i>	<i>ils ont été</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

(Compound of the perfect definite.)

<i>I had been</i>	<i>j'eus été</i>
<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>tu eus été</i>
<i>he had been</i>	<i>il eut été</i>
<i>we had been</i>	<i>nous eûmes été</i>
<i>you had been</i>	<i>vous eûtes été</i>
<i>they had been</i>	<i>ils eurent été</i>

PLUPERFECT.

(Compound of the imperfect.)

<i>I had been</i>	<i>j'avais été</i>
<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>tu avais été</i>
<i>he had been</i>	<i>il avait été</i>
<i>we had been</i>	<i>nous avions été</i>
<i>you had been</i>	<i>vous aviez été</i>
<i>they had been</i>	<i>ils avaient été</i>

[IDIOMATICAL TENSE.]

Past tense just elapsed.

<i>I have just been</i>	<i>je viens d'être</i>
<i>thou hast just been</i>	<i>tu viens d'être</i>
<i>he has just been</i>	<i>il vient d'être</i>
<i>we have just been</i>	<i>nous venons d'être</i>
<i>you have just been</i>	<i>vous venez d'être</i>
<i>they have just been</i>	<i>ils viennent d'être</i>

Past definite anterior.

<i>I had just been</i>	<i>je venais d'être</i>
<i>thou hadst just been</i>	<i>tu venais d'être</i>
<i>he had just been</i>	<i>il venait d'être</i>
<i>we had just been</i>	<i>nous venions d'être</i>
<i>you had just been</i>	<i>vous veniez d'être</i>
<i>they had just been</i>	<i>ils venaient d'être</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall or will be</i>	<i>je serai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt be</i>	<i>tu seras</i>
<i>he shall or will be</i>	<i>il sera</i>
<i>we shall or will be</i>	<i>nous serons</i>
<i>you shall or will be</i>	<i>vous serez</i>
<i>they shall or will be</i>	<i>ils seront</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(Compound of the future absolute.)

<i>I shall or will have been</i>	<i>j'aurai été</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt have been</i>	<i>tu auras été</i>
<i>he shall or will have been</i>	<i>il aura été</i>
<i>we shall or will have been</i>	<i>nous aurons été</i>
<i>you shall or will have been</i>	<i>vous aurez été</i>
<i>they shall or will have been</i>	<i>ils auront été</i>

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

Future indefinite positive.

<i>I am to be</i>	<i>je dois être</i>
<i>thou art to be</i>	<i>tu dois être</i>
<i>he is to be</i>	<i>il doit être</i>
<i>we are to be</i>	<i>nous devons être</i>
<i>you are to be</i>	<i>vous devez être</i>
<i>they are to be</i>	<i>ils doivent être</i>

Future instant.

<i>I am going to be</i>	<i>je vais être</i>
<i>thou art going to be</i>	<i>tu vas être</i>
<i>he is going to be</i>	<i>il va être</i>
<i>we are going to be</i>	<i>nous allons être</i>
<i>you are going to be</i>	<i>vous allez être</i>
<i>they are going to be</i>	<i>ils vont être</i>

Future imperfect.

<i>I was going to be</i>	<i>j'allais être</i>
<i>thou wast going to be</i>	<i>tu allais être</i>
<i>he was going to be</i>	<i>il allait être</i>
<i>we were going to be</i>	<i>nous allions être</i>
<i>you were going to be</i>	<i>vous alliez être</i>
<i>they were going to be</i>	<i>ils allaient être</i>

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

<i>I should or would be</i>	<i>je serais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst be</i>	<i>tu serais</i>
<i>he should or would be</i>	<i>il serait</i>
<i>we should or would be</i>	<i>nous serions</i>
<i>you should or would be</i>	<i>vous seriez</i>
<i>they should or would be</i>	<i>ils seraient</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

(Compound of the conditional.)

<i>I should or would have been</i>	<i>j'aurais été</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have been</i>	<i>tu aurais été</i>
<i>he should or would have been</i>	<i>il aurait été</i>
<i>we should or would have been</i>	<i>nous aurions été</i>
<i>you should or would have been</i>	<i>vous auriez été</i>
<i>they should or would have been</i>	<i>ils auraient été</i>

or {	<i>j'eusse été</i>	<i>nous eussions été</i>
	<i>tu eusses été</i>	<i>vous eussiez été</i>
	<i>il eût été</i>	<i>ils eussent été</i>

Conditional Future.

<i>I ought to be</i>	<i>je devrais être</i>
<i>thou oughtest to be</i>	<i>tu devrais être</i>
<i>he ought to be</i>	<i>il devrait être</i>
<i>we ought to be</i>	<i>nous devrions être</i>
<i>you ought to be</i>	<i>vous devriez être</i>
<i>they ought to be</i>	<i>ils devraient être</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

(No first person singular.)

<i>Be (thou)</i>	<i>sois</i>
<i>let him be—let her be</i>	<i>qu'il soit—qu'elle soit</i>
<i>let us be</i>	<i>soyons</i>
<i>be (ye)</i>	<i>soyez</i>
<i>let them be</i>	<i>qu'ils soient</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND FUTURE.

<i>That I may be</i>	<i>que je sois</i>
<i>that thou mayst be</i>	<i>que tu sois</i>
<i>that he may be</i>	<i>qu'il soit</i>

that we may be
that you may be
that they may be

que nous soyons
 que vous soyez
 qu'ils soient

IMPERFECT.

That I might be
that thou mightst be
that he might be
that we might be
that you might be
that they might be

que je fusse
 que tu fusses
 qu'il fût
 que nous fussions
 que vous fussiez
 qu'ils fussent

PERFECT.

That I may have been
that thou mayst have been
that he may have been
that we may have been
that you may have been
that they may have been

que j'ai été
 que tu aies été
 qu'il ait été
 que nous ayons été
 que vous ayez été
 qu'ils aient été

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have been
that thou mightst have been
that he might have been
that we might have been
that you might have been
that they might have been

que j'eusse été
 que tu eusses été
 qu'il eût été
 que nous eussions été
 que vous eussiez été
 qu'ils eussent été

153. When an adjective is joined to the verb *être*, that adjective must be of the same gender and number as the nominative to the verb : as,

Je suis content
 tu es content
 il est content
 mon frère est content
 nous sommes contents
 vous êtes contents
 ils sont contents
 mes frères sont contents

je suis contente
 tu es contente
 il est contente
 ma sœur est contente
 nous sommes contentes
 vous êtes contentes
 elles sont contentes
 mes sœurs sont contentes

[When, through politeness, we use *vous* instead of *tu*, the adjective must remain in the singular—*vous êtes content*; *vous êtes contente*. (See no. 149.)]

[*Observation.* The verb *Être* serves for the conjugation of all passive verbs. 2. Of reflected and reciprocal verbs. 3. Of about fifty neuter verbs.]

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. I am sincere—He is lively—
vif.*

She is lively—We are sincere—You are amiable—They are busy
(a) (a) (b) (a) occupé

IMPERFECT. I was timid—Thou wast quiet—He was constant
timide tranquille

She was constant—We were angry—You were useful—The
(a)

workmen were ready—These ladies were anxious.
inquiet

PERF. DEF. I was tired—Thou wast proud—He was frugal—
fatigué fier

She was frugal—We were tired—You were proud—They were
f. fatigué pl.

prodigal—Your sisters were pretty.
(a) (a)

PERF. INDIV. I have been free—She has been uneasy—We
libre inquiet

have been trifling—Ladies, you have been thoughtless—Your
(a) frivole Mesdames étourdi

sister and mine have been grateful.
(c) (d) (a) reconnaissant

PERFECT ANT. I had been just—He had been inconstant—
juste

We had been just—You had been inconstant—They had been
(a) f. pl. (a)

entertaining.
(a) amusant

PLUPERF. I had been prodigal—He had been careless—We
prodigue négligent

had been useful—They had been punctual—They had been
(a) utile (a) ponctuel f.

volatile.
(a) volatil

FUT. ABSOL. I shall be rich—He will be circumspect—We
riches *circumspect*
 shall be rich—You will be magnificent—They will be morose
 (a) pl. (a) *magnifique* (a) *chagrin*
 and peevish.
 (a) *fantasque*

FUT. ANT. I shall have been inconsiderate—He will have
inconsidéré
 been imprudent—Agatha will have been modest—We shall
 _____ *modeste*
 have been obstinate—You will have been illustrious—They will
 (*a*) *obstiné* sing. *illustre*
 have been troublesome.
 (*a*) *importun*

CONDIT. PRES. I should be civil and polite—He would be
 excusable—We should be skilful—They would be weak and
 inconsiderate
 (a) *adroit* f. *faible*
inconsidéré

CONDIT. PAST. I should have been fickle—Thou wouldst have
volage
 been condescending—He would have been awkward—We should
condescendant *maladroit*
 have been indiscreet—You would have been credulous—They
 would have been inflexible—These men would have been
 insensible.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. Be civil—Let him be liberal—Let her sing.
 be compassionate—Let us be methodical and clear—Be
compassant (a)..... (a)*clair*
 complaisant and affable—Let them be discreet and modest—Let
 them be sprightly and amiable.
 f. (a) *vif*

References.

(a) See 153. (b) See 147. (c) See 114. (d) See 151. * The adjectives in this and following exercises are always masculine singular.

OF REGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN ER*.

Aimer.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	<i>To love</i>	<i>aimer.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have loved</i>	<i>avoir aimé.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Loving</i>	<i>aimant.</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having loved</i>	<i>ayant aimé.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Loved</i>	<i>aimé</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to love</i>	<i>devant aimer.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

(*I—; I do—; I am—ing.†*)

<i>I love</i>	<i>j'aime</i>
<i>thou lovest</i>	<i>tu aimes</i>
<i>he loves</i>	<i>il aime</i>
<i>we love</i>	<i>nous aimons ‡</i>
<i>you love</i>	<i>vous aimez</i>
<i>they love</i>	<i>ils aiment</i>

IMPERFECT‡.

(*I—ed; I did—; I was—ing; I used to—.*)

<i>I did love</i>	<i>j'aimais</i>
<i>thou didst love</i>	<i>tu aimais</i>
<i>he did love</i>	<i>il aimait</i>

Formation of the Tenses.

* In regular verbs, five terminations serve to form the others, and on that account are called primitive; these are, the *present of the infinitive*, the *gerund*, the *participle*, the *present of the indicative* and the *perfect definite*.

† There is but one way to render these expressions, *I love, I do love, I am loving*, that is, *j'aime*, and never *je fais aimer, je suis aimant*. The same observation holds good for any tense, when the verb *to be*, is the real nominative. *N. B.* The line—stands for any English verb.

‡ From the gerund, by changing *ant*, into *ons*, for the first person plural; *es*, for the second; and *ent* (mute) for the third.

§ From the gerund, by changing the termination *ant*, into *ais, ais, ait; ions, iens, aient*.—*Avoir*, to have, and *savoir* to know, are the only exceptions; they make *j'avais*, and *je savais*.

we did love
you did love
they did love

nous aimions
vous aimiez
ils aimaient

PERFECT DEFINITE.

(I—ed ; I did —.)

I loved
thou lovedst
he loved
we loved
you loved
they loved

j'aimai
tu aimas
il aimâ
nous aimâmes
vous aimâtes
ils aimèrent

PERFECT INDEFINITE*.

(I have —ed.)

I have loved
thou hast loved
he has loved
we have loved
you have loved
they have loved

j'ai aimé
tu as aimé
il a aimé
nous avons aimé
vous avez aimé
ils ont aimé

PERFECT ANTERIOR*.

(I had —ed.)

I had loved
thou hadst loved
he had loved
we had loved
you had loved
they had loved

j'eus aimé
tu eus aimé
il eut aimé
nous eûmes aimé
vous eûtes aimé
ils eurent aimé

PLUPERFECT*.

(I had —ed.)

I had loved
thou hadst loved
he had loved
we had loved
you had loved
they had loved

j'avais aimé
tu avais aimé
il avait aimé
nous avions aimé
vous aviez aimé
ils avaient aimé

* The compound tenses are formed by adding the participle of the verb to be conjugated, to the auxiliary *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be.

[IDIOMATICAL PAST TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.

<i>I have just loved</i>	<i>je viens d'aimer</i>
<i>thou hast just loved</i>	<i>tu viens d'aimer</i>
<i>he has just loved</i>	<i>il vient d'aimer</i>
<i>we have just loved</i>	<i>nous venons d'aimer</i>
<i>you have just loved</i>	<i>vous venez d'aimer</i>
<i>they have just loved</i>	<i>ils viennent d'aimer</i>

Perfect definite anterior.

<i>I had just loved</i>	<i>je venais d'aimer</i>
<i>thou hadst just loved</i>	<i>tu venais d'aimer</i>
<i>he had just loved</i>	<i>il venait d'aimer</i>
<i>we had just loved</i>	<i>nous venions d'aimer</i>
<i>you had just loved</i>	<i>vous veniez d'aimer</i>
<i>they had just loved</i>	<i>ils venaient d'aimer</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE*.

(I shall or will——.)

<i>I shall or will love</i>	<i>j'aimerai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt love</i>	<i>tu aimeras</i>
<i>he shall or will love</i>	<i>il aimera</i>
<i>we shall or will love</i>	<i>nous aimerons</i>
<i>you shall or will love</i>	<i>vous aimerez</i>
<i>they shall or will love</i>	<i>ils aimeront</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(I shall or will have——ed.)

<i>I shall or will have loved</i>	<i>j'aurai aimé</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt have loved</i>	<i>tu auras aimé</i>
<i>he shall or will have loved</i>	<i>il aura aimé</i>
<i>we shall or will have loved</i>	<i>nous aurons aimé</i>
<i>you shall or will have loved</i>	<i>vous aurez aimé</i>
<i>they shall or will have loved</i>	<i>ils auront aimé</i>

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

Future indefinite positive.

<i>I am to love</i>	<i>je dois aimer</i>
<i>thou art to love</i>	<i>tu dois aimer</i>
<i>he is to love</i>	<i>il doit aimer</i>
<i>we are to love</i>	<i>nous devons aimer</i>
<i>you are to love</i>	<i>vous devez aimer</i>
<i>they are to love</i>	<i>ils doivent aimer</i>

Future instant.

<i>I am going to love</i>	<i>je vais aimer</i>
<i>thou art going to love</i>	<i>tu vas aimer</i>
<i>he is going to love</i>	<i>il va aimer</i>

* The future is formed from the present of the infinitive, by changing the final *r* into *rai*.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN ER.

<i>we are going to love</i>	nous allons aimer
<i>you are going to love</i>	vous allez aimer
<i>they are going to love</i>	ils vont aimer

Future imperfect.

<i>I was going to love</i>	j'allais aimer
<i>thou wast going to love</i>	tu allais aimer
<i>he was going to love</i>	il allait aimer
<i>we were going to love</i>	nous allions aimer
<i>you were going to love</i>	vous alliez aimer
<i>they were going to love</i>	ils allaient aimer

CONDITIONAL PRESENT*.

(I should or would —.)

<i>I should or would love</i>	j'aimerais
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst love</i>	tu aimerais
<i>he should or would love</i>	il aimerait
<i>we should or would love</i>	nous aimerions
<i>you should or would love</i>	vous aimeriez
<i>they should or would love</i>	ils aimeraient

CONDITIONAL PAST.

(I should or would have —ed.)

<i>I should or would have loved</i>	j'aurais aimé
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have loved</i>	tu aurais aimé
<i>he should or would have loved</i>	il aurait aimé
<i>we should or would have loved</i>	nous aurions aimé
<i>you should or would have loved</i>	vous auriez aimé
<i>they should or would have loved</i>	ils auraient aimé

or {	j'eusse aimé	nous eussions aimé
	tu eusses aimé	vous eussiez aimé
	il eût aimé	ils eussent aimé

[IDIOMATICAL TENSE.]

Future conditional.

<i>I ought to love</i>	je devrais aimer
<i>thou oughtest to love</i>	tu devrais aimer
<i>he ought to love</i>	il devrait aimer
<i>we ought to love</i>	nous devrions aimer
<i>you ought to love</i>	vous devriez aimer
<i>they ought to love</i>	ils devraient aimer

* Formed from the future, by changing the termination *rai* into *rais*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.
(No first person singular.)

Love thou	aime *
let him love	qu'il aime †
let us love	aimons ‡
love you (or) ye	aimez ‡
let them love	qu'ils aiment ‡

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE §.
(That I may —.)

That I may love	que j'aimé
that thou mayst love	que tu aimes
that he may love	qu'il aime
that we may love	que nous aimions
that you may love	que vous aimiez
that they may love	qu'ils aiment

IMPERFECT ||.

(That I might —.)

That I might love	que j'aimasse
that thou mightst love	que tu aimasses
that he might love	qu'il aimât
that we might love	que nous aimassions
that you might love	que vous aimassiez
that they might love	qu'ils aimassent

PERFECT.

(That I may have —ed.)

That I may have loved	que j'aie aimé
that thou mayst have loved	que tu aies aimé
that he may have loved	qu'il ait aimé

* The second person singular of the imperative is like the first person singular, present indicative, omitting the pronoun *je*. Ex: *je parle*, I speak; *parle*, speak thou.

† Formed from the third person plural of the present indicative, by cutting off *nt*; as *ils donnent*, they give; *qu'il donne*, let him give.

‡ The first, second, and third person plural of the imperative are the same as the first, second, and third person plural of the present indicative. *N. B.* Observe that the second person singular, and the first and second person plural, have no nominative expressed.

§ The first person is like the third singular of the imperative, always ending in *e*; the second ends in *es*, and the third in *e*; the first and second plural, as in the imperfect of the indicative; and the third person plural like the third plural of the imperative.

|| Formed from the second person singular of the perfect indicative, by adding *se*: *tu aimes*, *que j'aimasse*.

that we may have loved
that you may have loved
that they may have loved

que nous ayons aimé
que vous ayez aimé
qu'ils aient aimé

PLUPERFECT.

(That I might have — ed.)

That I might have loved
that thou mightst have loved
that he might have loved
that we might have loved
that you might have loved
that they might have loved

que j'eusse aimé
que tu eusses aimé
qu'il eût aimé
que nous eussions aimé
que vous eussiez aimé
qu'ils eussent aimé

IMPORTANT OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

✍ The following observations being well understood, will much facilitate the conjugation of all the French verbs.

[A regular verb has its *radical* and *variable* letters. The *radical* letters are those which precede the ending of a verb. The ending of a verb is composed of *variable* letters, which, in regular conjugations, are common to all the verbs of that termination.

In this grammar, the variable letters are printed in *Italics*, in the model given—For instance—*Aimer* has *er* for its variable, *aim* for its radical letters.

When a verb is to be conjugated after a model given, the radical of that verb must be first written, and then the variable letters are added, according to the tense and person wanted.—Suppose I want the first person plural of the imperfect of *refuser*; I first observe that *refuser*, being of the first conjugation, has *er* for its variable letters in the infinitive; therefore, after having cut off the last letters, I have *refus* for its *radical*. I then find, in the model given, that the ending of the first person plural of the imperfect is *ions*, I add it to *refus* which gives *refusions*, the word required.]

EXERCISE.

✍ The French verbs given in this and following exercises, are in the present of the Infinitive.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. I blame his conduct—
blâmer *conduite. f.*

Thou admirest the beauties of that great work—The general
admirer *beauté. f.* (a) *ouvrage* —m.

observes the disposition of the enemy—We approve the projects
observer ——— f. *ennemi*.m. *approuver projet*.m.

of your friend—You disturb the felicity of that family—The
troubler f. *famille*. f.

neighbours blame his conduct and yours.
voisin. m.

IMPERFECT. I did dread his presence and firmness—Thou
appréhender ——— f. * *fermeté*. f.

didst decline the offer—Hortensia was accusing her friend—He
refuser offre.f. *Hortense* (b) *accuser* ———

was watering the young plants—We did love our duties—You did
 (b) *arroser* (a) *plante*.f. *devoir*.m. *com*

comfort the afflicted—The ancient Romans respected old age.
consoler affligé.m.pl. † *Romains respecter vieillesse*.f.

PERF. DEF. I neglected his friendship—He deserved his
 † *négliger amitié*. f. *mériter*

esteem and ours—The actress sung—We settled the affair—
estime. f. *actrice*.f. *chanter* † *arranger affaire*.f.

You considered the cause of that event—They rejected his
considérer ——— f. *événement*.m. *rejeter*

proposals.
proposition. f.

PERF. INDEF. I have protected their youth—Thou hast
 † *protéger jeunesse*.f.

borrowed money—The prince has rewarded the exemplary
emprunter § *récompenser*

conduct of that officer—We have examined the productions of
conduite.f. *officier*.m. *examiner* ——— f.

that celebrated author—You have improved her mind—Our
célèbre auteur.m. *cultiver esprit*.m.

defeats have damped our courage.
défaite. f. *glacer* ——— m.

PERF. ANT. I had exhausted my resources—We had watered
épuiser ressource. f.

the flowers—You had studied the principles of that language—
fleur. f. *étudier principe*.m. *langue*. f.

They had dispersed the mob.
disperser populace. f.

PLUPER. I had drained an unwholesome marsh—Thou hadst
dessécher malsain marais.m.
 proposed an erroneous opinion—He had considered the justice
proposer erroné — f. considérer — f.
 of your demand—We had offended our protectors—You had
demande.f. offenserm.
 forgiven her rude behaviour—These young noblemen had
pardonner malhonnête conduite.f. (a) seigneur.m.
 manifested their displeasure.
montrer mécontentement.m.

FUT. ABSOL. I shall fortify the entrance of our camp—Thou
fortifier entrée.f. — m.
 wilt publish the particulars of that affair—Our government will
publier détail.m. affaires.f. gouvernement.m.
 protect the inhabitants of these Islands—We shall prepare an
protéger habitant.m. île.f. préparer
 elegant entertainment—You will celebrate his victory—They
magnifique festin.m. célébrerf.
 will astonish their hearers.
étonner auditeur.m.

FUT. ANT. I shall have finished this book—Thou wilt have
achever
 appeased his anger—The lawyer will have consulted the laws—
apaiser colère.f. avocat.m. consulter loi.f.
 We shall have meditated our answer—You will have brought
méditer réponse.f. apporter
 the letters—They will have comforted that afflicted family.
lettre.f. consoler affligé famille.f.

CONDITIONAL. I should avoid the danger—Thou wouldst
éviter — m.
 cross the river—He would discover that atrocious plot—We
traverser rivière.f. dévoiler atroce complot.m.
 should pay the debts of that poor man—The nymphs would dance.
payer dette.f. pauvre nymphe.f. danser

CONDIT. PAST. I should have liked hunting and fishing—
aimer || chasse.f. || pêche.f.
 He would have unravelled the clue of that intrigue—We should
démêler fil.m. — f.

have imitated his example and theirs—You would have respected
imiter exemple.m. respecter

the laws of your country—They would have perfected the
loi. f. pays. m. perfectionner

qualities of their son.
qualité. f. fils. m.

IMPERATIVE. Consult the lights of reason—Let him love
consulter lumière.f. raison. f.

justice, peace, and virtue—Let the child breakfast—Let us
||—f. ||paix.f. ||vertu. f. déjeuner

cultivate the flowers of our garden—Seal the letter—Let them
cultiver fleur. f. jardin.m. cacheter

give up that ridiculous project—Let the ladies accept the
abandonner ridicule projet.m. accepter

proposals of the princess.
proposition.f. princesse. f.

INFIN. MOOD. To have imitated—Having observed the rules
imiter observer règle.f.
 of discretion—Consulting—Having consulted—To bring—Hav-
 _____ f.

ing brought the letters—Avoiding—Avoided.
éviter

IDIOMAT. TENSES. I have just arranged my books—We
arranger

have just refused his invitation—They have just brought the
refuser _____ f. apporter

letter—I had just bought a horse—You had just paid your
acheter cheval

debts—They had just settled the affair—I am to speak to the
dette. f. arranger

minister—He is to dine with the captain—You are to dance at
dîner avec capitaine. danser à

the ball—They are to play a duet—I am going to give a book
jouer duo.m.

to that young lady—I was going to sing—We were going to
chanter

examine your bill—I ought to approve your resolution—
examiner mémoire.m. approuver _____ f.

We ought to dismiss that bad servant—They ought to cultivate
renvoyer domestique cultiver
 their lands.
terre

References.

(a) See 88. (b) See note † page 67. * The pronoun must be repeated. † This adjective to precede its substantive. ‡ Verbs in *ger* take an *e* after their radical letters, whenever *g* is to be followed by *a* or *o*—so, instead of *je négligai*, we write *je négligeai*. See the conjugation of the verb *juger* among the irregular. § Substantive used in a partitive sense. || — in a definite sense, see reference † page 7.

↪ In the above and all future exercises, observe that the English word over this mark *œ* is not expressed in French.

↪ The different tenses of the subjunctive will be exemplified after we have explained the conjunctions with which they are necessarily connected.

How to Frenchify many English verbs.

Most English verbs ending in *fy*, *ate*, *ish*, *ise*, *use*, and *ute*, become French by altering their termination thus:

<i>fy</i> into <i>fier</i>	<i>pacify</i> ,	<i>pacifier</i> .
<i>ate</i> — <i>er</i>	<i>abrogate</i> ,	<i>abroger</i> .
<i>ish</i> — <i>ir</i>	<i>abolish</i> ,	<i>abolir</i> .
<i>ise</i> }	<i>realise</i> ,	<i>réaliser</i> .
<i>use</i> } by adding <i>r</i> .	<i>abuse</i> ,	<i>abuser</i> .
<i>ute</i> }	<i>refute</i> ,	<i>réfuter</i> .

SECOND CONJUGATION IN IR.

Punir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To punish</i>	<i>Punir</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have punished</i>	<i>avoir puni</i>
GERUND.	<i>Punishing</i>	<i>punissant</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having punished</i>	<i>ayant puni</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Punished</i>	<i>puni</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to punish</i>	<i>devant punir</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I punish
thou punishest
he punishes
we punish
you punish
they punish

je punis
tu punis
il punit
nous punissons
vous punissez
ils punissent

IMPERFECT.

I did punish
thou didst punish
he did punish
we did punish
you did punish
they did punish

je punissais
tu punissais
il punissait
nous punissions
vous punissiez
ils punissaient

PERFECT DEFINITE.

I punished
thou punishedst
he punished
we punished
you punished
they punished

je punis
tu punis
il punit
nous punîmes
vous punîtes
ils punirent

PERF. INDEF. *I have punished,*

j'ai puni.

PERF. ANT. *I had punished,*

j'eus puni.

PLUPERF. *I had punished,*

j'avais puni.

[IDIOMATICAL PAST TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.] I have just punished, je viens de punir.
Past defn. ant.] I had just punished, je venais de punir.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall or will punish
thou shalt or wilt punish
he shall or will punish
we shall or will punish
you shall or will punish
they shall or will punish

je punirai
tu puniras
il punira
nous punirons
vous punirez
ils puniront

FUT. ANT. *I shall have punished, j'aurai puni.*

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

Fut. indef. positive.] I am to punish, je dois punir.
Fut. instant.] I am going to punish, je vais punir.
Fut. imperf.] I was going to punish, j'allais punir.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

<i>I should or would punish</i>	<i>je punirais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst punish</i>	<i>tu punirais</i>
<i>he should or would punish</i>	<i>il punirait</i>
<i>we should or would punish</i>	<i>nous punirions</i>
<i>you should or would punish</i>	<i>vous puniriez</i>
<i>they should or would punish</i>	<i>ils puniraient</i>

CON. PAST. *I should have punished,* { *j'aurais puni.*
j'eusse puni.

[IDIOMATICAL CONDITIONAL TENSE.]

Condit. fut. *I should or ought to punish,* je devrais punir.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>Punish thou</i>	punis
<i>let him punish</i>	qu'il punisse
<i>let us punish</i>	punissons
<i>punish you or ye</i>	punissez
<i>let them punish</i>	qu'ils punissent

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>That I may punish</i>	<i>que je punisse</i>
<i>that thou mayst punish</i>	<i>que tu punisses</i>
<i>that he may punish</i>	<i>qu'il punisse</i>
<i>that we may punish</i>	<i>que nous punissions</i>
<i>that you may punish</i>	<i>que vous punissiez</i>
<i>that they may punish</i>	<i>qu'ils punissent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might punish</i>	que je punisse
<i>that thou mightst punish</i>	que tu punisses
<i>that he might punish</i>	qu'il punît
<i>that we might punish</i>	que nous punissions
<i>that you might punish</i>	que vous punissiez
<i>that they might punish</i>	qu'ils punissent

PERF. *That I may have punished,* que j'aie puni.

PLUPER. *That I might have punished, que j'eusse puni.*

EXERCISE.

INDICAT. PRES. I fulfil my obligations—Thou punishest an
remplir ——— f.

obstinate child—He feeds that little bird—We enlarge our
obstiné nourrir * oiseau.m. agrandir

estate at the expense of yours—You soften a disobliging
bien.m. à dépens.m.pl. (a) adoucir désobligeant

answer—Your brothers choose a picture.
réponse.f. choisir tableau.m.

IMPERFECT. I did soften the heart of my tyrant—Thou didst
attendrir tyrant

weaken his prejudices—He was building a house—We did
affaiblir préjugé.m. (b) bâtir

embellish our country house—You were finishing your
embellir maison de campagne.f. (b) finir

book—The poets did embellish these fables.
poète.m. ——— f.

PERF. DEFIN. I demolished the edifice—He tarnished this
démolir ——— m. ternir

looking-glass—We furnished the money—You performed the
miroir.m. fournir remplir

duties of your place—The spectators applauded.
devoir.m. ——— f. m. applaudir.

PERF. INDEF. I have franked your letter and his—The
affranchir (c)

pride of Alexander has sullied his glory—We have succeeded
orgueil.m. ternir f. réussir

—You have diverted the company—They have enlarged their
divertir compagnie.f.

house.

PERF. ANT. I had built a wall—He had softened the wax—
muraille.f. amollir cire. f.

We had established our eldest son—You had filled your pockets
établir aîné. fils.m. remplir poche.f.

They had adorned their drawing-room.
embellir salon de compagnie.

PLUPERFECT. I had widened my windows—She had dazzled
élargir *fenêtre. f.* *éblouir*
 the company—We had polished his manners—You had finished
polir *manière. f.* *finir*
 your work—They had weakened the force of their reasons,
affaiblir —f. *raison. f.*

FUT. ABSOL. I shall cure the disease—That idleness will
guérir *maladie. f.* *paresse. f.*
 blunt his genius—You will finish your exercise—They will
engourdir *génie. m.* *thème. m.*
 establish wise and just laws.
 (d) *loi. f.*

FUT. ANT. I shall have shortened—He will have fulfilled his
raccourcir *accomplir*
 vows—We shall have hardened his heart.
cœur. m. *endurcir* *cœur. m.*

CONDIT. PRES. I should cherish life—The tree would
chérir
 blossom—We should fulfil our promises—They would finish
fleurir *promesse. f.*
 the book.

CONDIT. PAST. I should have chosen a pretty colour—He
choisir *couleur. f.*
 would have filled up the fortifications of that town—They would
remplir —f. *ville. f.*
 have united gracefulness to beauty.
unir *grâce. f.*

IMPERATIVE. Define that word—Let her choose a fan—Let
définir *mot. m.*
 the young lady choose a book—Let us level the ground—
aplanir *terrain. m.*
 Finish your letters—Let them enrich the mind of their
enrichir *esprit. m.*
 pupils.
élève. m. & f.

References.

(a) See 113. (b) See note † page 67. (c) See 114. (d) See reference (a) page 34. * This adjective must precede its substantive.

THIRD CONJUGATION, IN *EVOIR*.

Devoir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To owe</i>	<i>Devoir</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have owed</i>	<i>avoir dû</i>
GERUND.	<i>Owing</i>	<i>deyant</i>
GERUND PAST. —	<i>Having owed</i>	<i>ayant dû</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Owed</i>	<i>dû</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to owe</i>	<i>devant devoir</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I owe</i>	<i>je dois</i>
<i>thou owest</i>	<i>tu dois</i>
<i>he owes</i>	<i>il doit</i>
<i>we owe</i>	<i>nous devons</i>
<i>you owe</i>	<i>vous devez</i>
<i>they owe</i>	<i>ils doivent †</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did owe</i>	<i>je devais</i>
<i>thou didst owe</i>	<i>tu devais</i>
<i>he did owe</i>	<i>il devait</i>
<i>we did owe</i>	<i>nous devions</i>
<i>you did owe</i>	<i>vous deviez</i>
<i>they did owe</i>	<i>ils devaient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I owed</i>	<i>je dus</i>
<i>thou owedst</i>	<i>tu dus</i>
<i>he owed</i>	<i>il dut</i>
<i>we owed</i>	<i>nous dûmes</i>
<i>you owed</i>	<i>vous dûtes</i>
<i>they owed</i>	<i>ils durent</i>
PERF. INDEF. <i>I have owed</i>	<i>j'ai dû</i>
PERF. ANT. <i>I had owed</i>	<i>j'eus dû</i>
PLUPERF. <i>I had owed</i>	<i>j'avais dû</i>

* Verbs of this conjugation have an irregularity in the 3rd. plur. present indicative—They also form their future by changing *evoir* into *evrai*.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *ÊVOIR*.

FOR THE IDIOMATICAL TENSES

see the preceding verbs.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall or will owe</i>	<i>je devrai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt owe</i>	<i>tu devras</i>
<i>he shall or will owe</i>	<i>il devra</i>
<i>we shall or will owe</i>	<i>nous devrons</i>
<i>you shall or will owe</i>	<i>vous devrez</i>
<i>they shall or will owe</i>	<i>ils devront</i>
FUT. ANT. <i>I shall have owed</i>	<i>j'aurai dû</i>

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

<i>I should or would owe</i>	<i>je devrais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst owe</i>	<i>tu devrais</i>
<i>he should or would owe</i>	<i>il devrait</i>
<i>we should or would owe</i>	<i>nous devrions</i>
<i>you should or would owe</i>	<i>vous devriez</i>
<i>they should or would owe</i>	<i>ils devraient</i>
CON. PAST. <i>I should have owed</i>	<i>j'aurais dû</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>Owe thou</i>	<i>dois</i>
<i>let him owe</i>	<i>qu'il doive</i>
<i>let us owe</i>	<i>devons</i>
<i>owe you or ye</i>	<i>devez</i>
<i>let them owe</i>	<i>qu'ils doivent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>That I may owe</i>	<i>que je doive</i>
<i>that thou mayst owe</i>	<i>que tu doives</i>
<i>that he may owe</i>	<i>qu'il doive</i>
<i>that we may owe</i>	<i>que nous devions</i>
<i>that you may owe</i>	<i>que vous deviez</i>
<i>that they may owe</i>	<i>qu'ils doivent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might owe</i>	<i>que je dusse</i>
<i>that thou mightst owe</i>	<i>que tu dusses</i>
<i>that he might owe</i>	<i>qu'il dût</i>

that we might owe
that you might owe
that they might owe

que nous dussions
que vous dussiez
qu'ils dussent

PERF. That I may have owed
PLUPER. That I might have owed

que j'aie dû
que j'eusse dû

EXERCISE.

✎ We shall omit the compound tenses in the following exercises on verbs conjugated affirmatively, having fully exemplified them in the preceding pages.

INDICAT. PRES. I perceive the summit of the Alps—Thou
*apercevoir sommet. m. Alpes. f. pl.
receivest his advice—He understands that difficult rule—
*recevoir avis. m. pl. *concevoir difficile règle. f.
We owe a considerable sum to your partners—They receive
_____ somme. f. associé. m.
an urgent invitation.
_____ f.

IMPERFECT. I did owe again—He did conceive—We owed—
† redevoir concevoir
You did conceive the propriety of that behaviour—They did
convenances. f. conduite. f.
owe respect.
_____ m.

PERF. DEFIN. I saw the castle from my window—We
*apercevoir château. m. fenêtre. f.
received the news of his death—We conceived a great esteem—
nouvelle. f. mort. f. estime. f.
They conceived the blackness of that crime.
noirceur. f. _____ m.

FUTURE. I shall receive the visit of your friend—He will
visite. f.
discover the spire of his village—We shall receive our income—
*apercevoir clocher. m. _____ m. revenu. m.
You will owe your misfortunes to your faults—They will
malheur. m. faute. f.
receive our letters and theirs.

CONDITIONAL. I should conceive your project—He would
projet. m.

receive—We should receive your friends and theirs—You would
 discover the ship—They would perceive their errors.
apercevoir vaisseau. m. f.

IMPERATIVE. Conceive the horror of his situation—Let the
.... f. f.

child receive a present from his father—Let us receive his
.... m.

apology—Receive this mark of my confidence and esteem—
excuse. f. marque. f. confiance. f. ‡ estime. f.

Let them perceive the snare.
piège. m.

References.

* Verbs ending in *cevoir* change *c* into *ç* before the vowels *a, o, u*, in order to give the *c* the soft sound it has in the infinitive. † In verbs expressing a repetition of the action, the English word *again* is translated into French by the syllable *re*, prefixed to the root of the verb; as, *devoir*, to owe; *redevoir*, to owe again. ‡ The pronoun must be repeated.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, IN RE.

Rendre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To render</i>	<i>Rendre</i>
PERFECT.	<i>to have rendered</i>	<i>avoir rendu</i>
GERUND.	<i>rendering</i>	<i>rendant</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>having rendered</i>	<i>ayant rendu</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>rendered</i>	<i>rendu</i>
FUTURE.	<i>about to render</i>	<i>devant rendre</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I render</i>	<i>je rends</i>
<i>thou renderest</i>	<i>tu rends</i>
<i>he renders</i>	<i>il rend</i>

we render
you render
they render

nous rendons
vous rendez
ils rendent

IMPERFECT.

I did render
thou didst render
he did render
we did render
you did render
they did render

je rendais
tu rendais
il rendait
nous rendions
vous rendiez
ils rendaient

PERFECT DEFINITE.

I rendered
thou renderedst
he rendered
we rendered
you rendered
they rendered

je rendis
tu rendis
il rendit
nous rendîmes
vous rendîtes
ils rendirent

PERF. INDEF. *I have rendered*

j'ai rendu

PERF. ANT. *I had rendered*

j'eus rendu

PLUPERF. *I had rendered*

j'avais rendu

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall or will render
thou shalt or wilt render
he shall or will render
we shall or will render
you shall or will render
they shall or will render

je rendrai
tu rendras
il rendra
nous rendrons
vous rendrez
ils rendront

FUT. ANT. *I shall or will have rendered* *j'aurai rendu*

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I should or would render
thou shouldst or wouldst render
he should or would render
we should or would render
you should or would render
they should or would render

je rendrais
tu rendrais
il rendrait
nous rendrions
vous rendriez
ils rendraient

CON. PAST. *I should or would have rendered* *j'aurais rendu*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>Render thou</i>	<i>rends</i>
<i>let him render</i>	<i>qu'il rende</i>
<i>let us render</i>	<i>rendons</i>
<i>render you or ye</i>	<i>rendez</i>
<i>let them render</i>	<i>qu'ils rendent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>That I may render</i>	<i>que je rende</i>
<i>that thou mayst render</i>	<i>que tu rendes</i>
<i>that he may render</i>	<i>qu'il rende</i>
<i>that we may render</i>	<i>que nous rendions</i>
<i>that you may render</i>	<i>que vous rendiez</i>
<i>that they may render</i>	<i>qu'ils rendent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might render</i>	<i>que je rendisse</i>
<i>that thou mightst render</i>	<i>que tu rendisses</i>
<i>that he might render</i>	<i>qu'il rendît</i>
<i>that we might render</i>	<i>que nous rendissions</i>
<i>that you might render</i>	<i>que vous rendissiez</i>
<i>that they might render</i>	<i>qu'ils rendissent</i>

PERF. <i>That I may have rendered</i>	<i>que j'aie rendu</i>
PLUPER. <i>That I might have rendered</i>	<i>que j'eusse rendu</i>

✎ In the following exercises, when several English words are included between rules, they must be translated by the only words placed under.

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE, PRES. I hear the voice of my friend—He is
entendre voir. f.

waiting—We confound these notions—You waste your time—
attendre confondre — f. perdre temps. m.

The children melt the lead.
fondre plomb. m.

IMPERFECT. I did condescend—The dog did bite—We were
condescendre mordre

waiting—You were | coming down | the hill—They diffused
attendre *descendre* *colline.f. répandre*

the graces of expression.
 — f. — f.

PERF. DEFIN. I waited the arrival of the mail—Thou soldest
attendre *arrivée. f. malle. f. vendre*

thy services to the tyrant of my country—He sold his house—
 — m. *tyran. m. pays. m. maison.f.*

The scholar understood the rules of his grammar—We heard
écolier.m. entendre règle. f. grammaire. f. entendre

their complaints—You forbade that diversion—They spread
plainte. f. défendre amusement. m. répandre

the glory of their nation.
 f. — f.

FUTURE. I shall | wait for | the opinion of sensible people—
attendre — f. *sensé personne.f.pl.*

Thou wilt hear that gentleman—He will condescend—We shall
monsieur condescendre

suspend the prosecution of that affair—You will lose your
suspendre poursuite. f. affaires. f. perdre

money—The different cities will pretend.
 — ville. f. *prétendre*

COND. PRES. I should expect the protection of the minister—
attendre — f. *ministre.m.*

She would enlarge the bounds of her dominions—We should
étendre limite. f. état. m.

expect a favourable answer—They would suspend the election.
favorable réponse. f. — f.

IMPERATIVE. | Come down | —Let him hear their justification
descendre — f.

Let us | wait for | the result of that conference—Ye Sovereigns
attendre résultat. m. — f. *O souverain*

make your people happy—Let them suspend their judgment.
rendre peuple.m. jugement. m.

these important subjects—We have renewed an old alliance—
 ——— *sujet. m.* *renouveler ‡ ancien* — *f.*

These sudden revolutions had impoverished their wealthy families.
soudain ——— *f.* *appauvrir* *opulent*

References.

(a) See ♣ ‡ page 29. * This adjective may precede or follow its substantive. † *Un honnête homme*, is, an honest man; *un homme honnête*, is, a civil man. ‡ This adjective to precede its substantive. ¶ As this tense answers to the imperfect and perfect, it has been marked with a ¶, to denote that the perfect must be used. Without that sign, it is to be rendered by the imperfect.

♣ § When the word *should* expresses a duty, or necessity, or when it can be turned into *ought*, it is rendered into French by the conditional of the verb *devoir*. You should write, that is, you ought to write, *vous devriez écrire*.

♣ ¶ Whenever the present indicative of the verb *to be*, precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting futurity in the action, the idiomatical tense future indefinite positive is always used in French.

OF NEGATION.

154. The adverb *not*, renders an English verb negative. It is translated into French by *ne*, which is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, in simple tenses.

I have not; *je n'ai pas*, or *je n'ai point*.*

155. The words *do* or *did*, which generally precede an English verb conjugated negatively, are not expressed in French.

I do not love, *je n'aime pas*.

156. In compound tenses, *ne* comes before the auxiliary, and *pas* or *point* after it.

I have not spoken, *je n'ai pas parlé*.

157. When the verb is in the present tense of the

* *Ne* is employed without *pas* or *point*, if there is in the sentence a pronoun or adverb expressing negation, such as, *nul*, none; *personne*, nobody; *jamais*, never; *rien*, nothing; *ne plus*, no more; &c. as, I never give, *je ne donne jamais*; I give nothing, *je ne donne rien*; I only give, or, I give but, *je ne donne que*

infinitive, *ne pas* or *ne point* are not separated.

Not to study, *ne pas étudier*.

158. If the verb is in the perfect of the infinitive, it is optional to separate them or not.

Not to have studied, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{ne pas avoir étudié.} \\ \textit{n'avoir pas étudié.} \end{array} \right.$

[*Point* is a stronger negative than *pas*, and is therefore preferred in general propositions. *L'homme vertueux ne craint point la mort*; a virtuous man does not fear death.

Point denies absolutely, and without restriction or exception; *pas* denies with modification: *Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point coupables*, means that none of the accused are guilty—*Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas coupables*, means that amongst those who are accused, some are not guilty.

Point expresses something permanent or habitual; *pas* is used to denote something momentaneous or accidental. *Il ne lit point*, *il ne joue point*; he never reads, he never plays—*Il ne lit pas*, *il ne joue pas*; he does not read now, he does not play now.

Pas is used before adverbs and nouns of number: *pas souvent*, not often; *il n'a pas un ami*, he has not a friend.]

MODEL

FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED

NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	Not to give	Ne pas donner
PERFECT.	Not to have given	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{ne pas avoir donné} \\ \textit{n'avoir pas donné} \end{array} \right.$
GERUND.	Not giving	ne donnant pas
GERUND PAST.	Not having given	n'ayant pas donné

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I do not give</i>	<i>je ne donne pas</i>
<i>thou dost not give</i>	<i>tu ne donnes pas</i>
<i>he does not give</i>	<i>il ne donne pas</i>

*we do not give
you do not give
they do not give*

nous ne donnons pas
vous ne donnez pas
ils ne donnent pas

IMPERFECT.

*I did not give
thou didst not give
he did not give
we did not give
you did not give
they did not give*

je ne donnais pas
tu ne donnais pas
il ne donnait pas
nous ne donnions pas
vous ne donniez pas
ils ne donnaient pas

PERF. DEF. *I did not give*

je ne donnai pas

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

*I have not given
thou hast not given
he has not given
we have not given
you have not given
they have not given*

je n'ai pas donné
tu n'as pas donné
il n'a pas donné
nous n'avons pas donné
vous n'avez pas donné
ils n'ont pas donné

PERF. ANT. *I had not given*

je n'eus pas donné

PLUPER. *I had not given*

je n'avais pas donné

FUTURE. *I shall not give*

je ne donnerai pas

FUT. ANT. *I shall not have given*

je n'aurai pas donné

COND. *I should not give*

je ne donnerais pas

COND. PAST. *I should not have given*

{ je n'aurais pas donné
je n'eusse pas donné

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Do not give
let him not give
let us not give
give not
let them not give*

ne donne pas
qu'il ne donne pas
ne donnons pas
ne donnez pas
qu'ils ne donnent pas

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *That I may not give*

que je ne donne pas

IMPER. *That I might not give*

que je ne donnasse pas

PERF. *That I may not have given*

que je n'aie pas donné

PLUPER. *That I might not have given*

que je n'eusse pas donné

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE. PRES. I do not speak of that event—I have
 (a) *parler* *événement. m.*
 no impatience—I have no more bread—That action does not
 (c) ‡——— f. (b) * *pain. m.* (a)
 deserve a reward—He is not happy—We have no pretensions
mériter récompense. f. (c) *heureux* ‡——— f.
 to the succession—You are not condescending—They do not
 ——— f. (c) *complaisant* (a)
 relieve the poor.
soulager pauvre. m. pl.

IMPERFECT. I was not angry—I had no money—He was not
 (c) *fâché* ‡ *argent* (c)
 learned—Eliza was not studious—She had not a good master—
savant Elise (c) (c) *maître*
 We were not laborious—We were not building that house—
 (c) (c) *bâtir*
 You were not breakfasting—They were not active—My brother
 (c) *déjeuner* (c) *actif*
 and sister were not studying—They were playing.
 (c) *étudier* *jouer*

PERF. DEF. I did not reward my servant—That general did
 (a) *récompenser domestique. m.* ———
 not invade their country—He did not neglect the study of history
 (a) *envahir pays. m.* (a)(e) *négliger étude. f.*f.
 We did not advise that dangerous measure—You were not
 (a) *mesure. f.* (c)
 obstinate—You did not sell your carriage—They did not answer
obstiné (a) *vendre voiture. f.* (a) *répondre*
 They did not blame your conduct.
 (a) *blâmer conduite. f.*

PERF. INDEF. I have not received your letter—I have never
 (d) (b)
 spoken to the king—He has not been prodigal—She has never
 (d) *prodigue* (b)
 been pretty—We have not finished our work—We have not
joli (d) *ouvrage. m.* (d)

chosen a good colour—You have not sealed your letters—They
choisir couleur. f. (d) cacheter

have not had the opportunity to—They have not | sent
(d) occasion. f. de (d)

back | his book.
renvoyer

PERY. ANT. I had not had a new hat—He had not been my
(d) neuf chapeau. m. (d)

enemy—We had not punished his disobedience—You had not had
ennemi. m. (d) désobéissance. f. (d)

a present from your mother—They had not had continual fears.
(d) continuel crainte. f.

PLUPERF. I had not warned your parents of your faults—We
(d) avertir parent. m. faute. f.

had not returned his visit—You had not employed a good
(d) rendre visite. f. (d) employer

workman—They had not travelled.
ouvrier. m. (d) voyager

FUTURE. I shall not be impatient—I shall not compare my
(c) (c) comparer

fortune to yours—He will never be scolded—We shall never
(b) gronder (b)

suspect your probity—You will not approve that rash resolution
soupçonner f. (c) approuver téméraire—f.

These merciless tyrants will never forgive their criminal intrigues.
impitoyable tyran. m. (b) pardonner f.

FUT. ANT. I shall not have been ungrateful—He will not
(d) ingrat (d)

have received—We shall not have travelled—You will not have
(d) (d)

finished this book—They will not have carried that parcel.
finir (d) porter paquet. m.

COND. PRES. I should not prefer your profession to his—
(c) préférer — f.

She would not be troublesome—He would not suspend the
(c) incommode (c) suspendre

prosecution of his designs—We should not be subject to those
poursuite. f. dessein. m. (c) sujet

inconveniences—You would not like the society of those men—
inconvenient. m. (e) aimer f.

A good minister would only aim at the glory and prosperity of
ministre (b) viser à f. § f.
 the nation.
 _____ f.

COND. PAST. I should not have sown that field—He would
 (d) *ensemencé champ. m.*

not have sacrificed his advantage to mine—We should not have
 (d) *sacrifier avantage. m. (d)*

given our consent to that bargain—You would not have been
consentement. m. marché. m. (d)

ill—These hasty resolutions would not have been prudent.
malade précipité _____ f. (d) _____

IMPERATIVE. Do not be lavish—Do not act—Answer not—
 (a) *prodigue (a) agir répondre (c)*

Let him not be thoughtless—Let not a child answer—Let not
 (c) *étourdi (c) (c)*

that instance sully the glory of your former conduct—Let us
truit. m. ternir f. premier conduite. f.

never neglect the duties of our salvation—Let us not covet the
 (b) (c) *négliger devoir. m. salut. m. (c) convoiter*

frail goods of this world—Do not forget the fulfilment of your
fragile bien. m. . . monde. m. (a) oublier accomplissement. m.

promise—Do not refuse that proof of my sincere affection—
promesse. f. (a) refuser témoignage. m. _____ f.

Let not the judges reject that proof of their innocence.
 (c) *jugs. m. † rejeter preuve. f. _____ f.*

References.

(a) See 154 and 155. (b) See note to 154. (c) See 154. (d) See 156. (e) See note † page 76: see the verb *juger* among the irregular verbs. * *Ne plus* is followed by *de* before a noun. † Verbs ending in *ester* have an irregularity in their orthography—they double the *s* whenever that letter is followed by an *e* mute. See 206.

‡ When a substantive used in a limited sense comes immediately after an adverb of negation, it takes only the preposition *de* without any article.

§ The conjunction *et* joins like cases in nouns or pronouns.

Read, translate and parse.

Je n'ai pas de belles gravures. Vous n'êtes pas paresseux. Charles n'a pas reçu son argent. Ses dernières lettres n'étaient pas consolantes. Vous n'avez pas cultivé son esprit.

EXAMINATION.—154. What word makes an English verb negative, and how is it translated? What is the place of the French negative *ne pas* or *ne point*, in simple tenses? 155. Are the words *do* or *did*, which generally accompany an English verb, translated into French? 156. When the verb is in any compound tense, what is the place of the French negative *ne pas* or *ne point*? 157. Are *ne pas* or *ne point* always separated? 158. In what case are you at liberty to separate or not, the negative *ne pas* or *ne point*?

OF INTERROGATION.

159. An English or French verb is made interrogative by placing the nominative after it.

Have you? avez-vous?

160. An auxiliary verb (*do, did, &c.*) is generally used in English when a question is asked, and the nominative is then placed after that auxiliary; in French the nominative pronoun follows the verb, and *do* or *did* is not expressed.

Do you play? jouez-vous?

161. If a verb has for its nominative a substantive, that substantive comes first, and one of the pronouns, *il, elle, ils, elles*, according to its gender and number, is placed after the verb.

Does the child speak? l'enfant parle-t-il?
Are your friends rich? vos amis sont-ils riches?

[These sentences must be construed in this manner : *the child, does he speak? Your friends, are they rich?*]

162. In compound tenses the nominative pronoun comes after the auxiliary.

Have you spoken? *avez-vous parlé?*

163. When the nominative is a noun, it must precede the auxiliary, and the pronoun precedes the participle.

Has your father spoken? *votre père a-t-il parlé?*

THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED

INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Do I love?</i>	* aimé-je? †
<i>dost thou love?</i>	aimes-tu?
<i>does he love?</i>	aime-t-il? ‡
<i>does your father love?</i>	votre père aime-t-il? ‡
<i>do we love?</i>	aimons-nous?
<i>do you love?</i>	aimez-vous?
<i>do they love?</i>	aiment-ils?
<i>do your brothers love?</i>	vos frères aiment-ils?

* Questions are often asked by *est-ce que*, and then the nominative precedes the verb. *Est-ce que vous lisez Virgile?* do you read Virgil? or, you read Virgil, do you? But this way of asking questions marks our surprise or doubt, rather than the mere desire of being informed of the truth. This mode of interrogation is also used with the first person singular of the present of certain verbs, where the sound would be harsh and disagreeable: we do not say, *vends-je? perds-je? sonds-je? réponds-je? pars-je? cours-je? dors-je?* Sometimes we could not even be understood, as for instance, *vends-je? vends-je? mens-je?* might be mistaken for the imperative *range, venge, mange*. We must therefore say, *est-ce que je vends? est-ce que je vends? &c.*

† When the pronoun *je* comes after the first person singular of a tense ending in *e* mute, that *e* becomes accented.

‡ When the third person singular ends with a vowel, a *t* between two hyphens (-t-) is put between the verb and the pronoun.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Did I love?</i>	<i>aimais-je?</i>
<i>didst thou love?</i>	<i>aimais-tu?</i>
<i>did he love?</i>	<i>aimait-il?</i>
<i>did we love?</i>	<i>aimions-nous?</i>
<i>did you love?</i>	<i>aimiez-vous?</i>
<i>did they love?</i>	<i>aimaient-ils?</i>
PERF. DEF. <i>Did I love?</i>	<i>aimai-je?</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>Have I loved?</i>	<i>ai-je aimé?</i>
<i>hast thou loved?</i>	<i>as-tu aimé?</i>
<i>has he loved?</i>	<i>a-t-il aimé?</i>
<i>has your brother loved?</i>	<i>votre frère a-t-il aimé?</i>
<i>have we loved?</i>	<i>avons-nous aimé?</i>
<i>have you loved?</i>	<i>avez-vous aimé?</i>
<i>have they loved?</i>	<i>ont-ils aimé?</i>
<i>have your brothers loved?</i>	<i>vos frères ont-ils aimé?</i>
PLUPERF. <i>Had I loved?</i>	<i>avais-je aimé?</i>
FUT. ABS. <i>Shall I love?</i>	<i>aimerai-je?</i>
FUT. ANT. <i>Shall I have loved?</i>	<i>aurai-je aimé?</i>
CON. PRES. <i>Should I love?</i>	<i>aimerais-je?</i>
CON. PAST. <i>Should I have loved?</i>	<i>aurais-je aimé?</i> <i>eussé-je aimé?</i>

EXERCISE.

- PRESENT. Have I books?—Dost thou bring good news?—
 (a) * (b) *apporter* † *nouvelle*. f.
 Does he like the study of that language?—Do we love peace
 (i) *aimer* *étude*. f. *langue*. f. (b) *paix*. f.
 and tranquillity?—Do you prefer your house to his?—Have
 f. (b) *préférer* (a)
 they coloured maps?
 * *coloré* *carte*. f.
 IMPER. Was I impatient?—Didst thou dread his firmness?—
 (a) (b) *redouter* *fermeté*. f.

98 EXERCISE ON INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

Had she a needle?—Had your brother the virtues of his ancestors?
(a) *aiguille, f.* (c) *ancêtres*

Had we any leisure?—Were we speaking to that poor man?—
(a) (h) *loisir, m.* (e)

Did you blame his rashness?—Were they afflicted?—Were
(b) *blâmer* *témérité, f.* (a) *affligé*

your sisters at the last ball?
(d) *à dernier bal, m.*

PERF. DEF. Did I lose the opportunity?—Did the king
(b) *perdre* *occasion, f.* (c)

reward their services?—Did he reply?—Did we punish an
récompenser — m. (i) *répliquer* (b)

innocent mistake?—Did you correct the faults of that exercise?
erreur, f. (b) (k) *corriger* *thème, m.*

Did the soldiers occupy the fort?
(d) *soldat, m.* *occuper* — m.

PERF. INDEF. Have I advised that dangerous measure?—Has
(f) *conseiller* *mesure, f.* (g)

your partner received my letter?—Have we subjected our will
associé, m. (f) *assujétir* *volonté, f.*

to theirs?—Have you related that anecdote?—Have your tears
(f) *raconter* — f. (g) *larme, f.*

softened the heart of that tyrant?
attendrir *tyran, m.*

✍ The Perfect Anterior is not used interrogatively.

PLUPERFECT. Had I examined the original authors?—Had
(f) *examiner* — *auteur, m.* (f)

she offended her protectors?—Had we proposed a ridiculous
offenser m. (f) *proposer* *ridicule*

opinion?—Had you fulfilled your duties?—Had your friends
— f. (f) *remplir* *devoir, m.* (g)

procured a good situation for my governess?
procurer *place, f.* *à institutrice*

FUTURE. Shall I finish your work?—Will miss Lucy sing?—
(a) (c) *Lucie chanter*

Shall we dance?—Will you repeat his words?—Will they
(a) *danser* (a) *répéter* *parole*, f. (a)
keep that secret?
garder — m.

FUT. ANT. Shall I have travelled?—Will she have forgotten?
(f) *voyager* (f) *oublier*

Shall we have had that pleasure?—Will you have bought that
(f) *plaisir*, m. (f) *acheter*
beautiful horse?—Will they have imitated that work?
cheval, m. (f) *imiter* *ouvrage*, m.

COND. PRES. Should I disturb your private conversation?—
(a) *troubler* *particulier* — f.

Would your brother improve?—Should we lament the death of
(d) *profiter* (a) *pleurer* *mort*, f.
that usurper?—Would you buy that poor animal?—Would the
usurpateur, m. (a) *acheter* *§ pauvre* — m. (d)
inhabitants of this city refuse the offer of the minister?
habitant, m. *ville*, f. *refuser* *offre*, f. *ministre*, m.

COND. PAST. Should I have chosen a whimsical and capricious
(f) *fantasque*
friend?—Would she have played?—Should we have published
(f) *jouer* (f) *publier*
the works of that statesman?—Would they have comforted that
œuvres, f. pl. *homme d'état* (f) *consoler*
disconsolate widow?
désolé *veuve*, f.

References.

(a) See 159. (b) See 160. (c) See 161 and note † page 96. (d) See 161. (e) See 159 and note † page 67. (f) See 162. (g) See 163. (h) *any*, see 62, page 12. (i) See 160 and note † page 96. (k) See this note page 76. * Partitive sense † *Nouvelle* may remain in the singular, and be preceded by the indefinite article. ‡ Adjectives of number usually precede the substantives. § This adjective to precede its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

Avez-vous des cartes enluminées? Auront-ils des fruits rares? Négligeons-nous les devoirs de notre état? La révolution a-t-elle ruiné cette famille? Ce maître donne-t-il de bonne musique à ses élèves?

EXAMINATION.—159. How is an English or French verb made interrogative? 160. Where is the nominative pronoun of a French verb placed, when a question is asked? What do you observe concerning the English words *do* and *did*? 161. When a verb has a substantive for its nominative, what do you observe in the construction? 162. What is the place of the nominative pronoun in compound tenses? 163. When the nominative is a noun, what is its place in compound tenses? p. 96. note * Are not questions also asked by *Est-ce que*? and in what sense? In what other instances do you make use of *Est-ce que*? *ib.* † When a verb ends in a mute in the first person singular present tense, what alteration is there made? *ib.* ‡ In what instances do you introduce *-t-*, between the verb and the pronoun?

OF INTERROGATION AND NEGATION.

164. When a verb used interrogatively is also modified by a negation, *ne* comes before the verb in its simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in its compound ones; *pas*, *point*, *jamais*, &c. always come after the pronoun nominative.

Does not your sister improve? *votre sœur ne profite-t-elle point?*
Have you not spoken? *n'avez-vous pas parlé?*

[This question is also asked by *n'est-ce pas que*? when we call upon others to confirm what we say: as, *n'est-ce pas que votre sœur profite?*]

THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Do I not love?</i>	<i>n'aimé-je pas?</i>
<i>dost thou not love?</i>	<i>n'aimes-tu pas?</i>
<i>does he not love?</i>	<i>n'aime-t-il pas?</i>
<i>does not your brother love?</i>	<i>votre frère n'aime-t-il pas?</i>

<i>do we not love ?</i>	<i>n'aimons-nous pas ?</i>
<i>do you not love ?</i>	<i>n'aimez-vous pas ?</i>
<i>do they not love ?</i>	<i>n'aiment-ils pas ?</i>
<i>do not your brothers love ?</i>	<i>vos frères n'aiment-ils pas ?</i>

IMPER. *Did I not love ?* *n'aimais-je pas ?*

PER.DEV. *Did I not love ?* *n'aimai-je pas ?*

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>Have I not loved ?</i>	<i>n'ai-je pas aimé ?</i>
<i>hast thou not loved ?</i>	<i>n'as-tu pas aimé ?</i>
<i>has he not loved ?</i>	<i>n'a-t-il pas aimé ?</i>
<i>have we not loved ?</i>	<i>n'avons-nous pas aimé ?</i>
<i>have you not loved ?</i>	<i>n'avez-vous pas aimé ?</i>
<i>have they not loved ?</i>	<i>n'ont-ils pas aimé ?</i>

PLUPERF. *Had I not loved ?* *n'avais-je pas aimé ?*

FUTURE. *Shall I not love ?* *n'aimerai-je pas ?*

FUT. ANT. *Shall I not have loved ?* *n'aurai-je pas aimé ?*

CONDIT. *Should I not love ?* *n'aimerais-je pas ?*

CON. PAST. *Should I not have loved ?* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{n'aurais-je pas aimé ?} \\ \text{n'eussé-je pas aimé ?} \end{array} \right.$

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE. PRES. Am I not studious ?—Has he not an
(a) (a)

amiable companion ?—Do we not feel your sorrows ?—Do you
compagnon.m. (a) (c) partager chagrin. m. (a)

not prefer pleasure to your duty ?—Have they not a large income ?
préférer devoir.m. (a) gros revenu.m.

IMPERFECT. Did I not conceive that rule ?—Was he not
(a) *concevoir règle. f. (a)*

attentive ?—Were we not impatient ?—Did you not admire the
..... (a) (a) *admirer*

profound wisdom of their institution ?—Were they not watering
profond sagesse. f. f. (a) (b) arroser

their garden ?
jardin. m.

102 EXERCISE ON INTERROGATION AND NEGATION.

PERF. DEF. Did I not excuse your mistakes?—Did not
(a) excuser méprise. f. (a)

Cecilia admire the beauty of that landscape?—Did we not restore
Cécile paysage. m. (a) rétablir

the ancient discipline of the school?—Did you study geography?
_____ f. école. f. (a) étudierf.

Did not the unjust conquerors seize the goods of the peaceful
(a) injuste conquérant saisir bien. m. paisible
citizens?
citoyen. m.

PERF. INDEF. Have I not had indulgent parents?—Hast thou
(a) _____ m. (a)

not been charitable?—Has not the tutor given fine engravings to
_____ précepteur. m. gravure. f.

his pupil?—Have we not rendered an essential service to that
pupille. m. (a) rendre essentiel _____ m.

young lady?—Have you not distinguished his friends from mine?
(a) distinguer

Have they not punished the guilty?
(a) coupable. m. pl.

PLUPERF. Had I not paid your creditors?—Had he not
(a) payer créancier. m. (a)

shewn the fatal consequences of that innovation?—Had we not
montrer _____ f. _____ f. (a)

protected that bad man?—Had you not given peaches and flowers
protéger méchant pêche. f. fleur. f.

to my neighbours?—Had not your friends perceived their mistake?
voisin. m. (a) apercevoir méprise. f.

FUTURE. Shall I not have studious pupils?—Will he not be
(a) appliqué (a)

troublesome?—Shall we not give a watch to our son?—Will
importun (a) montre. f. fils. m. (a)

you not assemble your friends and relations?—Will they not
rassembler † parent. m. (a)

cease their importunities?
cesser importunité. f.

FUT. ANT. Shall I not have been obstinate and particular?—
(a) opiniâtre pointilleux.

EXERCISE ON INTERROGATION AND NEGATION. 103

Will not his sister have been inconsiderate?—Shall we not have
(a) indiscret (a)

tried a new method?—Will you not have been distrustful?—
essayer † *nouvelle méthode*. f. (a) défiant

Will they not have sacrificed their interest to the public good?
(a) sacrifier intérêt bien. m.

CON. PRES. Should I not have just and clear ideas?—Would
(a) idée. f. (a)

not a sincere repentance extenuate your crime?—Should we not
repentir. m. *exténuer* — m. (a)

regret his departure?—Would you not discover that atrocious
regretter *départ*. m. dévoiler atroce

plot?—Would not these uncertain principles | lead astray? |
complot. m. incertain principe. m. égarer

CON. PAST. Should I not have deceived the expectation of my
(a) tromper attente. f.

family?—Would he not have played?—Should we not have
famille. f. (a) jouer (a)

doubled our enjoyments?—Would you have praised his pride
doubler *joissance*. f. (a) louer orgueil. m.

and incivility?—Would those merchants have paid their debts?
† *malhonnêteté*. f. négociant. m. payer dette. f.

References.

(a) See this rule. (b) See note † page 65. (c) See note ‡ page 76.
* Partitive sense. † The pronoun must be repeated. ‡ This adjective to precede its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

N'avez vous pas divulgué notre secret? N'ont-ils pas flétri la réputation de cet homme respectable? N'avez-vous pas prêté votre cheval à cet étourdi? Les fidèles historiens n'ont-ils pas raconté ces événements tragiques? Le prisonnier n'a-t-il pas déclaré son innocence?

EXAMINATION.—164. When a verb is used negatively and interrogatively, where do you place *ne pas*, *ne point*, *ne jamais*, &c.?

OF PASSIVE VERBS.

165. An active verb, (and an active verb only,) may become passive, by adding its participle to every mood and tense of the auxiliary verb *être* to be.

166. That participle is then always declined, that is, takes the gender and number of the nominative to the verb.

167. Participles take an *e* mute for their feminine, and form their plural by the addition of *s*, as will be seen in the following conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To be loved</i>	Etre aimé
PERFECT.	<i>To have been loved</i>	avoir été aimé
GERUND.	<i>Being loved</i>	étant aimé
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having been loved</i>	ayant été aimé
FUTURE.	<i>About to be loved</i>	devant être aimé

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I am loved.

Masculine.

je suis aimé
tu es aimé
il est aimé

Feminine.

je suis aimée
tu es aimée
elle est aimée

nous sommes aimés
vous êtes aimés
ils sont aimés

nous sommes aimées
vous êtes aimées
elles sont aimées

IMPERF. <i>I was loved</i>	j'étais aimé or aimée
PERF. DEF. <i>I was loved</i>	je fus aimé or aimée
PERF. IND. <i>I have been loved</i>	j'ai été aimé or aimée
PERF. ANT. <i>I had been loved</i>	j'eus été aimé or aimée
PLUPERF. <i>I had been loved</i>	j'avais été aimé or aimée
FUTURE. <i>I shall be loved</i>	je serai aimé or aimée
FUT. ANT. <i>I shall have been loved</i>	j'aurai été aimé or aimée
COND. <i>I should be loved</i>	je serais aimé or aimée
CON. PAST. <i>I should have been loved</i>	{ j'aurais } été aimé or { j'eusse } aimée

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Be thou loved</i>	sois aimé or aimée
<i>let him be loved</i>	qu'il soit aimé
<i>let her be loved</i>	qu'elle soit aimée
<i>let us be loved</i>	soyons aimés or aimées
<i>be ye loved</i>	soyez aimés or aimées
<i>let them be loved</i>	{ qu'ils soient aimés { qu'elles soient aimées

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. <i>That I may be loved</i>	que je sois aimé or aimée
IMPERF. <i>That I might be loved</i>	que je fusse aimé or aimée
PERF. <i>That I may have been loved</i>	que j'aie été aimé or aimée
PLUP. <i>That I might have been loved</i>	que j'eusse été aimé or aimée

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE. PRES. I am attacked—He is not alarmed—We
 attaquer alarmer
 are protested—Are you praised?—They are invited by their
 louer inviter *
 friends.

IMPERFECT. I was not rewarded—She was punished—We were esteemed—You were encouraged—They were ruined.
estimer encourager ruiner

PERF. DEF. I was deceived—That actor was not applauded—
trouper . . . applaudir
 We were betrayed—You were bitten by a dog—They were
trahir mordre chien. m.
 loved by their mother.

PERF. IND. I have been forgotten—The offer has been
oublier
 rejected—We have been deceived—You have been exposed to
refuser exposer
 the jealousy of the king—They have been arrested.
jalousie. f. arrêter

PERF. ANT. I had been punished—She had been applauded—
 We had been banished—You had been undeceived—The vessels
bannir détromper vaisseau. m.
 had been lost.
pêcher

PLUS-QUE-PERF. I had been received—The general had been sent
—m. envoyer
 to his army—We had been expected—You had been consulted—
armée. f. attendre consulter
 The villages had been abandoned by their inhabitants.
*—m. abandonner * habitant. m.*

FUTURE. I shall be protected—A modest girl will be
protéger
 encouraged—Shall we be consulted?—You will not be applauded
 They will be invited.

FUT. ANT. I shall have been warned—Amelia will have been
avertir Emilie
 invited—We shall have been blamed—Will you have been
 comforted?—The conduct of these ladies will have been approved.
approuver

COND. I should be chosen—The invitation would be refused—

We should be ruined—You would be received—The ministers
would be sent to the tower.
tour. f.

COND. PAST. I should not have been warned of that danger—
avertir

He would have been sacrificed—We should have been preferred
sacrifier

You would not have been forgiven by that merciless despot—
pardonner *impitoyable* — m.

Your private conversations would have been disturbed.
particulier — f. *troubler*

IMPERATIVE. Be not disheartened—Let not the church be
décourager *église. f.*
demolished—Let us be attached to our duties—Let colonies
démolir. *colonie. f.*
be sent to the Cape of Good Hope.

Cap. m. Bonne Espérance

References.

✎ * The government of a French passive verb is either *de* or *par*, (in English *by*, *from*, *with*,) but with this difference, that *par* is used when the verb denotes an action, in which the body, or the body and mind are concerned, as, Rome was built by Romulus, *Rome fut bâtie par Romulus*; he was deceived by his friend, *il fut trompé par son ami*.

✎ † *De* is used when the verb expresses an action in which the mind only is concerned; as, she is beloved by her parents, *elle est chérie de ses parents*. There are a few irregularities to both *par* and *de*.

Read, translate and parse.

Le voyageur a été tué. Les captifs ont été rachetés. Les conspirateurs ont été décapités. Cette grande armée a été anéantie. La citadelle sera rendue. La nation a été ruinée. L'honneur est dû aux rois, aux magistrats, et aux personnages illustres. La politesse de cette nation est admirée.

EXAMINATION.—165. What sort of verbs may become passive and how is it performed? 166. Is not the participle declina-

ble, when it follows the verb *to be*? What do you mean by the participle being declinable? 167. How is a participle made feminine? how is it made plural? p. 107. *ref.* * When is a French passive verb followed by *par*? *ib.* † When must it be followed by *de*?

OF REFLECTED VERBS.

168. Reflected verbs are always conjugated with one of the double pronouns, *je me, tu te, il se, nous nous, vous vous, ils se.*—Thus the verb *to walk*, which is reflected in French, instead of

je promène	} Will be conjugated thus,	je me promène
tu promènes		tu te promènes
il promène		il se promène
nous promenons		nous nous promenons
vous promenez		vous vous promenez
ils promènent		ils se promènent

169. When a reflected verb is governed in the infinitive by another verb, the pronoun *se*, which precedes it, must be made to correspond with the nominative to the first verb.

<i>I intend to walk</i>	je compte me promener
<i>thou intendest to walk</i>	tu comptes te promener
<i>he intends to walk</i>	il compte se promener
<i>we intend to walk</i>	nous comptons nous promener
<i>you intend to walk</i>	vous comptez vous promener
<i>they intend to walk</i>	ils comptent se promener

And not, *je compte se promener, tu comptes se promener, &c.*

170. The compound tenses of reflected verbs are formed with *être*, and the participle which follows, agrees in gender and number with the nominative to the verb.

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To dress one's self</i>	s'habiller
PERFECT.	<i>To have dressed one's self</i>	s'être habillé
GERUND.	<i>Dressing one's self</i>	s'habillant
GER. PAST.	<i>Having dressed one's self</i>	s'étant habillé
PARTICIP.	<i>Dressed</i>	habillé
FUTURE.	<i>About to dress one's self</i>	devant s'habiller

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I dress myself; I do ———; I am dressing myself.

<i>I dress myself</i>	je m'habille
<i>thou dressest thyself</i>	tu t'habilles
<i>he dresses himself</i>	il s'habille
<i>she dresses herself</i>	elle s'habille
<i>we dress ourselves</i>	nous nous habillons
<i>you dress { yourself</i>	vous vous habillez
<i> { yourselves</i>	
<i>they dress themselves</i>	{ ils s'habillent
	{ elles s'habillent

IMPERFECT.

I dressed myself; I did ———; I used to ———; I was dressing myself.

<i>Je m'habillais</i>	nous nous habillions
<i>tu t'habillais</i>	vous vous habilliez
<i>il s'habillait</i>	ils s'habillaient

PERFECT DEFINITE.

I dressed myself; I did dress myself.

<i>Je m'habillai</i>	nous nous habillâmes
<i>tu t'habillas</i>	vous vous habillâtes
<i>il s'habilla</i>	ils s'habillèrent

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

I have dressed myself; I have been dressing myself.

<i>With a nominative masculine</i>	<i>With a nominative feminine</i>
Je me suis habillé	je me suis habillée
tu t'es habillé	tu t'es habillée
il s'est habillé	elle s'est habillée
mon frere s'est habillé	ma sœur s'est habillée
nous nous sommes habillés	nous nous sommes habillées
vous vous êtes habillés	vous vous êtes habillées
ils se sont habillés	elles se sont habillées
mes freres se sont habillés	mes sœurs se sont habillées

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

I had dressed myself; I had been dressing myself.

Je me fus	} habillé	je me fus	} habillée
tu te fus		tu te fus	
il se fut	} habillés	elle se fut	} habillées
nous nous fûmes		nous nous fûmes	
vous vous fûtes*	} habillés	vous vous fûtes*	} habillées
ils se furent		elles se furent	

PLUPERFECT.

I had dressed myself; I had been dressing myself.

Je m'étais	} habillé	je m'étais	} habillée
tu t'étais		tu t'étais	
il s'était	} habillés	elle s'était	} habillées
nous nous étions		nous nous étions	
vous vous étiez*	} habillés	vous vous étiez*	} habillées
ils s'étaient		elles s'étaient	

[IDIOMATICAL TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.

<i>I have just dressed myself</i>	je viens de m'habiller
<i>thou hast just dressed thyself</i>	tu viens de t'habiller
<i>he has just dressed himself</i>	il vient de s'habiller
<i>we have just dressed ourselves</i>	nous venons de nous habiller
<i>you have just dressed yourselves</i>	vous venez de vous habiller
<i>they have just dressed themselves</i>	ils viennent de s'habiller

Past definite anterior.

<i>I had just dressed myself</i>	je venais de m'habiller, &c.
----------------------------------	------------------------------

* If the nominative *vous* is in the singular, that is, if it represents *tu*, *habillé* must be used for the masculine, and *habillée* for the feminine. See 146.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall or will dress myself; I shall be dressing myself.

Je m'habillerai	nous nous habillerons
tu t'habilleras	vous vous habillerez
il s'habillera	ils s'habilleront

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have dressed myself; I shall have been dressing myself.

Je me serai habillé	nous nous serons habillés
tu te seras habillé	vous vous serez habillés
il se sera habillé	ils se seront habillés

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

<i>Fut. indef. pos. I am to dress myself</i>	je dois m'habiller, &c.
<i>Fut. instant. I am going to dress myself</i>	je vais m'habiller, &c.
<i>Fut. imperfect. I was going to dress myself</i>	j'allais m'habiller, &c.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I should or would dress myself; I should be dressing myself.

Jé m'habillerais	nous nous habillerions
tu t'habillerais	vous vous habilleriez
il s'habillerait	ils s'habilleraient

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should or would have dressed myself; I should have been dressing myself.

Je me serais habillé	nous nous serions habillés
tu te serais habillé	vous vous seriez habillés
il se serait habillé	ils se seraient habillés
or	
Je me fusse habillé	nous nous fussions habillés
tu te fusses habillé	vous vous fussiez habillés
il se fût habillé	ils se fussent habillés

[IDIOMATICAL TENSE.]

Future conditional.

I should or ought to have dressed myself je devrais m'être habillé, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Dress thyself</i>	habille-toi
<i>let him dress himself</i>	qu'il s'habille
<i>let her dress herself</i>	qu'elle s'habille

<i>let us dress ourselves</i>	<i>habillons-nous</i>
<i>dress { yourself }</i>	<i>habillez-vous</i>
<i> { yourselves }</i>	<i>{ qu'ils s'habillent</i>
<i>let them dress themselves</i>	<i>{ qu'elles s'habillent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

That I may dress myself; that I may be dressing myself.

<i>Que je m'habille</i>	<i>que nous nous habillions</i>
<i>que tu t'habilles</i>	<i>que vous vous habilliez</i>
<i>qu'il s'habille</i>	<i>qu'ils s'habillent</i>

IMPERFECT.

That I might dress myself; that I might be dressing myself.

<i>Que je m'habillasse</i>	<i>que nous nous habillions</i>
<i>que tu t'habillasses</i>	<i>que vous vous habillassiez</i>
<i>qu'il s'habillât</i>	<i>qu'ils s'habillassent</i>

PERFECT.

That I may dress myself; &c.

<i>Que je me sois habillé</i>	<i>que nous nous soyons habillés</i>
<i>que tu te sois habillé</i>	<i>que vous vous soyez habillés</i>
<i>qu'il se soit habillé</i>	<i>qu'ils se soient habillés</i>

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have dressed myself.

<i>Que je me fusse habillé</i>	<i>que nous nous fussions habillés</i>
<i>que tu te fusses habillé</i>	<i>que vous vous fussiez habillés</i>
<i>qu'il se fût habillé</i>	<i>qu'ils se fussent habillés</i>

[OBSERVATION. As the conjugation of reflected verbs presents some difficulties to the English learner, it may be advisable to conjugate a few verbs on the preceding model; as, *se promener*, to walk, *se divertir*, to amuse one's self, *se rendre*, &c. It must likewise be remembered that the past tenses, contrary to the genius of the English language, are formed with the auxiliary verb *être*, and that the participle is declinable.]

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF REFLECTED VERBS.

171. The reflected verbs govern the genitive case in French; as, *se réjouir d'une chose*, to rejoice in a thing. Except the following, which govern the dative case:

<i>s'abaisser à,</i>	to stoop to
<i>s'abandonner à,</i>	to abandon one's self
<i>s'acharner à,</i>	to be cruelly bent against
<i>s'adresser à,</i>	} to apply one's self to
<i>s'appliquer à,</i>	
<i>s'apprêter à,</i>	to dispose one's self to
<i>s'assujétir à,</i>	to subject one's self to
<i>s'attacher à,</i>	to stick to, to adhere to
<i>s'attendre à,</i>	to expect
<i>se décider à,</i>	} to resolve
<i>se déterminer à,</i>	
<i>se disposer à,</i>	to prepare one's self to
<i>s'endurcir à,</i>	to insure one's self to
<i>s'engager à,</i>	to engage in
<i>s'exposer à,</i>	to expose one's self to
<i>se fier à,</i>	to trust to
<i>s'habituer à,</i>	to accustom one's self to
<i>s'intéresser à,</i>	to interest one's self in
<i>s'obstiner à,</i>	to be obstinate in
<i>s'opiniâtrer à,</i>	to insist upon
<i>s'opposer à,</i>	to oppose
<i>se plaire à,</i>	to take delight in
<i>se préparer à,</i>	to prepare one's self to
<i>se plier à,</i>	to submit to
<i>se soumettre à,</i>	to submit, or submit to

[Some govern *à* or *de*, as *s'occuper à* or *de*, but with a different meaning; others are used absolutely, that is, are not followed by any noun or preposition; such as, *se rappeler*, *s'imaginer*, &c.]

IMPORTANT OBSERVATION.

[When an English verb is followed by the pronoun *myself*, *thyself*, &c. it is reflected in French, as, I burn myself, *je me brûle*,

we flatter ourselves, *nous nous flattons*. But it often happens that the second pronoun is not expressed in English, and thence arises a difficulty which may be obviated by referring to the following list.]

<i>s'abonner</i>	to compound	<i>se figurer</i>	to fancy
<i>s'abstenir</i>	to abstain	<i>se flétrir</i>	to fade away
<i>s'accorder</i>	to agree	<i>se fondre</i>	to melt
<i>s'asseoir</i>	to sit down	<i>se formaliser</i>	to find fault
<i>s'attendrir</i>	to be moved	<i>se glisser</i>	to creep in
<i>se baigner</i>	to bathe	<i>se hâter</i>	to make haste
<i>se baisser</i>	to stoop	<i>s'imaginer</i>	to fancy
<i>se confier</i>	to confide	<i>s'impatisier</i>	to grow impatient
<i>se coucher</i>	to go to bed	<i>s'ingérer</i>	to intermeddle
<i>se débattre</i>	to struggle	<i>s'insinuer</i>	to steal in
<i>se déborder</i>	to flow over	<i>se lever</i>	to rise
<i>se dédire</i>	to retract	<i>se marier</i>	to marry
<i>se défier</i>	to distrust	<i>se méfier</i>	to distrust
<i>se dépêcher</i>	to make haste	<i>se mêler</i>	to interfere
<i>se démettre</i>	to resign	<i>se méprendre</i>	to mistake
<i>se désister</i>	to desist	<i>se moquer</i>	to laugh at
<i>s'échapper</i>	to escape	<i>se mutiner</i>	to mutiny
<i>s'élancer</i>	to leap upon	<i>s'offenser</i>	to take offence
<i>s'en aller</i>	to go away	<i>se piquer</i>	to pretend to
<i>s'emparer</i>	to seize upon	<i>se plaindre</i>	to complain
<i>s'empreser</i>	to be eager	<i>se promener</i>	to walk
<i>s'endor mir</i>	to fall asleep	<i>se rappeler</i>	to remember
<i>s'enfuir</i>	to run away	<i>se réjouir</i>	to rejoice
<i>s'enhardir</i>	to grow bold	<i>se refroidir</i>	to grow cold
<i>s'enraciner</i>	to take root	<i>se repentir</i>	to repent
<i>s'enrhumer</i>	to take cold	<i>se rencontrer</i>	to meet
<i>s'enrichir</i>	to grow rich	<i>se rendre</i>	to yield
<i>s'entretenir</i>	to discourse with	<i>se reposer</i>	to rest
<i>s'envoler</i>	to fly away	<i>se ressouvenir</i>	to remember
<i>s'épanouir</i>	to blow	<i>se rétablir</i>	to recover
<i>s'esquiver</i>	to steal away	<i>se retirer</i>	to retire
<i>s'étonner</i>	to wonder	<i>se réunir</i>	to unite
<i>s'évanouir</i>	to faint away	<i>se révolter</i>	to revolt
<i>s'évaporer</i>	to evaporate	<i>se saisir</i>	to seize upon
<i>s'évertuer</i>	to strive	<i>se séparer</i>	to part
<i>s'exercer</i>	to practise	<i>se soumettre</i>	to submit
<i>se farder</i>	to paint	<i>se souvenir</i>	to remember
<i>se fier</i>	to trust	<i>se vanter</i>	to boast

EXERCISE.

☞ In the preceding Exercises great care has been taken only to introduce such verbs as admitted of literal translation; in the following ones the genius of the two languages begins to be exemplified.

INDIC. PRES. I apply myself—Thou art called—*He stoops
s'appliquer (a) *s'appeler* (b) *se baisser*

*We walk—You deceive yourself—They defend themselves.

(b) *se promener se tromper* *se défendre*

IMPERFECT. *I was resting—Your sister was applying herself

(b) *se reposer*

—We did accuse ourselves—*You were eager—They
s'accuser (c) *s'empresser*

grew cold.

(c) *se refroidir*

PERFECT DEFINITE. I comforted myself—He presented himself
se consoler *se présenter*

to the assembly—We respected ourselves—You punished
assemblée, f. *se respecter* *se punir*

yourselves—*They | laid down |

(c) *se coucher*

PERFECT INDEFINITE. I have flattered myself—*He has
se flatter

recovered—*We have stopped—*You have fancied—They have
se rétablir (b) *s'arrêter* (b) *s'imaginer*

undressed themselves.

se déshabiller

PERFECT ANTERIOR. I had lost myself—He had freed himself
se perdre *s'affranchir*

—*We had rejoiced—You had revenged yourself—They had
(b) *se réjouir* *se venger*

ruined themselves.

se ruiner.

PLUPERF. *I had trusted to certain guides—*He had confided
se fier *sûr* — m. *confier*

in that man—We had condemned ourselves—*You had
à *se condamner* (b)

wondered—The armies *had met.

s'étonner *armée, f.* (b) *se rencontrer.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. *I shall yield—He will devote himself to
(b) *se rendre* *s'adonner*

agriculture—We shall tire ourselves—*You will grow rich—
_____ f. *se fatiguer* (c) *s'enrichir*

*They will part.
(b) *se séparer.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR. I shall have betrayed myself—He shall
se trahir

have seized his arms—We shall have devoted ourselves—You
s'emparer de arme. f. *se dévouer*

will have fatigued yourselves—They will have taken offence.
se fatiguer (d) *s'offenser.*

CONDIT. PRESENT. *I should interfere in that affair—*He
se mêler de affaire. f.

would be impatient—*We should relent—*You would join—
(c) *s'impatienter* (b) *s'attendrir* (b) *se réunir*

*They would take cold.
(d) *s'enrhumer.*

CONDIT. PAST. *I should have practised—*He would have
(b) *s'exercer*

retired from the world—*We should have escaped from the
(b) *se retirer de monde. m.* (b) *s'échapper de*

wreck—You would have devoted yourself to the education of
naufnage. m. *se dévouer* _____ f.

your children—*They would have walked.
enfant. m. (b) *se promener.*

IMPERATIVE. *Remember thy promises—*Let him get up—
(c) *se souvenir* *promesse. f.* *se lever*

Let us refresh ourselves—Apply to mathematics—*Let them
se rafraîchir *s'appliquer(e) mathématique. f.*

hasten.
se hâter.

INFIN. I begin * to rest—He refuses * to walk—
commencer à (f) se reposer *refuser de (f) se promener*

We begin to rest—They begin to rest—You refuse to walk—

We are glad to have * escaped—We endeavour to insure
bien aise de (f) s'échapper *tâcher de s'habituer*

ourselves to work.—They are glad to have walked—They are
se promener

sorry to have introduced themselves.

fâché de se présenter

IDIOMATICAL TENSES. I have just warmed myself—She has
se chauffer

just warmed herself—We have just got up—They have just got

up—I had just undressed myself—*He had just stopt—We
se deshabiller s'arrêter

had just * recovered—They had just recovered—I am
se rétablir

going to ride—We are going to ride—I ought to have
se promener à cheval

rested myself—He ought to have rested himself—We ought
se reposer

to have engaged.
s'engager.

References.

✎ Different sorts of English verbs often become reflected in French : as—(a) A passive verb : to be called, *s'appeler* ; particularly when they have an inanimate object for their nominative, as, bad news are soon spread ; *les mauvaises nouvelles se répandent bientôt*. (b) A neuter verb ; to walk, *se promener*. (c) a neuter verb with an adjective, to grow mild, *s'adoucir*. (d) An active verb with an accusative ; to take cold, *s'enrhumer*.* See IMPORTANT OBSERVATION, p. 113.

(e) See 171.

(f) See 169.

Read, translate and parse.

Je me suis sacrifié. Nous nous séparerons. Il se tua. Son ami s'est offensé. Elle s'impatiente. Vous vous êtes vanté de cette action. Ils se proposent de voyager.

EXAMINATION.—168. How are reflected verbs conjugated ? 169.

When a reflected verb is in the infinitive, what do you observe with respect to the pronoun *se* ? 170. How are the compound tenses of reflected verbs formed ? *Ref. above*. What sort of English verb may become reflected in French ? 171. What case do reflected verbs govern ?

**CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB USED
NEGATIVELY.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>Not to rise.</i>	{ ne se pas lever. ne pas se lever.
PERFECT.	<i>Not to have risen</i>	{ ne s'être pas levé ne pas s'être levé ne se pas être levé
GERUND.	<i>Not rising</i>	ne se levant pas
GER. PAST.	<i>Not having risen</i>	ne s'étant pas levé
FUTURE.	<i>Not about to rise</i>	ne devant pas se lever

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*I do not rise ; I am not rising.*)

je ne me lève pas	nous ne nous levons pas
tu ne te lèves pas	vous ne vous levez pas
il ne se lève pas	ils ne se lèvent pas

IMPERFECT.	{ <i>I did not rise</i> <i>I was not rising</i> <i>I did not use to rise</i>	{ je ne me levais pas &c.
-------------------	--	------------------------------

PERFECT DEF.	{ <i>I rose not</i> <i>I did not rise</i>	{ je ne me levai pas
---------------------	--	----------------------

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

(*I have not risen.*)

je ne me suis pas levé	nous ne nous sommes pas levés
tu ne t'es pas levé	vous ne vous êtes pas levés
il ne s'est pas levé	ils ne se sont pas levés

PERF. ANT. <i>I had not risen</i>	je ne me fus pas levé
PLUPERF. <i>I had not risen</i>	je ne m'étais pas levé

FUTURE.	<i>I shall not rise</i>	je ne me leverai pas
FUT. ANT.	<i>I shall not have risen</i>	je ne me serai pas levé
CONDIT.	<i>I should not rise</i>	je ne me leverais pas
COND. PAST.	<i>I should not have risen</i>	{ je ne me serais pas levé je ne me fusse pas levé

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Rise thou not</i>	}	ne te lève pas
<i>do not rise</i>		
<i>let him not rise</i>	}	qu'il ne se lève pas
<i>let us not rise</i>		
<i>rise ye not</i>	}	ne vous levez pas
<i>do not rise</i>		
<i>let them not rise</i>		qu'ils ne se lèvent pas

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>That I may not rise</i>	que je ne me lève pas
IMPERF.	<i>That I might not rise</i>	que je ne me lévasse pas
PERFECT.	<i>That I may not have risen</i>	que je ne me sois pas levé
PLUPERF.	<i>That I might not have risen</i>	que je ne me fusse pas levé

EXERCISE.

☞ *The following Exercise being the same as the preceding, but negatively used, the French is purposely omitted.*

IND. PRES. I do not apply myself—Thou art not called—He does not stoop—We do not walk—You do not deceive yourself—They do not defend themselves.

IMPERF. I was not resting—Your sister was not applying herself—We did not accuse ourselves—You were not eager—They did not grow cold.

PERF. DEF. I did not comfort myself—He did not present himself to the assembly—We did not respect ourselves—You did not punish yourselves—They did not lie down.

PERF. INDEF. I have not flattered myself—He has not recovered—We have not stopped—You have not fancied—They have not undressed.

PERF. ANT. I had not lost myself—He had not freed himself—We had not rejoiced—You had not revenged yourself—They had not ruined themselves.

PLUP. I had not trusted to certain guides—He had not confided in that man—We had not condemned ourselves—You had not wondered—The armies had not met.

FUT. ABSOL. I shall not yield—He will not devote himself to agriculture—We shall not be tired—You will not grow rich—They will not part.

FUT. ANT. I shall not have betrayed myself—He will not have seized his arms—We shall not have devoted ourselves—You will not have fatigued yourselves—They will not have taken offence.

COND. PRES. I should not interfere in that affair—He would not be impatient—We should not relent—You would not join—They would not take cold.

COND. PAST. I should not have practised—She would not have retired from the world—We should not have escaped from the wreck—You would not have devoted yourselves to the education of your children—They would not have walked.

IMPER. Let him not get up—Let us not refresh ourselves—Let us not apply to mathematics—Let them not hasten.

Read, translate and parse.

Je ne me suis pas accoutumé au travail. Il ne s'inquiète pas. Nous ne nous sommes pas amusés. Ils ne se décourageront pas. Il se moque de vos menaces. Nous ne nous occupons pas. La compagnie ne s'est pas séparée.

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB

USED WITH AN INTERROGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*Do I rise? Am I rising?*)

Me levé-je?	Nous levons-nous?
te lèves-tu?	vous levez-vous?
se lève-t-il?	se lèvent-ils?
mon frère se lève-t-il?	mes frères se lèvent-ils?
se lève-t-il?	se lèvent-elles?
ma sœur se lève-t-elle?	mes sœurs se lèvent-elles?

EXERCISE.

INDIC. PRES. Do I apply myself?—Art thou called? Does he stoop?—Do we walk?—Do you deceive yourself?—Do they defend themselves?

IMP. Was I resting?—Was your sister applying herself? Did we accuse ourselves?—Were you eager?—Did they grow cold?

PERF. DEF. Did I comfort myself?—Did he present himself to the assembly?—Did we respect ourselves?—Did you punish yourselves?—Did they lie down?

PERF. INDEF. Have I flattered myself?—Has he recovered? Have we stopt?—Have you fancied?—Have they undressed?

 **PERF. ANT.** *Not used interrogatively.*

PLUP. Had I trusted to certain guides?—Had he confided in that man?—Had we condemned ourselves?—Had you wondered? Had the armies met?

FUT. ABSOL. Shall I yield?—Will he devote himself to agriculture?—Shall we be tired? Will you grow rich?—Will they part?

FUT. ANT. Shall I have betrayed myself?—Will he have seized his arms?—Shall we have devoted ourselves?—Will you have fatigued yourselves?—Will they have taken offence?

CONDIT. Should I interfere in that affair?—Would he be impatient?—Should we relent?—Would you join?—Would they take cold?

COND. PAST. Should I have practised?—Would she have retired from the world?—Should we have escaped from the wreck? Would you have devoted yourselves to the education of your children?—Would they have walked?

Read, translate and parse.

Se sont-ils réjouis de cette nouvelle? Se serait-il fâché? Nous sommes-nous amusés? Me promènerai-je cette après-midi? Vous êtes-vous blessé? Sa mère s'est elle retirée du monde? Vos amis se sont-ils séparés? Nous fierons-nous à cet inconnu?

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB USED

. INTERROGATIVELY AND WITH A NEGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*Do I not rise? Am I not rising?*)

ne me levé-je pas?	ne nous levons-nous pas?
ne te lèves-tu pas?	ne vous levez-vous pas?
ne se lève-t-il pas?	ne se lèvent-ils pas?
mon frère ne se lève-t-il pas?	mes frères ne se lèvent-ils pas?
ne se lève-t-elle pas?	ne se lèvent-elles pas?
ma sœur ne se lève-t-elle pas?	mes sœurs ne se lèvent-elles pas?

IMPERF. <i>Did I not rise?</i>	ne me levais-je pas?
PERF. DEF. <i>Did I not rise?</i>	ne me levai-je pas?

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

(*Have I not risen?*)

ne me suis-je pas levé?	ne nous sommes-nous pas levés?
ne t'es-tu pas levé?	ne vous êtes-vous pas levés?

mon frère ne s'est-il pas levé ?	mes frères ne se sont-ils pas levés ?
ne s'est-elle pas levée ?	ne se sont-elles pas levées ?
ma sœur ne s'est-elle pas levée ?	mes sœurs ne se sont-elles pas levées ?

EXERCISE.

INDIC. PRES. Do I not apply myself?—Art thou not called ?
Does he not stoop?—Do we not walk?—Do you not deceive
yourself?—Do they not defend themselves ?

IMPERF. Was I not writing?—Was not your sister applying
herself to the study of botany?—Did we not accuse ourselves ?
Were you not eager?—Did they not grow cold ?

PERF. DEF. Did I not comfort myself?—Did he not present
himself to the assembly?—Did we not respect ourselves?—
Did you not punish yourselves?—Did they not lie down ?

PERF. INDEF. Have I not flattered myself?—Has he not
recovered?—Have we not slept?—Have you not fancied?—
Have they not undressed ?

PERF. ANT. *Not used interrogatively.*

PLUP. Had I not trusted to certain guides?—Had he not
confided in that man?—Had we not condemned ourselves?—Had
you not wondered?—Had not the armies met ?

FUTURE ABSOL. Shall I not yield?—Will he not devote
himself to agriculture?—Shall we not be tired?—Will you not
grow rich?—Will they not part ?

FUT. ANT. Shall I not have betrayed myself?—Will he not
have seized his arms?—Shall we not have devoted ourselves?—
Will you not have fatigued yourselves?—Will they not have
taken offence ?

COND. Should I not interfere in that affair?—Would he not
be impatient?—Should we not relent?—Would you not join?—
Would they not take cold ?

COND. PAST. Should I not have practised?—Would she not
have retired from the world?—Should we not have escaped from
the wreck?—Would you not have devoted yourselves to the
education of your children?—Would they not have walked ?

Read, translate and parse.

Ne vous étonnez-vous pas de sa conduite ? Ne se réjouit-elle pas de vos succès ? Ne se seront-ils pas trompés ? Cet homme ne s'est-il pas noyé ? Ne se livre-t-elle pas à la dissipation ? Ne vous adoucirez-vous jamais ?

OF RECIPROCAL VERBS.

172. Reciprocal verbs are conjugated like reflected verbs both in their simple and compound tenses—but have no singular, as they express the reciprocal action of persons or things upon each other. *Ex.*

INDICATIVE, PRESENT.

<i>We assist one another</i>	nous nous secourons l'un l'autre
<i>You assist one another</i>	vous vous secourez l'un l'autre
<i>They assist one another</i>	ils secourent l'un l'autre

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>We have assisted one another</i>	{ nous nous sommes secourus l'un l'autre, &c.
-------------------------------------	--

[If there is more than one individual on each side, *les uns les autres* should be used.—Sometimes the preposition *entre* is prefixed to the verb, and then the pronoun *l'un l'autre* is omitted; as, *they kill one another*, ils s'entretuent; instead of *ils se tuent l'un l'autre*.]

OF NEUTER VERBS.

173. A neuter verb can never govern an accusative; but when it has a reference to some object, its action is transferred by means of prepositions, chiefly *à* and *de*.*

* Some verbs are neuter in one sense, and active in another, as, *descendre*, to come down; *descendre l'escalier*, to go down stairs.

[Neuter verbs do not govern an accusative, because by nature they are destitute of that object which receives the action of a verb, without the interposition of a preposition. Therefore we cannot say, according to the English, *le fils obéit le père*, the son obeys the father, but, *le fils obéit au père*.]

174. Neuter verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* in their compound tenses.

<i>avoir dormi</i>	to have slept
<i>avoir couru</i>	to have run

175. The following form their compound tenses with *être*.

<i>aller</i>	to go	<i>rentrer</i>	to come in again
<i>arriver</i>	to arrive	<i>retourner</i>	to go again
<i>choir</i>	to fall	<i>retomber</i>	to fall again
<i>déchoir</i>	to decay	<i>sortir</i>	to go out
<i>échoir</i>	to expire	<i>tomber</i>	to fall
<i>décéder</i>	to die	<i>venir</i>	to come
<i>éclore</i>	to blow	<i>devenir</i>	to become
<i>entrer</i>	to come in	<i>parvenir</i>	to attain
<i>mourir</i>	to die	<i>revenir</i>	to come back
<i>naître</i>	to be born	<i>survenir</i>	to happen
<i>partir</i>	to set out		

176. The following neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être* in their compound tenses.

<i>accourir</i>	to run to	<i>croître</i>	to grow
<i>périr</i>	to perish	<i>décroître</i>	to decrease
<i>apparaître</i>	to appear	<i>accroître</i>	to increase
<i>disparaître</i>	to disappear	<i>rester</i>	to stay
<i>comparaître</i>	to appear	<i>passer</i>	to pass
<i>grandir</i>	to grow		

[The above verbs may be considered as expressing either an action, or the result of an action; in the first instance, *avoir* is proper, in the second, the tenses of the auxiliary verb *être* must be used. Therefore we may say with equal propriety, *il a péri dans ce combat*, or *il est péri dans ce combat*. In the first case we allude to the battle, which caused his death, but in the last sentence we intimate that his death was the effect of the battle.

The participles of neuter verbs conjugated with *être* are declined.]

177. Some others take *avoir* or *être*, but to convey different meanings; as,

Cesser	{	sa fièvre a cessé ce matin	(it may have returned)
	{	sa fièvre est cessée	he has no fever
Convenir	{	cela m'a convenu	it has suited me
	{	il est convenu du prix	he agreed about, &c.
Echapper	{	cela m'a échappé	I forgot it
	{	ce mot m'est échappé	I said it unwillingly

[And a few others, which will be found in good dictionaries, as well as those which are both active and neuter, and are distinguished by the case they govern.]

178. Some neuter verbs govern the dative case in French, whatever preposition they may govern in English; as,

<i>applaudir à</i>	to applaud	<i>penser à</i>	to think of
<i>compatir à</i>	to pity	<i>plaire à</i>	to please
<i>consentir à</i>	to consent	<i>répondre à</i>	to answer
<i>contrevénir à</i>	to infringe	<i>renoncer à</i>	to renounce
<i>contribuer à</i>	to contribute	<i>remédier à</i>	to remedy
<i>déplaire à</i>	to displease	<i>ressembler à</i>	to resemble
<i>désobéir à</i>	to disobey	<i>résister à</i>	to resist
<i>nuire à</i>	to hurt	<i>songer à</i>	to think of
<i>obéir à</i>	to obey	<i>subvenir à</i>	to relieve
<i>obvier à</i>	to obviate	<i>succéder à</i>	to succeed
<i>parvenir à</i>	to attain	<i>survivre à</i>	to outlive

179. The following, *insulter*, to insult; *persuader*, to persuade; *réver*, to dream; *travailler*, to work; sometimes govern an accusative, but most commonly the dative.

EXERCISE.

☞ Henceforth the Tenses will be used promiscuously.

The wise Socrates did not applaud the follies of young
 * sage (a) folie. f.

Alcibiades—A good christian forgives his enemies—The
 chrétien m. pardonner à ennemi. m.

- distracted goddess resembled a fury—That sensible girl pitied
troublé déesse. f. (a) furie. f. ——— P. (a)
- the sorrows of an unfortunate mother—The assembly of the gods
chagrin. m. infortunée assemblée. f. dieu
- applauded the words of Jupiter—I have fallen—He is arrived
P. (a) parole. f. ——— (c) (c)
- Let us resist tyranny—The son succeeded his father—The
(a) P. (a)
- immense riches of the minister would have supplied the wants of
** richesse. f. subvenir(a) besoin. m.*
- the poor—The ancient philosophers enjoyed great consideration
*pauvre. m. pl. * jouir de (c) ——— f.*
- I have just answered the letter of your son—He plays on the
(b) (a) jouer de
- violin—They play at billiards—The consul enjoyed the privileges
violon. m. † jouer à billiard. m. sing ——— m.
- of royalty—He obeyed the orders of the king.
royauté. f. p. obéir (a) ordre. m.

References.

(a) See 178. (b) See the Idiomatical tenses. (c) See 175, and observe that in passive verbs, *je suis*, with the participle, denotes a present; as, I am loved, *je suis aimé*: whereas, with nenter verbs, it denotes a perfect indefinite; as, I have fallen, *je suis tombé*. * This adjective to precede its substantive. † *Jouer*, to play, governs the genitive when it denotes to play upon musical instruments; otherwise it governs the dative.

Read, translate and parse.

Ce ministre jouit d'une grande réputation. N'est-il pas encore revenu? Il a désobéi aux ordres de ses supérieurs. Il ne ressemble pas à son cousin. Contribuez à son bonheur. Sa mère n'a pas consenti au mariage.

EXAMINATION.—172. How are reciprocal verbs conjugated ?

173. Does a neuter verb govern the accusative ? * Are not some verbs active in one sense and neuter in another ? 174. How are neuter verbs conjugated in their compound tenses ? 175. Name those that form their compound with *être* ? 176. Which neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être* ? [Are not the participles of neuter verbs declined, and in what case ?] 177. What neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être* for their compound tenses, but to convey different meanings ? 178. What verbs govern the dative case ? 179. What are the verbs which govern sometimes an accusative, but most commonly the dative ?

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

180. The impersonal verb is used in the third person singular, only.

[In impersonal verbs, the nominative *il* has no relation to a substantive, as may be seen by the impossibility of substituting a noun in its place.]

181. The impersonal verbs are :

it drizzles	<i>il bruine</i>
it lightens	<i>il éclaire</i>
it freezes	<i>il gèle</i>
it thaws	<i>il dégèle</i>
it hails	<i>il grêle</i>
it snows	<i>il neige</i>
it rains	<i>il pleut</i>
it thunders	<i>il tonne</i>
it concerns	<i>il importe</i>

[*Pleuv* is an irregular verb ; the rest are of the first conjugation.]

182. Many personal verbs may become impersonal, and are frequently used as such. Examples :

it happens	<i>il arrive</i>
it becomes	<i>il convient</i>
it appears	<i>il paraît</i>
it seems	<i>il semble.</i>

Conjugation of the impersonal verb,

PLEUVOIR, *To rain.*

	GERUND.	pleuvant	PART.	plu
IND.	PRES.	il pleut	IMP.	il pleuvait
	PERF. DEF.	il plut	PERF. INDF.	il a plu
	PERF. ANT.	il eut plu	PLUP.	il avait plu
	FUTURE	il pleuvra	FUT. ANT.	il aura plu
	CONDIT.	il pleuvrait	COND. PAST.	il aurait plu
SUBJ.	PRES.	qu'il pleuve	IMP.	qu'il plût
	PERF.	qu'il ait plu	PLUP.	qu'il eût plu

183. The auxiliary verb *to be*, *être*, becomes impersonal, 1st, whenever it is followed by an adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense, or denoting the time of the day.

<i>il est utile</i>	it is useful
<i>il était impossible</i>	it was impossible
<i>il a été dangereux</i>	it has been dangerous
<i>il serait surprenant</i>	it would be surprising
<i>il est deux heures</i>	it is two o'clock
<i>il sera quatre heures</i>	it will be four o'clock

184. 2ndly. The impersonal verb *to be*, coming before an adjective denoting the disposition of the weather, is translated by the irregular and impersonal verb *faire*.

<i>il fait beau</i>	it is fine weather
<i>il faisait chaud</i>	it was warm
<i>il fera du vent</i>	it will be windy

185. 3rdly. The verb *to be* becomes impersonal, when immediately followed by an article, a pronoun, a preposition, a verb or an adverb; the pronoun *il* is then changed into *ce*.

ART.	<i>c'est la coutume</i>	it is the custom
PRON.	<i>c'était son devoir</i>	it was her duty
PREP.	<i>ce sera chez moi</i>	it will be at my house
VERB.	<i>ce serait l'offenser</i>	it would be to offend him
ADV.	<i>ce fut alors que je vis</i>	it was then I saw
ART.	<i>ç'a été la coutume</i>	it has been the custom

[*Ce* is sometimes used before an adjective ; as, *c'est bon, c'est mauvais* ; but then it refers to something mentioned before.]

186. 4thly. The verb *to be* becomes impersonal when added to the adverb *there*.—It is conjugated thus :

Y AVOIR, *There to be.*

IND. PRES.	<i>There is, or there are</i>	il y a
IMP.	<i>There was, or there were</i>	il y avait
PERF. DEF.	<i>There was</i>	il y eut
PERF. IND.	<i>There has been</i>	il y a eu
PERF. ANT.	<i>There had been</i>	il y eut eu
PLUP.	<i>There had been</i>	il y avait eu
FUT. ABS.	<i>There will be</i>	il y aura
FUT. ANT.	<i>There will have been</i>	il y aura eu
COND. PRES.	<i>There would be</i>	il y aurait
COND. PAST	<i>There would have been</i>	il y aurait eu
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>That there may be</i>	qu'il y ait
IMP.	<i>That there might be</i>	qu'il y eût
PERF.	<i>That there may have been</i>	qu'il y eût eu
PLUP.	<i>That there might have been</i>	qu'il y eût eu

187. Examples of the same verb used negatively, interrogatively, &c.

<i>y a-t-il ?</i>	Is there ?
<i>y avait-il ?</i>	was there ?
<i>n'y eut-il pas ?</i>	was there not ?
<i>n'y a-t-il pas eu ?</i>	has there not been ?
<i>il n'y eut pas eu</i>	there had not been
<i>il n'y avait pas eu</i>	there had not been
<i>y aura-t-il ?</i>	will there be ?
<i>y aura-t-il eu ?</i>	will there have been ?

EXERCISE.

It is fine weather—Let us take a walk—It is | a sad thing |
 (c) ss promener. (g) triste
 to be sick and to have no money—There are men unworthy of that
 || (c) † indigne

name—It was exposing one's self to a great danger—It is nature
nom. m. (d) *s'exposer* —m. (d)

that speaks—It is the property of virtue to charm men—It was
qui (d) *le propre* || *charmer* (g)

ten o'clock—It does not freeze—It will rain—It was your
dis (a) (a) **

brothers who danced—It concerns children to avoid idleness—
qui P. *danser* (a) *aux* || *éviter*

It is dangerous to trust that man—Is there any fire in the parlour?
..... || *se fier à* (f) † *dans salle*. f.

There is a man wounded—There has been a great battle, and
(a) * *blessé* (a) *bataille*. f.

there have been three thousand men killed—Does it rain—It
(a) ‡ *tue*. (a)

seems to a Mahometan that we are unbelievers—Is there a
(b) —m. *que* *incrédule* (f)

coach from York to Edinburgh?
voiture publique. — *Edimbourg*.

References.

(a) See 181. (b) See 182. (c) See 184. (d) See 185. (e) See 186. (f) See 187. (g) See 183. * The impersonal *il y a*, governs *de* before the next participle. † Partitive sense. ‡ A noun of number requires *de* before the next participle. || The impersonals *il consent*, *il appartient*, &c., *il est*, *il était*, followed by an adjective—*c'est*, *c'était*, &c., followed by a noun—require *de* before an infinitive. ** *It is*, *it was*, followed by a substantive plural in the nominative, must be expressed by *ce sont*, *c'étaient*, *ce furent*; and not by *c'est*, *c'était*, *ce fut*. The same rule must be observed with the pronouns *eux*, or *elles*; *ce sont eux*, *ce sont elles qui*, &c.

Read, translate and parse.

Il ne pleut pas. Y avait-il de la cavalerie à la revue? Il fait chaud. Il est impossible d'enseigner cet élève. C'est mon devoir. Il est trois heures et demie.

EXAMINATION.—180. How are impersonal verbs conjugated, and how are they distinguished from other verbs? 181. Enumerate the impersonal verbs. 182. May not a personal verb become impersonal? 183. In what case does the verb *être* become impersonal? 184. When the verb *to be*, with an adjective, denotes the disposition of the weather, how is it translated into French? 185. In what instances is the pronoun *il* changed into *ce*, before the verb *être*? 186. Conjugate the impersonal verb *y avoir*.

188. Conjugation of the impersonal verb,

FALLOIR, to be necessary, requisite, needful.

INDIC. PRES.	<i>it is necessary, it must</i>	<i>il faut</i>
IMP.	<i>it was necessary, &c.</i>	<i>il fallait</i>
PER. DEF.	<i>it was requisite, &c.</i>	<i>il fallut</i>
PER. INDEF.	<i>it has been necessary</i>	<i>il a fallu</i>
PERF. ANT.	<i>it had been necessary</i>	<i>il eût fallu</i>
PLUP.	<i>it had been necessary</i>	<i>il avait fallu</i>
FUTURE	<i>it will be necessary</i>	<i>il faudra</i>
FUT. ANT.	<i>it will have been necessary</i>	<i>il aura fallu</i>
CONDIT.	<i>it would be needful</i>	<i>il faudrait</i>
COND. PAST	<i>it would have been needful</i>	<i>il aurait fallu</i>
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>that it may be requisite</i>	<i>qu'il faille</i>
IMP.	<i>that it might be requisite</i>	<i>qu'il fallût</i>
PERF.	<i>that it may have been needful</i>	<i>qu'il ait fallu</i>
PLUP.	<i>that it might have been requisite</i>	<i>qu'il eût fallu</i>

189. Conjugation of the impersonal verb,

VALOIR MIEUX, to be better.

IND. PRES.	<i>it is better</i>	<i>il vaut mieux</i>
IMP.	<i>it was better</i>	<i>il valait mieux</i>
PER. DEF.	<i>it was better</i>	<i>il valut mieux</i>
PER. IND.	<i>it has been better</i>	<i>il a mieux valu</i>
FUTURE	<i>it will be better</i>	<i>il vaudra mieux</i>
CONDIT.	<i>it would be better</i>	<i>il vaudrait mieux</i>
SUB. PRES.	<i>that it may be better</i>	<i>qu'il vaille mieux</i>
IMPF.	<i>that it might be better</i>	<i>qu'il valût mieux</i>

190. Conjugation of the impersonal verb,

SUFFIRE, to be sufficient, to be enough.

IND. PRES.	it is enough	il suffit or c'est assez
IMP.	it was enough	il suffisait or c'était assez
PER. DEF.	it was enough	il suffit or ce fut assez
PER. IND.	it has been enough	il a suffi or ç'a été assez
FUTURE	it will be enough	il suffira or ce sera assez
CONDIT.	it would be enough	il suffirait or ce serait assez
SUB. PRES.	{ that it may be enough }	{ qu'il suffise or que ce soit assez }
IMP.	{ that it might be enough }	{ qu'il suffît or que ce fût assez }

The impersonal verb *falloir* requires some particular observations.

191. The English verb *must* is not impersonal, and may take the name of a person or thing for its nominative: the French verb *falloir* is always impersonal; therefore the construction must be altered.

192. The construction most in use, is to place the conjunction *que* after *il faut, il fallait, &c.*, then using the nominative of the English verb as a subject to the second verb in French, which must be in the subjunctive.

Il faut que je vende ma maison I must sell my house.*

193. All the expressions which imply a necessity or an obligation, may be rendered by *falloir*.

194. The verb *to want* may also be expressed by *falloir*.

* The second way of translating this sentence is, *il me faut vendre ma maison*; but as it requires the knowledge of personal conjunctive pronouns, not yet introduced, the illustration of this rule has been purposely postponed.

EXERCISE.

I must buy a good horse—You must speak to your father about
 (a) *acheter* (a) *de*

that affair—I shall be obliged to dismiss my servant—You must
affaire.f. (b) *renvoyer domestique.* (a)

get up—He must sell his estate—It is necessary to avoid guilt,
se lever (a) *terre* (c) *mal. m.*

and to do good—That child should learn a page of his vocabulary.
bien. m. * *apprene* m.

References.

(a) See 192. (b) See 193. (c) See 193, and observe that *falloir* governs the second verb without preposition. * When the verb *falloir* is used in the present or future indicative, the following verb must be in the present subjunctive, the other tenses require the imperfect subjunctive.

Read, translate and parse.

Il faut qu'il parle au ministre. Il fallait éviter sa conversation. Il faudrait être bien avare, pour ne pas donner d'éducation à ses enfans. Il fallait voir cet homme sur le champ.

EXAMINATION.—191. What difference is there between the English verb *must*, and the French verb *falloir*? 192. What is the usual construction in French? 193. In what case may the French impersonal *falloir* be used?

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

Some verbs, which are generally classed among regular verbs, have a peculiarity in the orthography of some of their persons or tenses; these will be conjugated here to serve as a model for the conjugation of other verbs of the same termination.

195. Verbs ending in *cer*, change *c* into *ç* before the vowels *a*, *o*, in order to give the *c* the sound it had in the radical letters, and to avoid the harsh pronunciation of *ca*, *co*.

AVANCER, to advance.

Gerund. Avançant—*Part.* avancé

IND. pres. j'avanc-e, es, e, avançons, avancez, avancent

Imp. j'avançais, avançais, avançait, avançons, avanciez, avançaient—*Perf. def.* j'avançai, &c.—*Future.* j'avancerai

Cond. j'avancerais

IMP. avance, qu'il avance, avançons, avancez, qu'ils avancent

SUBJ. pres. que j'avance—*Imperf.* que j'avançasse, &c.

[So are conjugated *amorcer*, *annoncer*, *délacer*, *dépêcer*, *devancer*, *enfancer*, *énoncer*, *pincer*, *sucer*, &c.]

196. Verbs in *ger*, take an *e* after their radical letters, whenever *g* is to be followed by *a*, or *o*, to avoid the sound of *ga*, or *go*, which the verb had not in the infinitive.

JUGER, to judge.

Gerund. jugeant—*Part.* jugé

IND. pres. je juge, juges, juge, jugeons, jugez, jugent

Imperf. je jugeais, eais, eait, jug-ions, iez, jugeaient

Perf. def. je jugeai, eas, ea, jugeâmes, jugeâtes, jugèrent

Future. je jugerai—*Cond.* je jugerais

IMP. juge, juge, jugeons, jugez, jugent

SUBJ. que je juge—*Imperf.* que je jugeasse, &c.

[Conjugate in the same manner, *abrégér*, *arranger*, *corriger*, *dégager*, *déranger*, *diriger*, *encourager*, *engager*, *gager*, *manger*, *ménager*, *négliger*, *partager*, *ranger*, *songer*, *venger*, &c.]

197. Verbs ending in *ier* have a double *i* in the imperfect indicative, and present of the subjunctive.

PRIER, to pray.

Gerund. priant—*Part.* prié

IND. pres. je prie, pries, prie, prions, priez, prient—*Imperf.*

je pri-ais, ais, ait, priions, priez, priaient—*Perf. def.*
 je priai—*Fut.* je prierai—*Condit.* je prierais
IMP. prie, prie, priions, priez, prient
SUBJ. pres. que je prie, pries, prie, priions, priez, prient
Imperf. que je priasse

[Conjugate in the same manner, *décrier, crier, certifier, plier, déplier, rélier, oublier, étudier, concilier, nier, &c.*]

198. Verbs ending in *ayer, oyer, and uyer*, like *payer, ployer, appuyer*, are conjugated like *employer*; that is to say, the *y* is preserved in every part of the verb, except before *e, es, ent*, where it is changed into *i*.

[The ACADEMY leaves the choice of writing *il paye*, or *il paie*, *je payerai*, or *je paierai*; or even *je patrai*, and yet we find *il fraie, il effraie*; *païement, bégaiement*.—The generality of Grammarians follow the model here given.]

EMPLOYER, to employ.

Gerund. employant—*Part.* employé
IND. pres. j'emploie, emploies, emploie. employons, employez, emploient—*Imperf.* j'employ-ais. ais ait, ions, iez, aient—*Perf. def.* j'employai—*Future.* j'emploierai.
Condit. j'emploierais
IMP. emploi-e, employ-ons, ez, emploient
SUBJ. pres. que j'emploi-e, es, e, employ-ions, iez, emploient—*Imperf.* que j'employasse

[Conjugate in the same manner, *essayer, déployer, effrayer, raployer, ployer, tutoyer, noyer, nettoyer, aboyer, côtoyer, couloyer, appuyer, essuyer, ennuyer, désennuyer, &c.*

Envoyer is conjugated like *employer*, but in the future it makes *enverrai*, and in the conditional, *enverrais*, instead of *envoierai, &c.*

Renvoyer is conjugated like *envoyer*.]

199. Verbs ending in *éter, and uer*, are subject to a poetical license in the future and conditional tenses; they may be written thus:—

j'agréerai, or j'agrérâi, &c. je jouerai, or je jouerâi, &c.

· [So are conjugated *créer, suppléer, désagréer, avouer, nouer, contribuer, distribuer, &c.*]

➤ As to verbs in *eder, eler, emer, ener, erer, eter, ever*, and *uler*, see the following rules.

. [One of the greatest difficulties of the French Orthography consists in the use of the double final consonants, *tt* and *ll*, when the radical letters of a verb, in the infinitive, end with *t* or *l*. This subject has not been treated in elementary books. The French Academy itself does not explain either in what case the final radical consonants, instead of being doubled, should be preceded by an *è* grave, or in what instances those consonants neither affect the vowels which precede them, nor require to be doubled themselves—Suppose a pupil has the verb *inférer* to conjugate; his grammar teaches him that this verb is of the first conjugation ending in *er*; he, therefore, will adapt the radical *infér* to the final letters of the conjugation in *er*, and will naturally write: *j'infère tu infères, il infère, nous inférons, vous inférez, ils infèrent*. After having thus grammatically proceeded in the conjugation of this verb, it will not be an easy matter to persuade him, that in the six changes which this verb has undergone in the present tense only, he has committed no less than four orthographical errors. In fact, he had not been told that *The vowel which precedes the final radical consonants, is either long or short, according to the different vowels which follow that final radical consonant*, and that it is essential that the orthography should be subservient to the difference in the sound.

We will here endeavour to supply the omission of Grammarians on a point of such importance to the pupil.]

200. When a double consonant does not terminate the radical letters of a verb, there is no difficulty: these double consonants do not require any change in the conjugation of the verb. Thus *appel-er, commencer, annul-er*, preserve the double consonants *pp, mm, nn*, in whatever person, tense, or mood it may be.

201. If the radical letters end in the infinitive with a double consonant, it must continue double through all the verb: Ex.

Raisonn-er; je raisonn-e, nous raisonn-ons, &c.

Pill-er; je pill-e, tu pill-es, vous pill-ez, &c.

202. When the radical letters of a verb terminate in a single *l* or *t*, these consonants are never doubled; when preceded by *a*, *i*, *o* : Ex.

Étal-er ; *j'étal-e*, *nous étal-ons*, &c. *Relat-er* ; *je relat-e*, *je relat-erai*, &c. *Rabot-er* ; *il rabot-e*, *vous rabot-ez*, &c. *Pil-er* ; *je pil-e*, *tu pil-es*, *nous pil-ons*.

[It must be observed, however, as to the pronounciation, that when the last syllable is mute, the vowel which precedes the radical consonant, though it does not become long nor receive the accent, is yet sounded a little stronger : Ex.

Étal-er, *j'étale*, *tu étales*, *nous étalons*, &c. *Piler*, *je pile*, *tu piles*, *vous pilez*, *ils pilent*, &c.]

203. The radical final *l* having *e* or *u* before it, is doubled, whenever it is followed by an *e* mute ; Ex.

Appeler, *j'appelle*, *tu appell-es*, *nous appel-ons*, *j'appell-erai*. &c. *Annul-er*, *j'annul-e*, *tu annul-es*, *nous annul-ons*, &c.

[It is an acknowledged principle, that only the final radical letters *l* or *t*, single in the infinitive, can be doubled in the conjugation of verbs. The other consonants, when single in the infinitive are never doubled, but if they are preceded by *e*, that *e* which is short in the infinitive, (that is to say, acute or guttural,) may become open, and receive the grave accent, if the syllable which follows is short.]

204. If the *u* which precedes *l* is affected by a circumflex, the *l* is never doubled.

Brûler, *je brûle*, *je brûlerai*, &c.

205. *Célen*, and *receler*, do not double the *l*, but the *e* which precedes takes the grave accent, when the following syllable is mute or when it contains a guttural *e* : Ex.

Je recèle, *tu recèles*, *nous recélons*, *vous recélez*, *ils recèlent*, *je recèlerai*, &c.

206. The final radical consonant *t*, being pre-

ceded by *e*, is doubled whenever it is followed by an *e* mute or an *e* guttural: **Ex.**

Projet-er, je projette, je projetterai, &c.

207. It is not doubled if preceded by *u*.

Supputer, je suppute, nous supputons, &c.

208. Whenever a final radical consonant (whatever it may be) is preceded in the infinitive by an *é* acute, that letter is changed into *è* grave, when the final syllable is mute.

Recéler, je recèle, nous recélons, il recèlera, &c. Référer, je réfère, &c.

209. The same change takes place if the final radical consonant is preceded by *e* mute: **Ex.**

<i>Egrener</i>	<i>j'égrène</i>	<i>j'égrenais, &c.</i>
<i>Crever</i>	<i>je crève</i>	<i>tu crèves, &c.</i>
<i>Se lever</i>	<i>je me lève</i>	<i>il se lève, &c.</i>
<i>Semer</i>	<i>il sème</i>	<i>nous semons, &c.</i>

210. We must, however, except the letter *x*, which cannot be preceded by *e* accented: we say,

Vaser, je vaxe, il vaxe, &c.

211. If the final radical consonant is preceded in the infinitive by *è* or *é*, that accented letter is invariable: **Ex.**

<i>Ecrêmer</i>	<i>j'écrame</i>	<i>nous écrêmons, &c.</i>
<i>Crêper</i>	<i>je crêpe</i>	<i>vous crêpez, &c.</i>

PARADIGM.

To show the similarity of verbs in their final syllables.

		INFIN. Present			er, ir, oir, re		
		Gerund			ant		
		Participle			é, i, u, t, s		
		<i>Je,</i>	<i>tu,</i>	<i>il,</i>	<i>nous,</i>	<i>vous,</i>	<i>ils.</i>
IND. Pres.	{	e,	es,	e;	ons,	ez,	ent
		s,	s,	t;			
		s,	s,	d;			
		x,	x,	t;			
Imp.		ais,	ais,	ait;	ious,	iez,	aient
Perf.	{	ai,	as,	a;	âmes,	âtes	èrent
		is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	irent
		us,	us,	ut;	ûmes,	ûtes	urent
		ins,	ins,	int;	îmes,	îtes	îurent
Fut.		rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront
Cond.		rais,	rais,	rait;	rions,	riez,	raient
IMP	{	e,	}	e	ons,	ez,	ent
		s,					
SUBJ. Pres.		e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
Imperf.	{	asse,	asses,	ât,	assions,	assiez,	assent
		isse,	isses,	ît,	issions,	issiez,	issent
		usse,	usses,	ût,	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent
		insse,	insse,	int,	inssions,	inssiez,	inssent

[Where only the first person of a tense is given, the other persons may easily be known by the *Paradigm*. Thus *je mis*, *je croirai*, *j'obtiendrais*, &c. look for the perfect definite, future, and conditional, in the *Paradigm*, and you will have *je mis*, *tu mis*, *il mit*; *je croirai*, *tu croiras*; *j'obtiendrais*, *tu obtiendrais*, *il obtiendrait*, *nous obtiendrions*, &c.]

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST OF ALL THE FRENCH IRREGULAR VERBS.

ABAT-TRE, -tant, -tu—s, -tis, to pull down. Like *battre*.

ABSOUDRE, to absolve; (*defective*.) *Gerund.* absolvant. *Part.* absous or absout. *IND. pres.* j'absou-s, -s, -t; absolv-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* absolvais. (*no perfect definite*.) *Future* absoudrai.

Condit. absoudrais. **IMP.** absous, qu'il absolve ; absolv-*ons*, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** absolv-e, -es, -e ; -ions, -iez, -ent. **Imperf.** wanted.

S'ABST-ENIR, -enant, -enu—iens, -ins, *to abstain*. Like *tenir*.

ABSTRAIRE, *to abstract*; (*defective*.) Like *traire* ; *faire abstraction de* is usually preferred.

[*Abstraire*, *distraindre*, *extraire*, *retraire*, and *soustraire*, are conjugated like *traire*, but have no perfect definite nor imperfect subjunctive.

As these verbs would sound harsh in many of their tenses, they are seldom used, except in the present of the infinitive, and those tenses which are formed with the participle.]

ACCOUR-IR, -ant, -u, —s, -us, *to run to*. Like *courir*.

[This verb forms its compound tenses with *avoir* or *être*.

See 175, and Observations on 176, p. 125.]

ACCROIRE, *to make one believe*.

[This verb is used in the present of the infinitive only, with all the tenses of *Faire*, (see that verb :) as, *Je fais accroire*, *je faisais accroire*, &c.

Faire accroire que *en faire accroire*, and *s'en faire accroire* follow the same conjugation.]

ACCR-ÔÎTRE, -oissant, -u, —ois, us, *to increase*. Like *croître*.

[This verb forms its compound with *avoir* or *être*. See 175, and Observations on 176, p. 125.]

ACCUEILL-IR, -ant, i, —e, is, *to welcome*. Like *cueillir*.

ACQUÉRIR, *to acquire*. **Gerund.** acquérant. **Part.** acquis. **IND.**

pres. j'acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons acquérez, acquiè-

rent. **Impf.** j'acquerais. **Perf. def.** j'acquis. **Futurs.** j'acquerrai

Condit. j'acquerrais. **IMP.** acquiers, qu'il acquière, acqué-

rons, acquérez, qu'ils acquièrent. **SUBJ. pres.** que j'acquière,

-es, -e,; acquériens, -iez, acquièrent. **Imperf.** que j'acquisse.

[The double r must be sounded strongly in the Future and Conditional.]

ADM-ETTRE, -ettant, is—ets, is, *to admit*. Like *mettre*.

ADJOINDRE, -gnant, -nt—ns, -gnis, *to adjoin*. Like *joindre*.

ALLER, *to go*. **Gerund.** Allant. **Part.** allé. **IND. pres.** Je vais,

vas, va ; allons, allez, vont. **Imp.** j'allais. **Perf. def.** j'allai.

Perf. indef. je suis allé or j'ai été. **Plusperf.** j'étais allé, or

j'avais été. **Futurs.** j'irai. **Condit.** j'irais. **Condit. past.**

je serais allé or j'aurais été. **IMP.** Va, qu'il aille ; allons,

allez, qu'ils aillent. **SUBJ. pres.** que j'aille, ailles, aille, allions,

alliez, aillent. **Imperf.** que j'allasse.

[We have seen by the preceding conjugation, that this

verb forms some of its compound tenses with *avoir* or *être*. But observe that *avoir* is used when we wish to express that we are returned from the place we had been at; thus, *il a été à Paris*, implies the return; but *il est allé à Paris*, intimates that he is at Paris, or is still on his journey thither.

The imperative *va* is spelled *vas* when followed by *y*; *vas-y*, go thither; but if the *y* be followed by a verb, the *s* is not added; *va y donner ordre*; go and take care of it.]

S'EN ALLER, to go away. *Gerund.* s'en allant. *Part.* allé. *IND. pres.* Je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, il s'en va; nous nous en allons, vous vous en allez, ils s'en vont. *Imperf.* je m'en allais. *Perf. defn.* je m'en allai. *Perf. indef.* je m'en suis allé. *Future.* je m'en irai. *Condit.* je m'en irais. *IMPER.* va-t'en, qu'il s'en aille: allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en, qu'ils s'en aillent. *SUBJ. pres.* que je m'en aille. *Imperf.* que je m'en allasse.

APPARAÎTRE, to appear.

[This defective verb is a law term, and is used only in the infinitive and in the third person singular present indicative. It is then impersonal.]

APPAR-ÂÎTRE, -aissant, -u, -ais, -us, to appear.

[This verb is conjugated like *paraître*, with this difference, that *apparaître* takes both the auxiliaries *avoir* and *être* for its compound tenses, but *paraître* only receives the auxiliary *avoir*. See 176, p. 125.]

APPART-ENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to belong. Like *tenir*.

APPELER. See 203, p. 138.

APPR-ENDRE, -enant, -is, -ends, -is, to learn. Like *prendre*.

ASSAILLIR, to assault. *Gerund.* assaillant. *Part.* assailli. *IND. pres.* j'assaille, -es, -e; assaill-ons, -ez, -ent. *Imperf.* j'assillais. *Perf. def.* j'assillais. *Future.* j'assillirai. *Condit.* j'assillirais. *IMPER.* assaille. *SUBJ. pres.* que j'assaille. *Imperf.* que j'assillisse.

S'ASSEOIR, to sit down. *Gerund.* s'asseyant. *Part.* assis. *IND. pres.* je m'assieds, -ieds, -ied; assey-ons, -ez, -ent. *Imperf.* je m'asseyais. *Perf. def.* je m'assis. *Perf. indef.* je me suis assis. *Future.* je m'assiérai or asseyerai. *Condit.* je m'assiérais or asseyerais. *IMPER.* assieds-toi, qu'il s'asseye; asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseyent. *SUBJ. pres.* que je m'asseye. *Imperf.* que je m'assisse.

[Grammarians do not agree about the orthography of this verb; we follow here the French Academy. Of the two future and conditional tenses given, the first is to be preferred.]

ASSEOIR, to set. Like *s'asseoir*.

ASTREI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to force. Like *peindre*.

ATTEI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to reach. Like *peindre*.

ATTRAIRE, to attract; (*defective*.)

[This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive, though it has all its tenses, except the perfect definite and the imperfect subjunctive. It is conjugated like *traire*.—*Attirer* supplies it, as being more harmonious. See note on the verb *Abstraire*.]

AVANCER. See 195, p. 135.

AVEI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to reach. Like *peindre*.

[This verb is only used in common conversation.]

AVENIR, to happen; (*impersonal*.) *Part.* *avenu*—il *avient*, il *avenait*, il *avint*, il *aviendra*, il *aviendrait*, qu'il *avienne*, qu'il *avint*.

AVOIR, has been conjugated.

BATTRE, to beat. *Gerund.* *Battant*. *Part.* *battu*. *IND. Pres.* je *bats*, *bats*, *bat*; *battous*, *battez*, *battent*. *Imperf.* *battais*. *Perf. def.* *battis*. *Fut.* *battrai*. *Condit.* *battrais*. *IMPER.* *bats*. *SUBJ. pres.* *batte*. *Imperf.* *battisse*.

BÉNIR, to bless.

[This verb is regular and conjugated like *Punir*, but in speaking of things consecrated by the church, it makes in the participle *béni*t, as, *du pain béni*t, consecrated bread; *de l'eau béni*t, holy water.]

BOIRE, to drink. *Gerund.* *Buvant*. *Part.* *bu*. *IND. pres.* *bois*, *bois*, *boit*; *buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*. *Imperf.* *buvais*. *Perf. def. bus*. *Fut.* *boirai*. *Condit. pres.* *boirais*. *IMP.* *bois*, *boive*, *buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*. *SUBJ. pres.* *boive*. *Imperf.* *busse*.

BOUILLIR, to boil. *Gerund.* *Bouillant*. *Part.* *bouilli*. *IND. pres.* *bous*, *bous*, *bout*; *bouill-ons*, *-ez*, *-ent*. *Imperf.* *bouillais*. *Perf. def.* *bouillis*. *Fut.* *bouillirai*. *Cond. pres.* *bouillirais*. *IMP.* *bous*, *bouille*; *bouill-ons*, *-ez*, *-ent*. *SUBJ. pres.* *bouille*. *Imperf.* *bouillisse*.

[This verb is seldom used actively, instead of *bouillir de l'eau*, to boil water; we say, *faire bouillir de l'eau*.]

BRAIRE, to bray, (*defective*). *Pres.* il *brait*; ils *braient*. *Fut.* il *braira*; ils *brairont*. *Condit.* il *brairait*; ils *brairaient*.

[This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive and the persons and tenses here given.]

BRUIRE, to roar, to rustle; (*defective*.) *Imperf.* il *bruyait*, *bruyaient*.

[*Bruyant* is often used, but as a verbal adjective.]

CEI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt, —ns, -gnis, *to gird*. Like *peindre*.

CHALOIR, *to care for*; (*defective and obsolete*.)

CHOIR, *to fall*; (*defective*.)

[This verb is used only in the infinitive and participle *cha*. It is now almost obsolete. *Tomber* has taken its place.]

CIRCONCIRE, *to circumcise*; (*defective*.) *Gerund*. Circoncisant.

Part. circoncis. *IND. pres.* circonc-is, -is, -it; -isons, -isez, -isent. *Perf. def.* circoncis. *Fut.* circoncirai. *Condit.* circoncirais. *IMP.* circonc-is, -ise; -isons, -isez, -isent. *SUBJ. pres.* circoncisse. *Imperf.* circoncisse.

CIRCONSCRI-RE, -vant, -t, —s, -vis, *to circumscribe*. Like *écrire*.

CIRCONV-ENIR, -enant, -enu, —iens, -ins, *to deceive*. Like *venir*.

[This verb is a law term.]

CLORE, *to close*; (*defective*.) *Part*. clos. *Pres.* je clos, clos, clôt.

Fut. je clorai. *Cond.* je clorais.

[*Fermer* and *Boucher* supply it.]

COMBAT-TRE, -tant, -tu, —s, -tis, *to combat*. Like *battre*.

COMM-ETTRE, -ettant, -is, —ets, -is, *to commit*. Like *mettre*.

COMPAROIR, *to appear*; (*defective*.)

[This verb is a law term which has only the present of the infinitive; as, *Etre assigné à comparoir*; to receive a summons to appear.]

COMPAR-AÎTRE, -aissant, -u, —ais, -us, *to appear*. Like *connaître*.

[This verb takes both auxiliaries for its compound tenses.

See *Apparaître*. See 176, p. 125.]

COMPL-AIRE, *to humour*; (*defective*.) No gerund, and therefore

no tenses or persons derived from it. The rest like *plaire*.

Se COMPL-AIRE, -aisant, -u, —ais, -us, *to take delight in*. Like *plaire*.

COMPR-ENDRE, -enant, -is—ends, -is, *to understand*. Like *prendre*.

COMPROM-ETTRE, -ettant, -is—ets, -is, *to expose*. Like *mettre*.

CONCLURE, *to conclude*. *Gerund*. concluant. *Part*. conclus.

IND. pres. je concl-us, -us, -ut; conclu-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je conclusais, conclusais, concluait; conclusions, concluiez, concluaient. *Perf. def.* je conclus. *Fut.* je conclurai. *Condit.* je conclurais. *IMP.* conclue, -e; conclu-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* que je conclue. *Impf.* que je conclusse.

CONCOUR-IR, -ant, u, —s, -us, *to concur*. Like *courir*.

Se CONDOULOIR, *to condole*; (*defective*.)

[This verb has only the present of the infinitive, which is seldom used.]

CONDUIRE, *to conduct*. *Gerund*. conduisant. *Part*. conduit.

IND. *pres.* je conduis, -uis, -uit ; -uison, -uisez, -uisent. *Impf.* je conduisais. *Perf. def.* je conduisis. *Fut.* je conduirai. *Cond.* je conduirais. **IMP.** conduis, -uise ; -uison, -uisez, -uisent. **SUBJ.** *pres.* conduise. *Impf.* conduisisse.

CONFIRE, to pickle. *Gerund.* confisant. *Part.* confit. **IND.** *pres.* je confis, -is, -it ; -isons, -isez, -isent. *Impf.* je confisais. *Perf. def.* je confis. *Fut.* je confirai. *Cond.* je confirais. **IMP.** confis, -ise ; -isons, -isez, -isent. **SUBJ.** *pres.* confise. *Impf.* confisse.

CONJOINDRE, -gnant, -nt, -ns, -gnis, to conjoin. Like *joindre*.

CONNAÎTRE, to know. *Gerund.* connaissant. *Part.* connu. **IND.** *pres.* je connais, -ais, -ait ; connaissons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je connaissais. *Perf. def.* je connus. *Future.* je connaîtrai. *Cond.* je connaîtrais. **IMPER.** connais, connaisse ; connaissons, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ.** *pres.* connaisse. *Imperf.* connusse.

CONQUÉRIR, to conquer ; (defective.) *Gerund.* conquérant. *Part.* conquis. *Perf. def.* je conquis. **SUBJ.** *imperf.* que je conquisse.

[It is also used in its compound tenses : *j'ai conquis, j'avais conquis, &c.*]

CONSENTIR, -tant, -ti, -s, -tis, to consent. Like *sentir*.

CONTENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to contain. Like *tenir*.

CONTRAINDRE, -gnant, -nt, -ns, -gnis, to constrain. Like *peindre*.

CONTREDIRE, -sant, -t, -s, -s, to contradict.

[This verb is conjugated like *dire*, but in the second person plural of the present and imperative, it makes *contredisez*, instead of *contredites*.]

CONTREFAIRE, -aisant, -ait, -ais, -is, to counterfeit, to imitate. Like *faire*.

[CHAMBAUD, and a few other Grammarians, write *contresant, nous contrefesons, je contrefesais*. We follow the French Academy.]

CONTREVENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to infringe. Like *venir*.

CONSTRUIRE, -sant, t, -s, -sis, to construct. Like *conduire*.

CONVENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to agree. Like *venir*.

[This verb takes *avoir* or *être* for its compound tenses.]

CORROMPRE, -ant, -u, -s, -is, to corrupt. Like *rompre*.

COUDRE, to sew. *Gerund.* cousant. *Part.* cousu. **IND.** *pres.* je couds, couds, coud ; cousons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* cousais. *Perf. def.* cousis. *Fut.* coudrai. *Condit.* coudrais. **IMPER.** couds, couse ; cousons, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ.** *pres.* couse. *Impf.* cousisse.

COURIR, *to run*. *Gerund.* courant. *Part.* couru. *IND. pres.* je cours, cours, court; cour-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je courais. *Perf. def.* je courus. *Fut.* je courrai. *Condit.* je courrais. *IMP. cours*, coure; courons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* coure. *Impf.* courusse.

[The double *r* in the Future and Conditional, must be sounded strongly.]

[Speaking of races or hunting, *courre* is sometimes used instead of *courir*: we say, *courir* or *courre un cerf*, *un lièvre*.]

COUV-RIR, -rant, -art,—re, -ris, *to cover*. Like *ouvrir*.

CRAI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, *to fear*. Like *peindre*.

CROIRE, *to believe*. *Gerund.* croyant. *Part.* cru. *IND. pres.* je crois, crois, croit; croy-ons, -ez, croient. *Impf.* je croyais, -ais, -ait; croyions, croyiez, croyaient. *Perf. def.* je crus. *Fut.* je croirai. *Condit.* je croirais. *IMP. crois*, croie; croyons, croyez, croient. *SUBJ. pres.* croie, croies, croie; croyions, croyiez, croient. *Impf.* crusse.

CROÎTRE, *to grow*. *Gerund.* croissant. *Part.* ord. *IND. pres.* je crois, crois, croît; croiss-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je croissais. *Perf. def.* je crûs. *Fut.* croîtrai. *Condit.* croitrais. *IMP. crois*, croisse; croiss-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* croisse. *Impf.* crusse.

CUEILLIR, *to gather*. *Gerund.* cueillant. *Part.* cueilli. *IND. pres.* je cueill-e, -es, -e; cueill-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je cueillais. *Perf. def.* je cueillis. *Fut.* je cueillerai. *Condit.* je cueillerais. *IMP. cueill-e*, -e; -ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* cueille. *Impf.* cueillisse.

CUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, *to bake*. Like *conduire*.

DÉBAT-TRE, -tant, -tu,—s, -tis, *to debate*. Like *battre*.

DÉCHOIR, *to decay*. (*defective*.) *No Gerund.* *Part.* déchu. *IND. pres.* je déchois, -ois, -oit; déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient. (*no imperfect*.) *Perf. def.* déchus. *Future.* décherrai. *Cond.* décherrais. (*no imperative*.) *SUBJ. pres.* déchoie, déchoie; déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient. *Imperf.* déchusse.

[This defective verb is supplied by *Baisser* and *Décliner*.]

DÉCLORE, *to uncloze, to open*. *No Gerund.* *Part.* déclos. (*defective*.) *IND. pres.* je déclos, déclos, décloît; (*no plural*.) *Fut.* décloirai. *Condit.* décloirais. (*no other tenses*.)

[*Ouvrir* supplies it.]

DÉCONFI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -s, *to discomft.* Like *confre*.

DÉCOU-DRE, -sant, -su, *to unsew*. Like *coudre*.

DÉCOUV-RIR, -rant, -ert,—re, -ris, to discover. Like *ouvrir*.
DÉCRI-RE, -vant, -t,—s, -vis, to describe. Like *écrire*.
DÉCR-OÎTRE, -oissant, -u,—ois, -us, to decrease. Like *croître*.
SE DÉDIRE, to retract, se dédisant, dédit,—je me dédis, je me dédis.

[Like *dire*, except in the second person plural present indicative, and in the second person plural imperative: we say, *dédisez*, instead of *dédites*.]

DÉDUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, to deduct. Like *conduire*.
DÉFAILLIR, to decay; (defective.) Part. *defailli*. Present. (no singular.) nous *défaillons*, vous *défailliez*, ils *défaillent*. Impf. je *défaillais*. Perf. def. je *défaillis*. Perf. indef. j'ai *défailli*.

[*Décliner* and *tomber en défaillance* supply the tenses wanting.]

DÉF-AIRE, -aisant, -ait,—ais, -is, to undo. Like *faire*.

[Never write with Chambaud and a few others, nous *dé faisons*, je *dé faisais*, &c. See note on *Contrefaire*.]

DÉJOI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to disjoin. Like *joindre*.

DÉMEN-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to give the lie. Like *sentir*.

SE DÉM-ETTRE, -ettant, -is,—ets, -is, to resign. Like *mettre*.

DÉMOUVOIR, to make one desist from his pretensions.

[This law term has only the present of the infinitive in use.

Débouter might supply the rest.]

DÉPAR-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to distribute. Like *partir*.

SE DÉPAR-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to desist. Like *partir*.

DÉPL-AIRE, -aisant, -u,—ais, -us, to displease. Like *plaire*.

DÉPOURVOIR, to leave unprovided.

[This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive, participle *dépourvu*, and the compound tenses.]

DÉSAPP-RENDRE, -enant, -is,—ends, -is, to unlearn. Like *prendre*.

DESSER-VIR, -vant, -vi—s, -vis, to take away. Like *servir*.

DÉTÉI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to discolour. Like *peindre*.

DÉT-ENIR, -enant, -enu—iens, -ins, to detain. Like *tenir*.

DÉTRUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, to destroy. Like *conduire*.

DEV-ENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, -ins, to become. Like *venir*.

SE DÉVÊT-IR, -ant, -u,—s, -is, to undress. Like *vêtir*.

[Except in a few sentences, *ôter* or *se deshabiller* are to be preferred.]

DIRE, to say. Gerund. *disant*. Part. dit. IND. pres. je *dis*, *dis*, *dit*; *disons*, *dites*, *disent*. Imperf. je *disais*. Perf. def. je *dis*. Fut. je *dirai*. Condit. je *dirais*. IMPER. *dis*, *dise*; *disons*, *dites*, *disent*. SUBJ. pres. *dise*. Impf. *disse*.

DISCONV-ENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, *to disagree*. Like *venir*.

DISCOUR-IR, -ant, -u, -s, -us, *to discourse*. Like *courir*.

DISJOI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt, -ns, -gnis, *to disjoint*. Like *joindre*.

[This verb is said of material objects only.]

DISPAR-ÂTRE, -aissant, -u, -ais, -us, *to disappear*. Like *connaître*.

DISSOUDRE, *to dissolve*; (*defective*.) *Gerund.* dissolvant. *Part.* dissous, *m.* dissoute, *f.* *IND. pres.* je diss-ous, -ous, -out; dissolv-ous, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je dissolvais. (*no perfect definite*.) *Fut.* je dissoudrai. *Condit.* je dissoudrais. *IMPER.* dissous, dissolve; dissolv-ous, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* dissolve. (*no imperfect*.)

[*Fonder* and *Annuler* may supply it.]

DISTRAIRE, *to divert, to take from*. (*defective*.) *distrayant*, *distr-ait*, je *distr-ais*. (*no perf. def.*) Like *traire*.

[This verb is seldom used on account of the harshness of some of its tenses: in the sense of *to divert, dissipate* and *donner des distractions* may supply it; but when it means *to take from, enlever* is generally used. See note on *Abstraire*.]

DORMIR, *to sleep*. *Gerund.* dormant. *Part.* dormi. *IND. pres.* je dors, dors, dort; dorm-ous, -ez, -ent. *Imperf.* je dormais. *Perf. def.* je dormis. *Fut.* je dormirai. *Condit.* je dormirais. *IMPER.* dors, dorme; dorm-ous, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* dorme. *Impf.* dormisse.

DUIRE, *to please*. (*obsolete*.)

[This old word is still used in burlesque poetry, and in the third person singular present indicative, *Cela vous duit-il? does that please you?*]

S'ÉBATTRE, *to sport*; (*defective*.)

[This verb is growing obsolete, but is still used in the present of the infinitive. *Se divertir* or *se réjouir* supplies it.]

ÉBOUILLIR, *to boil away*; (*defective*.)

[Seldom used but in the infinitive and participle *ébullir*. Like *bouillir*.]

ÉCHOIR, *to be out*; (*defective*.) *Gerund.* échéant. *Part.* échu. *IND. pres.* il échoit, or il échot. (*no imperfect*.) *Perf. def.* j'échus. *Fut.* j'écherrai. *Condit.* j'écherrais. *Impf. SUBJ.* j'échusse.

[Its compound tenses are formed with *Etre*.]

ÉCLORE, *to blow, to hatch*; (*defective*.) *No Gerund. Part.* éclos. *IND. pres.* il éclôt; ils éclosent. (*no imperfect nor perfect definite*.) *Perf. indef.* il est éclos. *Fut.* il éclora. *Condit.* il éclorait. *SUBJ. pres.* qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent.

[No other tenses or persons: *s'ouvrir* and *paraître* supply it.]
ÉCONDUIRE, -ant, -t, -s, -is, to shift off. Like *conduire*.

ÉCRIRE, to write. Gerund. *écrivant*. Part. *écrit*. IND.
pres. j'écris, -is, -it; écriv-ons, -ez, -ent. Impf. j'écrivais.
Perf. def. j'écrivis. Fut. j'écrirai. Condit. j'écrirais. IMP.
écris, écriv-e; -ons, -ez, -ent. SUBJ. pres. j'écrive. Impf.
j'écrivisse.

ÉLIRE, -isant, -u, -is, -us, to elect. Like *lire*.

S'EMBOIRE, to imbibe. (Term of Painting.)

[This verb is seldom used: *s'imbiber* supplies it.]

ÉMOUDRE, -lant, -lu, -ds, -lus, to grind. (razors, knives, &c.)
 Like *moudre*.

ÉMOUVOIR, to move, to stir up. Like *mouvoir*.

[This verb is seldom used, except in the present of the infinitive, the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the compound tenses.]

EMPLOYER. (See 198. p. 136.)

EMPREINDRE, -gnant, -nt, -ns, -gnis, to imprint. Like
peindre.

ENCERNDRE, -gnant, -nt, -ns, -gnis. Like *peindre*.

ENCLORE, to inclose. (defective.) No Gerund. Part. *enclos*.

IND. *pres. j'enclos, enclos, encloît. Fut. j'encloirai. Condit.*
j'encloirai. No other tenses.

[*Entourer* and *Renfermer* supply it.]

ENCOURIR, -ant, -u, -s, -us, to incur. Like *courir*.

ENDORMIR, -mant, -mi, -s, -mis, to lull asleep. Like *dormir*.

S'ENDORMIR, -mant, -mi, -s, -mis, to fall asleep. Like *dormir*.

ENDULRE, -ant, -t, -s, -ais, to plaister. Like *conduire*.

ENFREINDRE, -gnant, -nt, -ns, -gnis, to infringe. Like *peindre*.

S'ENFUIR, to run away. Like *fuir*. *S'enfuyant, enfui, je m'enfuis, je m'enfuis.*

[Though the perfect indicative and imperfect subjunctive are to be found in the Dictionary of the French Academy, yet it is better to supply them by *prendre la fuite*, as *je pris la fuite, que je prisse la fuite*.]

ENJOINDRE, -gnant, -nt, -ns, -gnis, to enjoin. Like *joindre*.

S'ENQUÉRIR, to inquire. Like *acquérir*.

[Seldom used but in the infinitive; *s'informer* may supply it.]

S'ENSUIVRE, to follow from hence. (impersonal.)

[The compound tenses are seldom used. This verb may also be used in the third person plural, *Voyez les erreurs qui s'ensuivraient de cette proposition*.—ACAD.]

S'ENTREMETTRE, *ettant, -is, -ets, -is, to intermeddle*. Like *mettre*.

ENTR'OUV-RIR, -rant, -ert, —re, -ris, to open a little. Like *ouvrir*.
ENTREPR-ENDRE, -enant, -is, —ends, -is, to undertake. Like *prendre*.

ENTRET-ENIR, -enant, -enu, —iens, -ins, to keep up. Like *tenir*.
ENTREV-OIR, -oyant, -u, —ois, -is, to see a little. Like *voir*.

ENVOYER. (See p 136.)

EPREI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt, —ns, -gnis, to squeeze out. Like *peindre*.
S'EPRENDRE, to be smitten.

[Seldom used but in the part. *épris*, with the auxiliary *être*.]

EQUIVA-LOIR, -lant, -lu, —ux, -lus, to be of equal value. Like *valoir*.

ETEI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt, —ns, -gnis, to put out. Like *peindre*.
ETRE has been conjugated.

ETREI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt, —ns, -gnis, to bind fast. Like *peindre*.
EXCL-URE, -uant, -u, —us, -us, to exclude. Like *conclure*.

EXTRAIRE, to extract. Like *traire*.

[This verb may be supplied by *faire un extrait*, or *dépouiller*.

See note on *Abstraire*.]

FAILLIR, to fail. (*defective*.)

[The French Academy gives all the tenses in the indicative, observing at the same time, that they are of little use; in fact this verb is seldom used except in the present infinitive and in the perfect definite or indefinite, *je faillis, j'ai failli*, &c.

FALLOIR, to be necessary, to be needful, (*impersonal*), has been conjugated, p. 132.

FAIRE, to make, or to do. Gerund. *faisant*. Part. fait.
 IND. *pres.* je fais, fais, fait; faisons, faites, font. *Imperf.* je faisais. *Perf. def.* je fis. *Fut.* je ferai. *Condit.* je ferais.
 IMP. fais, fasse; faisons, faites, fassent. SUBJ. *pres.* que je fasse. *Impf.* que je fisse.

FEI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt, —ns, -guis, to feign. Like *peindre*.

FLEURIR, to blossom.

[This verb is conjugated like *Punir*, but speaking of arts, sciences, and empires, it means to flourish, and then its gerund is *florissant*. *Impf. indic.* je florissais, &c.: the other tenses are regular.]

FORCLORE, to debar. Part. *forclos*. No other tense. (Term of Law.)

FORFAIRE, to trespass. Part. *forfait*. No other tense. (Term of Law.)

FRIRE, to fry. (*defective*.) IND. *pres.* je fris, tu fris, il frit;
 To supply the other persons we say—*nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, il font frire*.

[All the other tenses and persons are supplied with *faire* and the infinitive *frir*.]

FUIR, to run away, or to shun, to avoid. *Gerund.* fuyant. *Part.* fui. *IND. pres.* je fu-is, -s, -t; fuy-ons, -ez, fuient. *Impf.* je fuyais. *Perf. def.* je fuis. *Fut.* je fuirai. *Condit.* je fuirais. *IMP.* fuis, fuie; fuy-ons, -ez, fuient. *SUBJ. pres.* que je fuie. *Impf.* que je fusse.

[*Fuir* is both active and neuter; in both cases the perfect definite and imperfect subjunctive are seldom used. When the verb is neuter, *I ran away* is better translated by *je pris la fuite*; and when used as an active verb, *I shunned*, *I avoided*, is rendered by *j'évitai*.]

[The present of the subjunctive is very little used, *que je prenne la fuite* supplies it.]

GÉSIR, to lie, is obsolete except in the following tenses; *gisant*, *git*, *nous gisons*, *ils gisent*, *ils gisait*: ex. *ci git*, here lies; *le tout git en cela*, the whole business lies in that point.

HAÏR, to hate.

[The only irregularity of this verb is in the singular of the present of the indicative, and the second person singular of the imperative. *Pres.* je hais, tu hais, il hait. The diphthong *ai* has then the sound of *e* with a grave accent.—The perfect definite is not used.]

HONNIR, to dishonour, is obsolete, and only said ludicrously in the participle *honnai*.

INDUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, to induce. Like *conduire*.

INSCRI-RE, -vant, -t,—s, -vis, to inscribe. Like *écrire*.

INSTRUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, to instruct. Like *conduire*.

INTERDI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -s, to interdict.

[This verb is conjugated like *dire*, but in the second person present indicative and imperative, it makes *interdices*.]

INTERROMP-RE, -ant, -u,—s, -is, to interrupt. Like *rompre*.

INTERVENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, -ins, to intervene. Like *venir*.

INTRODUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, to introduce. Like *conduire*.

ISSIR, to be born, is used in the participle *issu* only; *Issu d'une famille ancienne*, descended from an ancient family.

JOINDRE, to join. *Gerund.* joignant. *Part.* joint. *IND. pres.* je joins; joign-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je joignais. *Perf. def.* je joignis. *Fut.* je joindrai. *Condit.* je joindrais. *IMP.* joins, joigne; joign-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* joigne. *Impf.* joignisse.

JUGER. (See 195.)

LIRE, to read. *Gerund.* lisant. *Part.* lu. *IND. pres.* je lis,

lis, lit; **lis-ons**, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je lisais. *Perf. def.* je lus. *Fut.* je lirai. *Condit.* je lirais. **IMPER.** lis, lise; **lis-ons**, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** lise. *Impf.* lusse.

LUIRE, to shine; (*defective.*) *Gerund.* luisant. *Part.* lui. (*no feminine participle.*) **IND. pres.** je lu-is, -is, -it; **luis-ons**, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je luisais. *Fut.* je luirai. *Condit.* je luirais. **SUBJ.** luisse.

MAINT-ENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to maintain. Like *tenir*.

MAUDIRE, to curse. *Gerund.* maudissant. *Part.* maudis. **IND. pres.** je maud-is, -is, -it; **maudiss-ons**, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* maudissais. *Perf. def.* je maudis. *Fut.* maudirai. *Condit.* maudirais. **IMPER.** maud-is, -isse; **maudiss-ons**, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** maudisse. *Impf.* maudisse.

MÉDIRE, -sant, -t, -s, -s, to slander.

[Like *dire*, but in the second person plural indicative and second person plural imperative, it makes *médises*, instead of *médites*.]

MEN-TIR, -tant, -ti, -s, -tis, to lie. Like *sentir*.

SE MÉPR-ENDRE, -enant, -is, -ends, -is, to mistake. Like *prendre*.

MÉSOF-FRIR, -rant, -ert, -re, -ris, to underbid. Like *offrir*. (*seldom used.*)

METTRE, to put. *Gerund.* mettant. *Part.* mis. **IND. pres.** je mets, mets, met; **mett-ons**, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je mettais. *Perf. def.* je mis. *Fut.* je mettrai. *Condit.* je mettrais. **IMPER.** mets, mette; **mett-ons**, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** mette. *Impf.* misse.

MOUDRE, to grind. *Gerund.* moulant. *Part.* moulu. **IND. pres.** mouds, mouds, moud; **moul-ons**, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* moulais. *Perf. def.* moulus. *Fut.* moudrai. *Condit.* moudrais. **IMPER.** mouds, moule; **moul-ons**, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** moule. *Impf.* moulusse.

MOURIR, to die. *Gerund.* mourant. *Part.* mort. **IND. pres.** je meurs, meurs, meurt; **mour-ons**, -ez, meurent. *Impf.* mourais. *Perf. def.* mourus. *Fut.* mourrai. *Condit.* mourrais. **IMPER.** meurs, meure, **mour-ons**, -ez, meurent. **SUBJ. pres.** meure. *Impf.* mourusse.

[The double *r* in the future and conditional must be sounded strongly.]

MOUVOIR, to move. *Gerund.* mouvant. *Part.* mu. **IND. pres.** je meus, meus, meut; **mouv-ons**, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* mouvais. *Perf. def.* mus. *Fut.* mouvrai. *Cond.* mouvrais. **IMP.**

meus, meuve; mouv-ons, -ez, meuvent. **SUBJ. pres.** meuve. **Impf.** musse.

NAÎTRE, to be born. **Gerund.** naissant. **Part. né.** **INDIC. pres.** je nais, nais, naît; naiss-ons, -ez, -ent. **Impf.** naissais. **Perf. def.** naquis. **Fut.** naîtrai. **Condit.** naîtrais. **IMPER.** nais, naisse; naiss-ons, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** naisse. **Impf.** naquisse.

[This verb forms its compound tenses with *être*.]

NUIRE, to hurt, nuisant, nui; je nuis, je nuisis: the rest like *conduire*.

OBT-ENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, -ins, to obtain. Like *tenir*.
OCCIRE, to kill; (*obsolete*.)

[Used only in burlesque poetry.]

OFF-RIR, -rant, -ert,—re, -ris, to offer. Like *ouvrir*.

OM-ETTRE, -ettant, -is,—ets, -is, to omit. Like *mettre*.

OUÏR, to hear; (*defective*.)

[Only used in the infinitive, in the participle *ouï*, in the perfect definite singular, *j'ouïs*, *tu ouïs*, *il ouït*; and in the imperfect subjunctive, *j'ouïsse*, &c.: its chief use is in the compound tenses followed by *dire*, as *je l'ai ouï dire*; *entendre* supplies *ouïr*.]

OUVRIR, to open. **Gerund.** ouvrant. **Part. ouvert.** **INDIC. pres.** j'ouvre; ouvr-ons, -ez, -ent. **Impf.** j'ouvrais. **Perf. def.** j'ouvris. **Fut.** j'ouvrirai. **Condit.** j'ouvrirais. **IMPER.** ouvre, ouvre; ouvr-ons, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** ouvre. **Impf.** ouvrisse.

PAÎTRE, to graze, to feed; (*defective*.) **Gerund.** paissant. **Part. pu.** **IND. pres.** je pais, pais, paît; paiss-ons, -ez, -ent. **Impf.** je paissais. (*no perfect definite*.) **Fut.** je paîtrai. **Cond.** je paîtrais. **IMPER.** pais, paise; paiss-ons, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** paise. (*no imperf.*)

[*Manger* and *Nourrir* supply the deficient tenses.]

PARCOUR-IR, -ant, -u—s, -us, to run over. Like *courir*.

PARFAIRE, to complete; (*obsolete*.)

PAR-AÎTRE, -aissant, -u,—ais, -us, to appear. Like *connaître*.

PARTIR, to set out. **Gerund.** partant. **Part. parti.** **IND. pres.** je pars, pars, part; part-ons, -ez, -ent. **Impf.** partais. **Perf. def.** partis. **Fut.** partirai. **Condit.** partirais. **IMPER.** pars, part-e; -ons, -ez, -ent. **SUBJ. pres.** parte. **Imperf.** partisso.

[This verb is conjugated with *être*.]

PARY-ENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, ins, to *attain*. Like *venir*.

[This verb takes *être* for its compound tenses.]

PAYER. See 198, p. 136.

PEINDRE, to *paint*. *Gerund.* peignant. *Part. peint.* IND. *pres.* je peins, peins, peint; peign-*ons*, -ez, -ent. *Imperf.* je peignais. *Perf. def.* je peignis. *Fut.* je peindrai. *Condit.* je peindrais. IMP. peins, peigne; peign-*ons*, -ez, -ent. SUBJ. *pres.* peigne. *Impf.* peignisse.

PERM-ETTRE, -ettant, -is,—ets, -is, to *permit*. Like *mettre*.

PLAI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to *pity*. Like *peindre*.

PLAIRE, to *please*. *Gerund.* plaisant. *Part. plu.* IND. *pres.* je plais, plais, plait; plais-*ons*, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je plaisais. *Perf. def.* je plus. *Fut.* je plairai. *Condit.* je plairais. IMP. plais, plaise; plais-*ons*, -ez, -ent. SUBJ. *pres.* plaise. *Impf.* plussae.

PLEUVOIR, to *rain*, has been conjugated at page 129.

POINDRE, to *dawn*. (*defective and obsolete.*)

PORTRAIRE, to *draw*, to *pourtray*. (*obsolete.*)

POURSUI-VRE, -vant, -vi,—s, -vis, to *pursue*. Like *suivre*.

POURVOIR, to *provide*. *Gerund.* pourvoyant. *Part. pourvu.* IND. *pres.* je pourv-*ois*, -ois, -oit; pourvoy-*ons*, -ez, pourv-*oient*. *Impf.* je pourvoyais. *Perf. def.* je pourvus. *Fut.* je pourvoirai. *Condit.* je pourvoirais. IMP. pourvois, pourvoie; pourvoy-*ons*, -ez, pourvoient. SUBJ. *pres.* pourvei-*e*, -es, -e; pourvoy-*ions*, -iez, pourvoient. *Impf.* pourvusse.

POUVOIR, to *be able*. *Gerund.* pouvant. *Part. pu.* IND. *pres.* Je puis or peux, peux, peut; pouv-*ons*, -ez, peuvent. *Impf.* pouvais. *Perf. def.* je pus. *Fut.* je pourrai. *Condit.* je pourrais. (*no imperative.*) SUBJ. *pres.* puisse. *Impf.* pusse.

[In poetry and in common conversation, *je peux* is sometimes used; but *je puis* ought to be preferred. Interrogatively, we do not say *peux-je*, but *puis-je?*]

PRÉDIRE, to *foretell*.

[This verb is conjugated like *dire*, but in the second person plural indicative and second person plural imperative, it makes *prédisez* instead of *prédites*.]

PRENDRE, to *take*. *Gerund.* prenant. *Part. pris.* IND. *pres.* je prends, prends, prend; pren-*ons*, -ez, prennent. *Impf.* je prenais. *Perf. def.* je pris. *Fut.* je prendrai. *Condit.* je prendrais. IMP. prends, prenne; pren-*ons*, prenez, prennent. SUBJ. *pres.* prenne. *Impf.* prisse.

PRESCRI-RE, -vant, -t,—s, -vis, to *prescribe*. Like *écrire*.

PRESSEN-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to *foresee*. Like *sensir*.

PRÉVA-LOIR, -lant, -lu,—ux, -lus, to *prevail*. Like *valoir*.

[The present subjunctive makes *prévale* and not *prévaille*.]

PRÉV-ENIR, -enant, -enu—iens, -ins, to *prevent*. Like *venir*.

PRÉVOIR, to *foresee*. Gerund. *prévoyant*. Part. *prévu*.

IND. *pres.* je *prév-ois*, -ois, -oit; *prévoy-ons*, -ez, *prévoient*.

Impf. je *prévoyais*. Perf. *def.* je *prévis*. Fut. je *prévoirai*.

Condit. je *prévoirais*. IMP. *prévoi-s*, -e; *prévoy-ons*, -ez,

prévoient. SUBJ. *pres.* *prévoie*. Impf. *prévisse*.

PRIER. See 197, p. 135.

PRODUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, to *produce*. Like *conduire*.

PROM-ETTRE, -ettant, -is,—ets, -is, to *promise*. Like *mettre*.

PROMOUVOIR, to *promote*. (*defective*.)

[This verb is seldom used except in the infinitive, and in the compound tenses—as, *il a été promu*, he has been promoted:—*avancer* supplies the rest.]

PROSCRI-RE, -vant, -t,—s, -vis, to *proscribe*. Like *écrire*.

PROV-ENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, -ins, to *proceed*. Like *venir*.

PUER, to *stink*. (*defective*.)

[This verb is now regular, but has only the present of the infinitive, the present indicative, the imperfect, the future and conditional. It is better to supply it by *sentir mauvais*, or *avoir mauvaise odeur*.]

QUERIR, to *bring*, to *fetch*. (*defective*.)

[This verb is only used in the infinitive, with the verbs *aller*, *venir*, and *envoyer*. It is confined to familiar conversation.]

RABAT-TRE, -tant, -tu,—s, -tis, to *abate*. Like *battre*.

RATTEI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to *overtake*. Like *teindre*.

RAVOIR, to *have again*. (*defective*.)

[This verb has only the present of the infinitive.]

REBAT-TRE, -tant, -tu,—s, -tis, to *beat again*. Like *battre*.

RECLURE, to *shut up*. (*defective*.)

[It is only used in the present of the infinitive and the compound tenses; as, *il est reclus dans sa maison*, he is shut up in his own house.]

RECONDUI-RE, -sant, -t,—s, -sis, to *lead back*. Like *conduire*.

REL-IRE, -isant, -a,—is, -us, to *read again*. Like *lire*.

RELUIRE, to *shine*. (*defective*.) Reluisant, relui—je reluis, (no perf. *def.* nor *impf.* Subj.) The rest like *luire*.

REM-ETTRE, -ettant, -is,—ets, -is, to *put again*. Like *mettre*.

REMOU-DRE, -lant, -lu,—ds, -lus, to *grind again*. Like *moudre*.

REN-AÎTRE, -aissant, to *be born again*.

[This verb has no participle and therefore no compound tenses. The rest is conjugated like *naître*.]

SE RENDOR-MIR, -mant, -mi,—a, -mis, to fall asleep again. Like *dormir*.

RENTRAIRE, to darn. Like *traire*. Rentrayant, rentrait,—je rentrais. (no perf. def. nor impf. Subj.) See note on *abstraire*.

RENOYER, to send back. See 198, p. 136.

REP-ÂTRE, -aissant, -u,—ais, to feed. Like *pâtre*.

REPAR-ÂTRE, -aissant, -u,—ais, -us, to appear again. Like *connaître*.

REPAR-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to set out again, to reply. Like *partir*.

[When this verb signifies to share, to divide, to distribute, the first *e* is accented, (*répartir*.) It is then regular, and conjugated like *pouvoir*.]

SE REPEN-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to repent. Like *sentir*.

REPR-ENDRE, -enant, -is,—ends, -is, to take back, to blame. Like *prendre*.

REQU-ÉRIR, -érant, -is,—iers, -is, to require. Like *acquérir*.

RÉSoudre, to resolve. Gerund. résolvant. Part. résolu. IND. pres. je résous, -ous, -out; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent. Impf. je résolvais. Perf. def. je résolu. Fut. je résoudrai. Cond. je résoudrais. IMP. résous, résolve; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent. SUBJ. pres. je résolve. Impf. résolusse.

[When *résoudre* signifies to change a thing into another, its participle is *résous*, and it has no feminine.]

RESSEN-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to resent. Like *sentir*.

RESSOR-TIR, -tant, -ti,—s, -tis, to go out again. Like *sortir*.

[In the sense of to belong to, to depend on a court of justice, *ressortir* is conjugated like *pouvoir*.]

SE RESSOUV-ENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, -ins, to recollect. Like *venir*.

RESTRAI-NDRE, -gnant, -nt,—ns, -gnis, to restrain, to limit. Like *peindre*.

RET-ENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, -ins, to retain. Like *tenir*.

RETRA-IRE, -yant, -it,—is, to redeem. (defective.) Like *traire*.

[See note on *abstraire*:—*retirer* supplies it.]

REVA-LOIR, -lant, -lu,—ux, -lus, to be even with one. Like *valoir*.

REV-ENIR, -enant, -enu,—iens, -ins, to come back. Like *venir*.

REVÊ-TIR, -tant, tu,—ts, -tis, to invest with. Like *vêtir*.

[*Se revêtir de*, to put on, is conjugated like the preceding, but it is generally better to use the verb *mettre*.]

REV-IVRE, -ivant, -écu,—is, -écus, to revive. Like *vivre*.

REV-OIR, -oyant, -u,—ois, -is, to see again. Like *voir*.

RIRE, to laugh. Gerund. riant. Part. ri. IND. pres. je ris,

ris, rit ; rions, riez, rient. *Impf.* je riais. *Perf. def.* je ris. *Fut.* je rirai. *Cond.* je rirais. *IMP.* ris, rie ; rions, riez, rient. *SUBJ. pres.* rie. *Impf.* risse.

ROMPRE, to break. *Gerund.* rompant. *Part.* rompu. *IND. pres.* je romps, romps, rompt ; romp-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* rompais. *Perf. def.* rompis. *Fut.* romprai. *Cond.* romprais. *IMP.* romps, rompe ; romp-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* rompe. *Impf.* rompisse.

ROUV-RIR, -rant, -ert, —re, -ris, to open again. Like *couvrir*.

SAILLIR, to jut out. (defective.)

[The tenses used are, the present of the infinitive, the gerund *saillant*, and the third persons of the following tenses : *IND. pres.* il saille ; ils saillent. *Impf.* il saillait ; ils saillaient. *Fut.* il saillera ; ils sailleront. *Cond.* il saillera ; ils sailleraient. *Saillir, to gush out*, is regularly conjugated like *punir*, but has only the third persons.]

SATISF-AIRE, -aisant, -ait, —ais, -is, to satisfy. Like *faire*.

SAVOIR, to know. *Gerund.* sachant. *Part.* su. *IND. pres.* je sais, sais, sait ; savons, savez, savent. *Impf.* je savais. *Perf. def.* je sus. *Fut.* je saurai. *Cond.* je saurais. *IMP.* sache, sache ; sach-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* sache. *Impf.* susse.

[*Je ne saurais* is very often used for *je ne puis*, yet we cannot say, *je ne saurais* for *je ne pourrais*, nor *je saurais* for *je puis*.]

SECOUR-IR, -ant, -u, —s, -us, to succour. Like *courir*.

SÉDUI-RE, -sant, -t, —s, -sis, to seduce. Like *conduire*.

SENTIR, to feel. *Gerund.* sentant. *Part.* senti. *IND. pres.* je sens, sens, sent ; sent-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je sentais. *Perf. def.* je sentis. *Fut.* je sentirai. *Cond.* je sentirais. *IMP.* sens, sente ; sent-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* sente. *Impf.* sentisse.

SÊOIR, to become, to fit well. (defective.) *Gerund.* séyant. *IND. pres.* il sied ; ils siéent. *Impf.* il séyait ; ils séyaient. *Fut.* il siéra ; ils siéront. *Condit.* ils siérait ; ils siéraient. No other tenses or persons. *Aller bien, convenir*, may supply it.

[When *seoir* means to sit, it has only the gerund *séant* and the participle *sis*, which last is translated into English by *situated*. *Etre situé* supplies it.]

SERVIR, to serve. *Gerund.* servant. *Part.* servi. *IND. pres.* je sers, sers, sert ; serv-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* servais. *Perf. def.* servis. *Fut.* servirai. *Cond.* servirais. *IMP.* sers, serve ; serv-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* serve. *Impf.* servisse.

SORTIR, to go out. *Gerund.* sortant. *Part.* sorti. *IND. pres.* je sors, sors, sort; sort-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* sortais. *Perf. def.* je sortis. *Fut.* je sortirai. *Cond.* je sortirais. *IMP.* sors, sorte; sort-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* sorte. *Impf.* sortisse.

SOUDRE, to solve or resolve; (now obsolete.) *Résoudre* supplies it. **SOURDRE**, to spring out. (defective.)

[It has only the present of the infinitive, and the third persons of the present indicative, *sourd*, *sourdent*; as, *l'eau sourd de la terre*, the water springs out of the earth. *Sortir* may supply it.]

SOUFFRIR, -rant, -ert, -re, -ris, to suffer. Like *ouvrir*.

SOUUMETTRE, -ettant, -is, -ets, -is, to submit. Like *mettre*.

SOURIR, -iant, -i, -is, -is, to smile. Like *rire*.

SOUSCRIRE, -vant, -t, -s, -vis, to subscribe. Like *écrire*.

SOUSTRAIRE, -yant, -it, -is, to subtract. Like *traire*.

[See note on *abstraire*. *Oter* supplies it.]

SOUTENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to support. Like *tenir*.

SE SOUVENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to remember. Like *venir*.

SUBVENIR, -enant, -enu, -iens, -ins, to subvene. Like *venir*.

SUFFIRE, to suffice. *Gerund.* suffisant. *Part.* suffi. *IND. pres.* je suffis, -is, -it; suffis-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je suffisais. *Perf. def.* je suffis. *Fut.* je suffirai. *Cond.* je suffirais. *IMP.* suffis, -ise; suffis-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* suffise. *Impf.* suffisse.

[This verb is generally used as an impersonal, and signifies to be sufficient; as, *il suffit*, it is sufficient, it is enough, &c. It has been conjugated as such, page 133.]

SUIVRE, to follow. *Gerund.* suivant. *Part.* suivi. *IND. pres.* je suis, suis, suit; suiv-ons, -ez, -ent. *Impf.* je suivais. *Perf. def.* je suivis. *Fut.* je suivrai. *Cond.* je suivrais. *IMP.* suis, suive; suiv-ons, -ez, -ent. *SUBJ. pres.* suive. *Impf.* suivisse.

SURF-AIRE, -aisant, -ait, -ais, -is, to exact. Like *faire*.

SURPRENDRE, -enant, -is, -ends, -is, to surprise. Like *prendre*.

SURSEoir, to supersede, to put off. A law term only used in the following tenses: *Gerund.* sursoyant. *Part.* sursis. *IND. pres.* je sursois, -ois, -oit; sursoyons, sursoyez, sursoient. *Impf.* je sursoyais. *Perf. def.* je sursis. *Fut.* sursoirai. *Cond.* sursoirais. *SUBJ. Impf.* sursisse.

[*Suspendre*, *remettre*, *différer*, may supply it.]

SURVENIR, to come unexpectedly. Like *venir*.

SURVIVRE, -ivant, -écu, -is, -écus, to survive. Like *vivre*.

T-AIRE, -aisant, -u, -ais, -us, to conceal. Like *plaire*.

SE TAIRE, to be silent. Like *plaire*.

TEINDRE, -gnant, -nt, -us, -gnis, to dye. Like *peindre*.

TENIR, to hold. *Gerund.* tenant. *Part.* tenu. *IND. pres.* je tiens, tiens, tient; ten-*ons*, -*ez*, tiennent. *Impf.* je tenais. *Perf. def.* je tins. *Fut.* je tiendrai. *Condit.* je tiendrais. *IMP.* tiens, tienne; tenons, tenez, tiennent. *SUBJ. pres.* tienne. *Impf.* tinsse.

TISTRE, to weave. (*obsolete.*)

[It has for its *Part.* tissu; which is likewise the *Part.* of *tisser.*]

TRADUI-RE, -sant, -t, —is, -sis, to translate. Like *conduire*.

TRAIRE, to milk. *Gerund.* trayant. *Part.* trait. *IND. pres.* je traie, traie, trait; tray-*ons*, -*ez*, traient. *Impf.* je trayais. (*no perf. def.*) *Fut.* je trairai. *Cond.* je trairais. *IMP.* traie, traie; tray-*ons*, -*ez*, traient. *SUBJ. pres.* traie. (*no impf.*)

[The tenses wanting are supplied by *tirer.*]

TRANSCRI-RE, -vant, -t, —s, -vis, to transcribe. Like *écrire*.

TRESSAILLIR, to start. *Gerund.* tressaillant. *Part.* tressailli. *IND. pres.* je tressaill-*e*, -*es*, -*e*; tressaill-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*. *Impf.* je tressaillais. *Perf. def.* je tressaillis. *Fut.* je tressaillerai. *Cond.* je tressaillerais. *IMP.* tressaill-*e*, -*e*; tressaill-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*. *SUBJ. pres.* tressaill-*e*, -*es*, -*e*; tressaill-*ions*, -*iez*, tressaillent. *Impf.* tressaillisse.

VAINCRE, to vanquish. *Gerund.* vainquant. *Part.* vaincu. *IND. pres.* je vaincs, vaincs, vainc; vainqu-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*. *Impf.* je vainquais. *Perf. def.* je vainquis. *Fut.* je vaincrai. *Cond.* je vaincrais. *IMP.* vaincs, vainque; vainqu-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*. *SUBJ. pres.* vainque. *Impf.* vainquisse.

[The present and imperfect Indicative are seldom used. They may be supplied by *je suis victorieux, j'étais victorieux, &c.*]

VALOIR, to be worth. *Gerund.* valant. *Part.* valu. *IND. pres.* je vau*x*, vau*x*, vaut; val-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*. *Impf.* je valais. *Perf. def.* je valus. *Fut.* je vaudrai. *Cond.* je vaudrais. *IMP.* vau*x*, vaille; val-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*. *SUBJ. pres.* vaill-*e*, -*es*, -*e*; valions, valiez, vaillent. *Impf.* valusse.

VENIR, to come. *Gerund.* venant. *Part.* venu. *IND. pres.* je viens, viens, vient; venons, venez, viennent. *Impf.* je venais. *Perf. def.* je vins. *Perf. ind.* je suis venu. *Fut.* je viendrai. *Cond.* je viendrais. *IMP.* viens, vienne; venons, venez, viennent. *SUBJ. pres.* vienne. *Impf.* vinsse.

VÊTIR, to dress. *Gerund.* vêtant. *Part.* vêtu. *IND. pres.* je vêts, vêts, vêt; vêt-*ons*, -*ez*, vêtent. *Impf.* je vêtai*s*. *Perf. def.* je vêtis. *Fut.* je vêtirai. *Cond.* je vêtirais. *IMP.* vêts,

vête ; vêtions, vêtez, vêtent. SUBJ. pres. vête. Impf. vêtisse.
 [The three persons singular Indicative are better supplied
 by *habiller*.]

VIVRE, to live. *Gerund. vivant. Part. vécu. IND. pres. je vis, vis, vit ; vivons, vivez, vivent. Impf. je vivais. Perf. def. je vécus. Fut. je vivrai. Cond. je vivrais. IMP. vis, vive ; vivons, vivez, vivent. SUBJ. pres. vive. Impf. vécusse.*

VOIR, to see. *Gerund. voyant. Part. vu. IND. pres. je vois, vois, voit ; voy-ons, -ez, voient. Impf. je voyais ; nous voyions, voyiez, voyaient. Perf. def. vis. Fut. je verrai. Cond. je verrais. IMP. vois, voie ; voyons, voyez, voient. SUBJ. pres. voie, voies, voie ; voy-ions, -iez, voient. Impf. visse.*

VOULOIR, to be willing. *Gerund. voulant. Part. voulu. IND. pres. je veux, veux, veut ; voul-ons, -ez, veulent. Impf. je voulais. Perf. def. je voulus. Fut. je voudrai. Cond. je voudrais. SUBJ. pres. veuille, -es, -e ; voulions, vouliez, veuillent. Impf. voulusse.*

[The second person plural of the imperative of that verb is used in the sense of *be so good as . . . , be so kind as . . . ; be so good as to lend me your book, veuillez me prêter votre livre.*]

GENERAL EXERCISE

On the Irregular Verbs.

I have consented to the marriage of my son—This house
consentir mariage. m.

belongs to my neighbour—Send for the physician and follow his
*appartenir voisin. m. *envoyer chercher médecin suivre*

advice—I did serve my friends—I shall | set out | for France
avis. m. servir partir pour ; —

next week—He has acquired celebrity by his works—We
prochain semaine. f. acquérir par ouvrage. m.

discover your intention—I did maintain my opinion—I do my
découvrir ——— f. soutenir ——— f. faire

duty; do yours—She fears his anger—I have just put out the
devoir. m. craindre colère. f. éteindre

candle—I do not know that man—I do not know that
chandelle. f. connaître savoir

language—You do not appear in public—We conducted the
langue. f. paraître en public. m. conduire

work—I am going to London—We collected the votes—
ouvrage. m. aller Londres p. recueillir voix. f.

I could not foresee that event—I have not said my lesson—
pouvoir prévoir événement. m. dire leçon. f.

Let us pursue our journey—She has learned two fables—She
poursuivre chemin. m. apprendre deux — f.

will omit this circumstance—Do not follow their example—He
omettre circonstance. f. suivre exemple. m.

will become learned—They will become rich and proud—The
devenir savant fier

parties agreed—We undid the work—Do your exercise—We
p. consentir p. défaire faire thème. m.

do not fear the consequences—He acknowledges the obligation—
craindre — f. reconnaître — f.

She translated that beautiful poem—The enemy will destroy the
p. traduire poëme. m. ennemi. m. pl. détruire

fortress—Alexander conquered a vast empire—Do not gather
forteresse. f. p. conquérir || — m. cueillir

these peaches ; they are not ripe—Let us see your new purchase
mûr voir emplette. f.

See the admirable order of the universe : does it not announce a
annoncer

supreme architect?— | Have the goodness | to read my letter—
architecte vouloir lire

Does he set a great value upon riches?—Philosophy comprehends
mettre prix. m. à f. comprendre

logic, ethica, physica, and mathematics — The Greeks
logique. f. morale. f. physique. f. sing. mathématique Grecs

vanquished the Persians at Marathon, Salamis, Platea, and
vaincre Perses à — à Salamine à Platée

Mycalæ—Do they not exact?—Virgil was born at Mantua—
à — suivre Virgile p. naître à Mantoue

Speak the truth—Have you read that interesting history?—Hope
dire vérité. f. lire intéressant . . . f.

revived in his heart—The arts and sciences will revive under
p. renaître — m. — f. sous

his reign—You will hurt your interests—They have transmitted
règne. m. nuire § intérêt. m. transmettre
 their glory to their posterity—Let us run—Let us learn our
....f.f. courir
 lesson—He could not convince his constituents of the sincerity
pouvoir convaincre ———.f.
 of his intentions—Have you written to your mother?—They pulled
——— f. écrire r. abattre
 down their house—I did omit an essential duty—Let us satisfy
r. omettre essentiel devoir. m. satisfaire
 our masters—We have extracted a beautiful passage from that
extraire ——— m.
 work—I knew that honest family—I knew German and
ouvrage. m. connaître savoir Allemand. m.
 Spanish—He will be obeyed—She moved the heart of that
Espagnol. m. vouloir obéir r. émouvoir
 unfeeling man—His misfortunes proceed from his wickedness—
insensible malheur. m. venir méchanceté. f.
 Did you not displease your benefactor?—You appear dissatisfied.
déplaire § bienfaiteur. m. paraître mécontent
 You know the truth of his evidence—Your behaviour has not
——— f. conduite. f.
 pleased your father—The troops did not restrain the mob—Let
plaire à troupes. f. contenir populace. f.
 us prevent the bad effects of these prejudices—Hold the book—
prévenir préjugé. tenir
 Let them | keep up | their authority—I will | come back | —
maintenirf. revenir
 I have restrained his impetuosity—They relieve the wants of the
retenirf. subvenir § besoin. m.
 poor.
pauvre. pl.

References.

* As the verb *quérir* is become obsolete, *to send for* is now translated by *envoyer chercher*. † The second verb must be in the present of the Infinitive. ‡ Nouns of countries take the article before them. § This verb governs the preposition *à*, see 178 p. 126. || This adjective to precede its substantive.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

212. Personal Pronouns are used for the names of persons or things, and are divided into *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*.

213. The *personal conjunctive* pronouns are so called, because they are immediately united with a verb, either governing it as nominative, or governed by it in the dative or accusative.

214. These pronouns are used without article or preposition, and are thus declined :

First person, masc. & fem.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	I,	<i>je.</i>	we,	<i>nous.</i>
D.	to me,	<i>me.</i>	to us,	<i>nous.</i>
A.	me,	<i>me.</i>	us,	<i>nous.</i>

Second person, masc. & fem.

N.	thou,	<i>tu.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>
D.	to thee,	<i>te.</i>	to you,	<i>vous.</i>
A.	thee,	<i>te.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>

Third person, masc.

N.	he, it,	<i>il.</i>	they,	<i>ils.</i>
D.	to him, to it,	<i>lui.</i>	to them,	<i>leur.</i>
A.	him, it,	<i>le.</i>	them,	<i>les.</i>

Third person, fem.

N.	she, it,	<i>elle.</i>	they,	<i>elles.</i>
D.	to her, to it,	<i>lui.</i>	to them,	<i>leur.</i>
A.	her, it,	<i>la.</i>	them,	<i>les.</i>

215. The preceding pronouns, whether in the dative or accusative, are placed before the verb or its auxiliary. **Ex.**

I see him,	<i>je le vois.</i>
You know her,	<i>vous la connaissez.</i>
He has spoken to them,	<i>il leur a parlé.</i>

EXERCISE.

She assembled the nobles and animated them by her words and
P. assembler — *P. animer (a) par * parole*
 by her example—I have seen them—He rewards them—I give
voir (a) (a)
 you my consent——You will surprise her—We shall relieve
(b) consentement surprise(a) soulager
 them—They were not speaking to me—His conduct displeases
(a) (b) (c) déplaît
 me—They paid him his wages and dismissed him—He will give
(b) P. payer(b) gage P. renvoyer (a)
 me that proof of his friendship—That man pleases me—He
(b) prouve (c) plaît (b)
 knows me—He knows it—Thy flatterers have ruined thee—
connaître(a) savoir (a) flatteur (d) (a)
 We tell him the truth but he will not believe us—The presence
dire (b) vérité vouloir croire (a)
 of her son comforted her—He stopped to speak to them—The
P. consoler (a) P. s'arrêter (e) (b)
 desire of getting money to support a vain expense corrupts the
passion(f) acquiescer (e) soutenir ‡ dépense corrompre
 heart of man—I will punish you if you neglect to do your duty—
(a) si (f)
 My father has a house to let—I have spent my time in reading
(g) louer passer (h) lire
 and writing—Palamedes invented the game of chess to amuse
(h) écrire P. inventer jeu échecs (e)
 his soldiers and (to) teach them the stratagems of war.
(e) apprendre(b) stratagème guerre

References.

(a) Pronoun in the accusative, see 215. (b) Pronoun in the dative, see 215. (c) See 178. (d) The pronouns *me, te, le, and la*, are spelled, *m', t', and l'*, before a vowel or *h* mute.

✎ (e) The preposition *to* coming before an infinitive is expressed in French by *pour* when it means, *in order to*. (f) This verb must be in the Infinitive preceded by *de*.

✎ (g) *To*, before an infinitive is expressed by *à* after verbs, substantives, and adjectives, signifying *inclination, readiness, fitness, &c.*

✎ (h) *In*, before a gerund is translated by *à* with an infinitive.

* The gender of nouns will no longer be given. † This verb is not here an auxiliary and therefore must be rendered by the present of *vouloir*. ‡ This adjective before its substantive.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Acquérir, apprendre, connaître, corrompre, croire, déplaire, dire, écrire, lire, payer, (see 198.) plaire, renvoyer, (see 198.) savoir, surprendre, voir, and vouloir.

Read, translate and parse.

Ma mère a eu la bonté de m'envoyer du raisin. Cette fatale expérience m'apprend mon devoir. Je vous verrai ce soir. Madame B. tâcha de la consoler, et lui promit un bel oiseau.

EXAMINATION.—212. How are personal pronouns divided? 213. Why are they called conjunctive? 214. How are these pronouns declined? 215. What is their place in the sentence? *ref.* ↗ (e) When is the preposition *to* translated into French by *pour* before an infinitive? ↗ (g) When is the same preposition to be rendered by *à* with an infinitive? ↗ (h) When *is* comes before an English gerund, how is it translated into French?

216. When the verb is in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronoun is put after it in French as in English, and *me*, *te*, are changed into *moi*, *toi*.

Speak to them,	<i>parlez-leur.</i>
Write to him,	<i>écrivez-lui.</i>
Answer us,	<i>répondez-nous.</i>
Let us see them,	<i>voyons-les.</i>
Give me,	<i>donnez-moi.</i>

217. But when the verb in the imperative is used with a negation, the personal pronouns retain their

place, that is, precede the verb as in no. 215: ex.

Do not speak to them,	<i>ne leur parlez pas.</i>
Do not write to him,	<i>ne lui écrivez pas.</i>
Do not answer us,	<i>ne nous répondez pas.</i>
Let us not see them,	<i>ne les voyons pas.</i>
Do not give me,	<i>ne me donnez pas.</i>

EXERCISE.

Answer me—Do not answer me—Grant him this favour—
répondre(a) (b) *accorder(a)*
 Lend me a volume of your Roman History—Let us apply
prêter(a) *s'appliquer*
 ourselves to our studies—Take these diamonds and sell them
 (a) *étude* *prendre* *
 Give me leave to represent to you an easy way to preserve
permettre(a) *de* (c) *facile moyen de* *conserver*
 the liberty and honour of your people—Let her | come in |
 *peuple* † § *entrer*
 Do not keep him in suspense—Give us your word that you will
tenir (b) *en suspens* (a) *parole que*
 | give up | her acquaintance—Seek renown and pleasure and
renoncer à *chercher gloire*
 leave me my misery and pain—Relate to me the history of
laisser(a) *douleur* *raconter* (a)
 your misfortunes—Do not lend him your horse—Teach them the
 (b) *enseigner à*
 rules of French versification—Set them at liberty—Do not
Français *mettre(a)* *en*
 confine me—Listen to me—Do not listen to me—Follow me—
renfermer(b) *écouter* (a) (b) *suivre* (a)
 Do not follow me.
 (b)

References.

(a) See 216. (b) See 217. (c) See 215. * When two imperatives are joined by the conjunctions *and*, *or*, the pronouns of the third person, *le*, *la*, *les*, are sometimes placed before the verb: as, *prenez ces pommes et mangez-les*, or, *les mangez*.

† To *preserve*, may be changed into, *of preserving*; in that

and similar cases, the present of the infinitive with *de* before it must be used in French.

✎ † *Let*, in the sense of *to allow, to suffer*, must be rendered by *laisser*, with the next verb in the present of the infinitive.

✎ § *Le, la*, after an imperative, do not lose the *e* or *a* before a word beginning with a vowel.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Mettre, prendre, suivre, and tenir.

Read, translate and parse.

Place-toi près de l'orchestre. Amuse-toi, mon enfant, mais ne t'échauffe pas à courir. Prêtez-lui votre voiture et vos chevaux. Dites-lui que j'attends sa réponse avec impatience. Racontez-moi les aventures de votre voyage à la cour de Vienne.

EXAMINATION.—216. Where is the place of the pronoun personal conjunctive with a verb in the imperative affirmative? What do you observe concerning *me* and *te*? 217. When the imperative is negative, what is the place of the pronoun personal? *ref.* * When two verbs in the imperative are joined by a conjunction, what do you observe with respect to the place of the pronouns personal? *ib.* ✎ § Does the pronoun *le* or *la* suffer elision before a vowel after an imperative?

OF THE PERSONAL DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

218. The disjunctive personal pronouns generally follow the verb, from which they are usually parted by a preposition, which governs them.

Declension of the Personal Disjunctive Pronouns.

First person, masc. & fem.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. & Acc.	I or me,	<i>moi.</i>	we or us,	<i>nous.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from me,	<i>de moi.</i>	of or from us,	<i>de nous.</i>
Dat.	to me,	<i>à moi.</i>	to us,	<i>à nous.</i>

*Second person, masc. & fem.**Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. & Acc.	theu,	toi.	you,	vous.
Gen. & Abl.	of or from thee,	de toi.	of or from you,	de vous.
Dat.	to thee,	à toi.	to you,	à vous.

Third person, masc.

Nom. & Acc.	he, him, or it,	lui.	they or them,	eux.
Gen. & Abl.	of or from him, it,	de lui.	of or from them,	d'eux.
Dat.	to him, or to it,	à lui.	to them,	à eux.

Third person, fem.

Nom. & Acc.	she, her, or it,	elle.	they or them,	elles.
Gen. & Abl.	of or from her, it,	d'elle.	of or from them,	d'elles.
Dat.	to her,	à elle.	to them,	à elles.

219. The personal pronouns are used as disjunctive in French when they are governed by reflexive verbs.

He applied to me,	<i>il s'adressa à moi.</i>
I will complain of you,	<i>je me plaindrai de vous.</i>

220. They are used as disjunctive after the following verbs :

<i>Aller</i> , to go.	<i>penser</i>	} to think.
	<i>songer</i>	
<i>Accourir</i>	} to run to.	<i>venir</i> , to come.
<i>Courir</i>		

[And the following : *marcher*, *voler*, *viser*, *avoir* (in the sense of, to have as one's own), *boire*, *être*, (in the sense of, to be), *faire attention*, *prendre intérêt*, *avoir recours*, *avoir égard*, (in the sense of, to be related,) and after all verbs which require the preposition *à*.]

EXERCISE.

He complains of her—I expect nothing from you—He sends
se plaindre (a) *attendre* (a)
 of them to the minister and they were admitted to a session
 (a) *ministre* p. *admettre*

conference. Was that right?—*Est-ce que c'est ça?*

is due to her. — *C'est à elle que c'est dû.*

you speaking of her? — *Est-ce que vous en parlez?*

Three persons of the same name. — *Trois personnes du même nom.*

— *M. J. est un homme d'affaires.*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

Yes, it is. — *Où il est.*

and we were not thinking of that. — *Et nous ne pensions pas à ça.*

(a) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

(c) *Is this the man? — C'est-il l'homme que vous cherchez?*

ent form

onstantment.
loquemment.

man has given
faire

that easily — Il
aisé(b)

conformably to your
conforme(e)

ies — That barrister

autifully illumina-
superbe(b)

to know the human

er is obstinately at-
obstiné(b)

wounded, and ever
même

y share — We desire
part

sings | in tune | —
juste ‡

dly submit to you
se soumettre

onfidentially that E
confident(d) que

ave any adverbs; th
e word, but an eq
charmante.

ésent, present, (102)

170 OF PERSONAL DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS:

in French. *ref. 27* * In answer to questions, or in elliptical phrases, what are the pronouns in use?

221. When the verb governs, at the same time, a pronoun of the first or second person, in the accusative, and another in the dative, the dative is a disjunctive.

He has introduced me to him, *il m'a présenté à lui.*

222. When two personal pronouns in the dative come after a verb, the second must be a disjunctive.

I forgive both you and him, *{ je vous pardonne et à lui aussi; or better, je pardonne à vous et à lui.*

223. Two pronouns in the dative come after the verb, if they denote opposition.

I speak to him and not to you, *je parle à lui et non à vous.*

224. The preceding pronouns are, in particular cases compounded with the pronoun *self* in English, and *même* in French.

Myself, *moi-même, de moi-même, &c.*
Thyself, *toi-même.*
Ourselves, *nous-mêmes.*

[These compound words indicate the person or thing, in a stronger or more positive manner than the simple pronoun.]

225. The compounds *myself*, *thyself*, &c. are rendered by *moi-même*, *toi-même*, &c. when they come after a verb which is not reflected.

I will write it myself, *je l'écrirai moi-même.*

226. These compound pronouns are also used after those reflected verbs which govern a preposition after them.

She relies on herself, *elle se fie à elle-même.*

[And after a few reflected verbs which do not govern any

preposition after them ; as, they betray themselves, *ils se trahissent eux-mêmes*.—This must be acquired by practice, as proper rules cannot be given.]

227. There is a personal pronoun of the third person singular, used indeterminately ; it is *soi*, *one's self*, *itself*, which is thus declined :

<i>Soi</i> , or	<i>soi-même</i> .
<i>de soi</i> , or	<i>de soi-même</i> .
<i>à soi</i> , or	<i>à soi-même</i> .

228. *Soi* is used whenever it relates to a preceding noun masculine singular, taken in a general or indeterminate sense.

The loadstone attracts iron to itself, *l'aimant attire le fer à soi*.

EXERCISE.

Your father has directed me to them, to borrow money—He
adresser (a) (g) *emprunter*
will do it himself—The wise man is master of himself—Write to
faire (c) *sage* (e)
her first and then to them—I have just received a note from
d'abord ensuite *billet*
Mrs. L.—She sends her compliments both to you and her—That
faire _____ *et* (b) (b)
lady was dear both to you and me—Offer it to him and to them—
dame cher (b) (b) *présenter* (b) (b)
We will recommend you to them—He has been virtuous, but he
recommander (a) *vertueux*
ascribed all his virtue to himself—Water runs of itself—They
rapporter tout (c) *couler* (d)
are angry with him—You will find in me a father and a friend—
contre † *trouver en* †
She will stay with us—You will speak after them.
avec † *après* †

References.

(a) See 221. (b) See 222, and ref. † (next page.) (c) See 225.
(d) See 226 ; and observe that the rule 228 does not apply to feminine
antecedents. (e) See 228. (g) See reference (e) page 164.

✎ * When two pronouns in the dative denote the order in which a thing is done, they are both disjunctive : *Speak to him first, and then to her ; parlez à lui d'abord et ensuite à elle.*

✎ † The personal disjunctive are always used after prepositions.
‡ The sentence in the example 222 may also be translated thus : *je vous pardonne ainsi qu'à elle.*

Read, translate and parse.

Il s'est adressé à moi. Je m'en rapporte à vous et à elle. Donnez à elle et non pas à lui. Ne parlez pas contre lui.

EXAMINATION.—221. When must the pronoun in the dative be a disjunctive in French ? 222. If two dative cases come after a verb, what must be the construction ? 223. What is the place of those pronouns when denoting opposition ? 224. How do you translate the word *self* ? 225. When are the compound pronouns *moi-même, toi-même, &c.* used ? 226. When are they used after reflected verbs ? 227. Decline the indeterminate *soi*. 228. When is *soi* used ? *ref.* ✎ * When two pronouns denote the order of an action, what are their places ? *ib.* ✎ † What pronouns are used after prepositions ? *ib.* ‡ What other construction can you give the sentence *je pardonne à vous et à lui* ?

OF SUPPLYING PRONOUNS.

229. The adverbs *en, y*, act frequently as pronouns, and are called supplying pronouns, because they always have a relation to an antecedent.

230. *En* expresses *of him, of her, of it, of them ; by him, by her, by them, &c. some, any, none* ; it comes immediately before the verb by which it is governed.

I speak of him, her, it, or them, *j'en parle.*

231. *Y* is rendered in English by *to him, to her,*

to it, to them, there, here, therein, for it, thither, in it, and likewise precedes the verb.

I consent to it, *j'y consens.*

232. If the verb is in the second person, sing. or plural, or first plural of the imperative affirmative, the supplying pronouns follow it.

Be sure of it, *soyez-en sûr.*
Consent to it, *consentez-y.*

233. *Le (so,)* is another supplying pronoun of both genders and numbers, and is used to avoid the repetition of an adjective, a substantive used adjectively, and sometimes part of a sentence, in answer to interrogations.

You are young, and I am not(so), *vous êtes jeune, et je ne le suis pas.*
Are you content? I am(so). $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{êtes vous content?} \\ \text{————— contente?} \end{array} \right\} \text{je le suis.}$

EXERCISE.

I have just received his letter, but do not speak of it—If you
*mais * (a) si*

wish to see fine pictures, he has some—I went to the Lyceum;
vouloir ∞ voir (a) aller Lycée

we were speaking of it—If you promise me not to speak of it, I
*(a) promettre † * (a)*

will tell you a secret—She has written a beautiful essay on filial
dire écrire essai sur

piety; her mother will be delighted with it—His relations have
charmé (a) parent

consented to it—Walk into my study, you will find there, paper,
consentir (b) entrer dans cabinet trouver (b)

pens, and ink—You have received your books, send some to
envoyer (c)

your sister—She has not been there, I am sure of it—He is happy,
(b) (a)

but we are not so—Is your father at home?—He is—He is not
 (d) chez lui † †

He has made his profit by it—I am glad of it—You are sorry for
 faire (a) bien aise(a) fâché

it—Be sure of it—I have made a trial of it—Do you see
 (a) (c) l'essai (a) voir

the river? that descent leads to it—I surveyed her with
 rivière descente conduire(b) examiner avec

astonishment, she did not seem to take notice § of it—You
 étonnement paraître faire attention à (b)

have seen the new play, have you been pleased with it—Your
 nouveaux pièces content de (a)

father loves you ; I am persuaded of it—My mother has sent me
 (a) envoyer

those grapes, I will send some to your brother—Have you any
 raisin (a)

new books?—I have—Madam, are you a queen?—I am—Are you
 nouveaux ‖ (d)

the queen of Spain?—I am.

••

References.

(a) See 220. (b) See 221. (c) See 232. (d) See 233. * Observe that *en* or *y* are placed after *ne*.

† *Promettre* requires *de* before the next infinitive it governs. ‡ In French we must specify where *he is* or *is not*; and instead of repeating the words *at home*, we use the supplying pronoun *y* and say, *il y est*, (he is in it) *il n'y est pas*, (he is not in it). However these interrogative phrases are generally answered by, *oui, Monsieur, non, Monsieur*. § *Of it* is here rendered by *y*, because the verb *faire attention* governs the preposition *à*.—The two languages do not always correspond in this respect. This is one of the greatest difficulties the pupil has to encounter, and for which no rules can be given. In cases like the above we will give the governed preposition as a help for the learner.—*De* governed by a verb or an adjective is the sign of the supplying pronoun *en*. ‖ The answer to this sentence *I have*, must be literally in French; *I have some, j'en ai*, as the pronouns *en* or *y*, supply the place of those words which are understood in English. •• When *le* represents a substantive, it agrees in gender and number with that antecedent.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Aller, conduire, consentir, dire, écrire, envoyer, faire, paraître, promettre, voir, vouloir.

Read, translate and parse.

Ces fruits paraissent bons ; j'en mangerais volontiers. Cet homme vous plaît ; vous en parlez souvent. C'est une belle charge ; il y aspirait depuis longtemps. C'est un endroit charmant ; je compte m'y fixer. Ces argumens sont pressans : je n'y vois point de réplique.

EXAMINATION.—229. What are the supplying pronouns, and why are they so called ? 230. How is *en* translated in English ? 231. How is *y* rendered ? What place have these pronouns in the sentence ? 232. When are they placed after the verb ? 233. When is the supplying pronoun *le* used ?

Place of the personal conjunctive pronouns.

234. When two or more personal conjunctive pronouns are governed by a verb, the dative case comes before the accusative.

I will tell it you, *je vous le dirai.*

235. If the pronouns are both of the third person, the accusative precedes the dative case.

I will tell it him, *je le lui dirai.*

236. *Y* and *en* are placed immediately before the verb ; and when they happen to meet together, *en* is always last.

I will speak of it, *j'en parlerai.*
I am going there, *j'y vais.*
I sent some there, *j'y en envoyai.*

237. When *y* or *en* come with a personal conjunctive pronoun, they are placed last.

I will carry you some thither, *je vous y en apporterai.*

[238. When the sense is sufficiently determined without *y*, that letter is omitted; as, *je vous y en apporterai*, which is better expressed by, *je vous en apporterai*. As to phrases like these, *envoyez-lui y en*, *portons-lui y en*, they are absolutely condemned, though they may be found in some grammars.]

239. *Y* is suppressed before the future and conditional of the verb *aller*.

[We say *j'irai*, *j'irais*, instead of *j'y irai*, *j'y irais*. ACAD.]

240. From what has been said, it follows that,

<i>Me, te, nous, vous,</i>	go before every other.
<i>le, la, les,</i>	go before <i>lui, leur</i> .
<i>lui, leur,</i>	go before <i>y</i> .
<i>y,</i>	goes before <i>en</i> .

[The preceding arrangement holds good, whether the verb is affirmative, negative, interrogative, &c. but with verbs in the imperative without a negation, see the next Rule.]

As the use of the preceding pronouns is attended with difficulties, particularly when the verb is negatively or interrogatively used; the following exercises will, it is presumed, lessen these difficulties, and familiarise the pupil with a construction which is constantly occurring.

FIRST EXERCISE

On the simple tenses.

I offer it to him—I do not offer it to him—Do I offer it to him?—
offrir (b)

Do I not offer it to him?—He offers it to me.
(a)

This and the following sentences must be made negative, interrogative, and both interrogative and negative.

We offer it to you—You offer it to them—They offer it to her—
(a) (b) (b)

I describe it to you—He describes it to me—We describe it to
décrire (a) (a)

em—You describe it to him—They describe it to them—
(b) (b)

EXERCISE ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. 177

I did ask it of you—She did ask it of them—We did ask it of her
demander à (a) (b) (b)
 You did ask it of him—They did ask it of me—I promised it to
 (b) (a) *p. promettre*
 you—He promised it to me—We promised it to her—You pro-
 (a) (a) (b)
 mised it to them—They promised it to us—I said it to them—
 (b) (a) *p. dire* (b)
 She said it to me—We said it to her—You said it to us—They
 (a) (b) (a)
 said it to you—I shall accuse them of it—He will accuse her
 (a) *accuser* (c)
 of it—We shall accuse you of it—You will accuse me of it—
 They will accuse us of it—I should incite him to it—He would
exciter (c)
 incite me to it—We should incite them to it—You would incite
 us to it—They would incite her to it.

SECOND EXERCISE.

On the compound tenses.

I have denied it him—He has denied it me—We have denied
refuser (b) (a)
 it you—You have denied it us—They have denied it her—
 (a) (a) (b)
 I had punished him for it—She had punished you for it—We
punir (c)
 had punished them for it—They had punished us for it—I shall
 have informed him of it—He will have informed you of it—We
informer (c)
 shall have informed her of it—You will have informed them of it
 They will have informed us of it—I should have compelled him
forcer
 to it—She would have compelled them to it—We should have
 (c)
 compelled you to it—You would have compelled us to it—They
 would have compelled me to it.

THIRD EXERCISE.

On reflected verbs, (simple tenses).

I use myself to it—She uses herself to it—We use ourselves to
s'accoutumer (c)

it—You use yourself to it—They use themselves to it—I did
abstain from it—He did abstain from it—We did abstain from
s'abstenir (c)

it—You did abstain from it—They did abstain from it—I
wondered at it—She wondered at it—We wondered at it—You
p. *s'étonner de*(c)

wondered at it—They wondered at it—I shall expect it—He will
s'attendre à(c)

expect it—We shall expect it—You will expect it—They will
expect it—I should perceive it—She would perceive it—We
s'apercevoir de(c)

should perceive it—You would perceive it—They would
perceive it.

FOURTH EXERCISE.

On the compound tenses of reflected verbs.

I have fancied it—She has fancied it—We have fancied it—You
s'imaginer *

have fancied it—They have fancied it—I had opposed it—He
s'opposer à(t)

had opposed it—We had opposed it—You had opposed it—They
had opposed it—I shall have trusted to it—She will have trusted
se fier à (c)

to it—We shall have trusted to it—You will have trusted to it
They will have trusted to it—I should have boasted of it—He
se vanter (c)

would have boasted of it—We should have boasted of it—You
would have boasted of it—They would have boasted of it.

References.

(a) See 234. (b) See 235. (c) See 237.

✱ The verb *s'imaginer* does not govern either the genitive or dative case ; it has therefore but the pronoun *le*, which must precede the verb, according to the rule given for personal conjunctive pronouns: *je me le suis imaginé*, &c.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. S'abstenir, décrire, dire, offrir, and promettre.

Read, translate and parse.

Vous voulez faire un présent à votre sœur : voilà un bel éventail ; vous devriez le lui offrir. Je lui en parlerai, et je vous en rendrai un compte exact. Il n'allait point dans cette maison ; le jeu l'y a introduit. Donnez-le moi. Je ne puis, je le lui ai promis.

241. When a verb, in either of the second persons or the first plural of the imperative, governs two personal pronouns, the accusative is placed first, and both follow the verb.

Give it him,	<i>donnez-le lui.</i>
Send them to us,	<i>envoyez-les nous.</i>

[242. This rule is not observed with reflected verbs in the second persons ; *rappelez-vous la*, recollect her ; *proposez-vous le pour modèle*, take him as a model ; *attachez-vous les*, secure their friendship ; but with the first person plural it follows the rule 241.]

243. *Me* and *te* become *moi* and *toi*, except before *en* ; this last may finish the sentence.

Give it me,	<i>donnez-le moi.</i>
Give me some,	<i>donnez m'en.</i>

244. *Y* comes before *moi* and *toi*, or finishes the sentence.

Carry me there,	<i>menez-y moi.</i>
Carry us thither,	<i>menez-nous y.</i>
Go thither,	<i>transportes-y toi.</i>

[245. By this last sentence, it may be seen that an *s* has been added to the second person of the imperative, *transportes*; this irregularity takes place whenever the verb ends in *e* mute before *y*. See the verb *aller*.]

EXERCISE.

Let us offer it to him—Bring them to us—Give it him—Do
offrir (a) *apporter* (a) (a)
 not give it me—Propose it to him—Send it to me—Recollect
 (e) *proposer* (a) *envoyer*(c) *se rappeler*
 them—Use yourself to it—Be satisfied with it—Let us part
 (b) *s'accoutumer*(d) *se contenter de* (c) *se défaire de*
 with it—Think of it—Let us submit to it—Do not compel me
 (c) *penser à* (d) *se soumettre*(d) *forcer*
 to it—Do not mention it to him—Do not send it me—Do not
 (g) *parler de* (g) (e)
 propose it to him—Let us not trouble ourselves about it—Do not
 (h) *s'inquiéter de* (g)
 trust to it—If the animals of the earth are intended for our use,
se fier (g) *destiné à usage*
 let us kill them, but let us not tease them wantonly—Let us
tuer (i) *mais* *tourmenter*(k) *par plaisir*
 warn them of it,
avertir de *

References.

(a) See 241. (b) See 242. (c) See 243. (d) See 244. (e) See 224 and 217. (g) See 237 and 217. (h) See 235 and 217. (i) See 216. (k) See 217. * *Avertissons-les en* is the grammatical construction of this sentence, yet, as the sound is unharmonious, a delicate ear will prefer another turn. For the same reason, *P'en, t'en, leur en*, especially at the end of a sentence, are generally avoided.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. *Offrir, se défaire, se soumettre.*

Read, translate and parse.

Ne t'en étonne pas. Ne les y provoquons pas.
 Amenez-les y. Présentez-le lui. Ne te l'imagines pas.
 Tendez-le moi. Promettez-le lui.

EXAMINATION.—241. What is the place of the personal pronouns with a verb in the imperative affirmative? 242. Is there not an irregularity with respect to reflected verbs? 243. When are *me* and *te* changed into *moi* and *toi*? 244. What is the place of *y* with *moi* and *toi*? 245. When does the second person singular of the imperative take a final *s* in verbs of the first conjugation?

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

246. Relative pronouns are those which relate to a preceding noun or pronoun, called the *antecedent*.

247. The relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*: the three first are translated into French by *qui*, for both genders and numbers.

N.	who, which, that,	<i>qui</i> .
G. & Abl.	of or from whom, or whose,	<i>de qui</i> or <i>dont</i> .
D.	to whom, which, that,	<i>à qui</i> .
A.	whom, which, that,	<i>que</i> .

248. *Qui* and *que* relate to persons and things, and are used when no ambiguity is to be feared; *de qui* and *à qui* relate to persons only.

The man who speaks,	<i>l'homme qui parle.</i>
The stars which you observe,	<i>les étoiles que vous observez.</i>
The lady to whom I speak,	<i>la dame à qui je parle.</i>

249. *Dont* may relate either to persons or things, but is always placed between two substantives, or between a substantive and a verb which governs it.

This officer, whose bravery is known,	<i>cet officier dont la bravoure est connue.</i>
The horse I make use of,	<i>le cheval dont je me sers.</i>

250. *Who*, *which*, and *that*, are also translated by *lequel*, which is thus declined:

<i>Lequel</i> , m. s.	<i>laquelle</i> , f. s.	<i>lesquels</i> , m. pl.	<i>lesquelles</i> , f. pl.
<i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ,	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> .
<i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ,	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> .

251. *Lequel* relates to persons and things, and is chiefly used after prepositions, or to avoid an ambiguity.

The disorder, in which he found them, *le désordre dans lequel il les trouva.*
 The man with whom I live, *l'homme avec lequel je demeure.*

[252. As the pronoun *qui* is of both genders and numbers, it is not always sufficiently distinguished; we therefore employ the pronoun *lequel*, which on account of its different terminations, and of the article prefixed to it, removes every ambiguity. *C'est un effet de la providence qui...* as *qui* relates to *effet*, and not to *providence*, say *lequel*. The same pronoun, *lequel*, &c. is preferred whenever the relative *qui* is separated from its antecedent, as in the above sentence.]

EXERCISE.

We speak of those heroes who have subverted the throne of a
 (a) *renverser trône*
 tyrant—He is ruined because he has trusted to the probity of a
tyran parce que se fier
 correspondent, whom he believed an honest man—The ladies
 (a) *croire*
 whom you see are my cousins—The young man, of whom I have
 (a) *voir* (c)
 spoken to you, deserves to be encouraged—The glory to which
mériter de (d)
 heroes sacrifice, is often a false glory—I should like to see those
*sacrifier souvent § aimer **
 countries which are barbarous, but which you admire—I know
 (a) *barbare* (a) *savoir*
 from whom you have received this information—I know the man
 (b) *avis connaître*
 for whom you work—The lady he married had a great fortune—
 (d) *travailler † épouser P. —*
 A power which terror and force have founded cannot be of long
puissance (a) — fonder ‡ §
 duration—I have bought a country-house of which the situation
éc. acheter (c)

is pleasant and romantic—All the advantages which we enjoy
agréable romantique tous avantages (c) jour
 come from God—I met your mother in the park, who told me
venir P. rencontrer au parc (e) dire
 you were ill—The man I was speaking to—I know the
malade † connaître
 principle from which your system is derived—He rejected an
principe ‖ rejeter
 advice, the utility of which he knew—They have nothing to which
*** connaître *†*
 they can apply.
**† pouvoir s'appliquer*

References.

(a) See 247. (b) See 248. (c) See 249. (d) See 251. (e) See 252. * *Aimer* governs the preposition *à* before an infinitive.

† The relative pronouns are never omitted in French. ‡ *Ne peut être*, or *ne saurait être*. See the verb *savoir*. § This adjective to precede its substantive. || When the relative pronouns are in the genitive, dative, or ablative, and refer to an inanimate object, they may be expressed by *où*, or by *lequel* if the verb denotes motion or rest, at least figuratively. ** As the relative pronoun *qui* in all its cases, is placed immediately after its antecedent in French, say, *the utility of which*. *† *De quoi* and *à quoi* often supply the place of *duquel*, *auquel*, *de laquelle*, *à laquelle*, &c. but only when relating to inanimate objects. *† This verb must be in the present subjunctive.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Connaître, croire, dire, savoir, and venir.

Read, translate and parse.

L'histoire ancienne de Rollin est un livre dont on doit recommander la lecture. C'est une personne à la discrétion de laquelle je n'oserais me fier. Je n'ai pas encore lu la brochure à laquelle vous avez répondu. Je connais la dame avec qui vous causiez. L'ami au bonheur duquel vous n'avez cessé de vous intéresser, vient d'être tué à l'armée du centre.

EXAMINATION.—246. What do you mean by relative pronoun

247. Which are they? 248. What words may be the antecedents of *qui* and *que*? When are *de qui* and *à qui* used? 249. When is *dont* used? 250. Decline *lequel*. 251. In what case is *lequel* to be preferred to *qui*? *ref.* † Can the relative pronoun be omitted in French? *ib.* || When can the word *où* or *lequel* be used indifferently? *ib.* ** Can the relative pronoun *qui* be separated from its antecedent? *† What words do *de quoi* and *à quoi* supply, and in what case?

OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

253. The interrogative pronouns are *who*, *what*, and *which*.

254. *Who (qui)*, refers to persons only, and is thus declined :

N.	Who?	<i>qui,</i>	or <i>qui est-ce qui?</i>
G.	of or from whom?	<i>de qui,</i>	or <i>de qui est-ce qui?</i>
D.	to whom?	<i>à qui,</i>	or <i>à qui est-ce qui?</i>
A.	whom?	<i>qui,</i>	or <i>qui est-ce qui?</i>

Who is there? *qui est là?* of whom do you speak? *de qui parlez-vous?* to whom do you write? *à qui écrivez-vous?* whom have you seen? *qui avez-vous vu?*

255. *What* used in the sense of *what thing?* is declined as follows :

N.	what?	<i>qu'est-ce qui?</i>
G.	of what?	<i>de quoi?</i>
D.	to what?	<i>à quoi?</i>
A.	what?	<i>que</i> or <i>qu'est-ce que?</i>

What vexes you? *qu'est-ce qui vous afflige?* what are you complaining of? *de quoi vous plaignez-vous?* what are you doing? *que faites-vous?*

[256. *Qui est-ce qui*, *qui est-ce que*, *qu'est-ce qui*, or *qu'est-ce que*, are seldom used but to express surprise or wonder.]

257. *What*, before a substantive or in the sense

of *what sort*, is rendered by *quel*, and thus declined :

N. what?	<i>quel</i> . m.	<i>quelle</i> . f.	<i>quels</i> . m. pl.	<i>quelles</i> . f. pl.
G. of what?	<i>de quel</i> ,	<i>de quelle</i> ,	<i>de quels</i> ,	<i>de quelles</i> .
D. to what?	<i>à quel</i> ,	<i>à quelle</i> ,	<i>à quels</i> ,	<i>à quelles</i> .

What book do you take? *quel livre prenez-vous?*

Of what lady do you speak? *de quelle dame parlez-vous?*

258. *Which* is always rendered by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, &c. through all its cases, (see 250,) and expresses a comparison.

Which of the two will you have? *lequel des deux voulez-vous?*

[259. When a question is asked by *que*, the pronoun personal nominative comes after the verb, but if *qu'est-ce que* is used, the pronoun personal precedes the verb.

What do you say? $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{que dites-vous?} \\ \textit{qu'est-ce que nous dites?} \end{array} \right.$

[260. When the nominative is not a pronoun, it may come before or after the verb.

What does your father say? $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{que dit votre père?} \\ \textit{qu'est-ce que dit votre père?} \\ \textit{qu'est-ce que votre père dit?} \end{array} \right.$

EXERCISE.

Of whom do you speak?—Whom will you consult in that
(a) (a) *consulter dans*

affair?—Which of these two pictures do you prefer?—To whom
(d) *tableau* (a)

shall I write?—Which of your sisters learns French?—Which
écrire (d) *apprendre* (d)

of these horses will you buy?—I have bought a book—What is

it?—Do you know what those anecdotes are, to which he was
savoir †

alluding?—What do you say?—What do you think of it?—
faire allusion (b) (b)

What does your brother study?—I do not know what to say—
(c) *savoir* † *à dire*

What does your master complain of?—What are your motives?
(b) *se plaindre* (c)

What sum does he ask?—I have something to tell you—
(c) *demandeur quelque chose dire*

What is it?—What makes you laugh?—Which of the maritime
§ (b) *faire rire* (d) —

powers had the advantage in that war?—What passion is he
puissance avantage dans (c) —

inclined to?—What does he want?—What have you done with
incliner (b) *demandeur* (b) *faire de*

your slate?—In what have I neglected to fulfil my duty?—On
ardoise en quoi || *°|| remplir sur*

what will you examine me?—What, said he, could occasion this
quoi || *vouloir* °° *dît-il* °|| *pouvoir occasionner*

mistake?—It is in what you are mistaken—What does it avail
méprise en || *se tromper* °† *servir à*

him to have merit, if he has no friends?—What! you have not
°|| °§

done your exercise!
faire

References.

(a) See 254. (b) See 255. (c) See 257. (d) See 258. (e) See 260.

¶ ° When the pronoun *what* comes before the verb *to be* and refers to a substantive, it is rendered by *quel*, as in the above sentence, *quel livre est-ce?* or the substantive may be repeated, as, *quel est-ce livre?* † *Quelles sont ces anecdotes auxquelles*, &c. by this sentence it is seen that the substantive to which *quel* refers, must come after the verb *être*. ‡ *What*, in the sense of *which thing*, is translated by *que* when it comes after the verb *savoir* followed by an infinitive. § With reference to the word *something*, or to a whole sentence, *what is it?* must always be rendered by *qu'est-ce que c'est?* || *What*, after a preposition, is always expressed by *quoi*. °° *Qu'est-ce qui* cannot be parted from its verb by any intermediate sentence. °† This verb must be in the perfect indefinite. °‡ With the verbs *servir* and *importer*, the pronoun *what* is expressed by *que*, what does it signify? *qu'importe?* in that case it is used instead of *de quel*, *en quoi*, *à quoi*. °§ *What* is sometimes used interrogatively, and then it is translated by, *comment*, *quel*, *hé quoi*; what! you are not up yet! *comment*, *quel*, *hé quoi*, *vous n'êtes pas encore levé?* °|| This verb must be preceded by *de*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Apprendre, dire, écrire, faire, se plaindre, pouvoir, rire, savoir, servir, and vouloir.

Read, translate and parse.

Qui avez-vous vu ? Lequel des deux frères avez-vous vu ? Qu'est-ce qui peut faire le bonheur de l'homme, sinon la vertu ? Apportez-moi une des tables. Laquelle ? Vous paraissez affligé ; que vous est-il arrivé ? Qu'est-ce qui a fait cela ?

EXAMINATION.—253. What pronouns are called interrogative ? 254. How is *qui* declined ? 255. In what sense is the interrogative *what* translated by *qu'est-ce qui* ? 256. What is the difference between *qui*, *que*, and *qui est-ce qui*, *qui est-ce que* ? 257. When is the pronoun *what* translated by *quel* ? 258. How is the interrogative *which* translated ? 259. When an interrogative sentence is preceded by *que*, what is the place of the personal pronoun nominative to the verb ? If *qu'est-ce que* is used, what is the construction ? 260. When the nominative is not a pronoun, what is the construction of the sentence ? *ref.* § * When the pronoun *what* comes before the verb to be with reference to a substantive, what is the construction ? *ib.* § How do you translate *what is it* ? with reference to the word *something* ? *ib.* * § Is not *what* sometimes used interjectively ? How is it then translated ?

OF DEMONSTRATIVE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

261. When the demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, have a reference to a preceding noun, they are called *demonstrative disjunctive pronouns* ; they are thus expressed :

This or the latter,	{ <i>celui-ci</i> . m. <i>celle-ci</i> f.	These or the latter,	{ <i>ceux-ci</i> . m. <i>celles-ci</i> f.
That or the former,	{ <i>celui-là</i> . m. <i>celle-là</i> f.	Those or the former,	{ <i>ceux-là</i> . m. <i>celles-là</i> f.

262. These pronouns are declined with *de* and *à*.

263. When they are opposed to each other, or when they serve to contrast or compare persons or things, *ci* marks the nearest object and *là* the most distant.

What book shall I read ? this *quel livre lirai-je ? celui-ci ou celui-là ?*
or that ?

Here are two charming prospects ; this is more cheerful, *voilà deux belles perspectives ; celle-ci est plus riante, mais celle-là est plus majestueuse.*
but that is more majestic.

264. *This* and *that* are expressed by *ceci* and *cela*, when they serve to shew some object without naming it.

I do not like that, *je n'aime pas cela.*

[265. When they are opposed to each other, *ceci* marks the nearest object ; as, this pleases, but that captivates, *ceci plait, mais cela captive*. When *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, are used to shew an object, they are often rendered by *voici* or *voilà* ; this is a fine garden, *voici* or *voilà un beau jardin*. Observe that *this* is often rendered by *cela* when it does not refer to a thing exactly under our eye ; this will not justify you, *cela ne vous justifiera pas.*]

266. When *this*, *that*, *these*, and *those*, are used to avoid the repetition of the noun antecedent, they are expressed by *celui*, *cette*, *ceux*, and *celles*.

I admire the translations of *j'admire les traductions de*
Pope and those of Delille, *Pope et celles de Delille.*

267. The demonstrative pronouns *celui*, *celle*, &c. may also be followed by the relative pronoun *qui*, in all its cases ; as,

He who,	<i>celui qui.</i>
She who,	<i>celle qui.</i>
Such as, or they who,	<i>ceux qui.</i>
Such as, or they whom,	<i>ceux que.</i>
They whose,	<i>ceux dont, or de qui, &c.</i>

268. *What*, in the sense of *that which*, is translated

190 OF DEMONSTRATIVE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

despise it—Do not do that, I will do it myself—This is for me
mépriser faire (c) (d) pour

and that for you—What gratifies the senses softens the heart—
(d) (g) flatter sens amollir

Let us consider what the law of God commands, and what society
(g) (g)

requires of us—Tragedy excites terror, it is that which renders
exiger (g) rendre

it tragical; the epic poem excites admiration, it is that which
..... poëme (g)

renders it heroical—What I fear is treason—What you say is
..... (h) craindre trahison (h) dire

true—What you fear is to be discovered—They are happy who
vrai (h) de découvrir †

content themselves with what they have—Which of these two
se contenter de (g) ‡

oranges will you have? which you please.

—
 This house is sold and that is let—Here are several cloths, choose this or that—Mr. C. and Mr. G. fought a duel (*se battre en duel*) the former was wounded and the latter was killed—They who are contented with their condition are happy—They whom you protect have merit—She brought her picture and that of her son—You punished him who was not guilty—Such as seem to be happy are not always so.

References.

(b) See 261 and 263. (c) See 264. (d) See 264 and 265. (e) See 266. (f) See 267. (g) See 268. (h) See 268 and 269.

✎ * The supplying pronoun *en* often supplies the place of a whole sentence—say, *if you take one of them*. † In this sentence the nominative to the verb is parted from its relative *who*: these inversions must be carefully avoided in French, by joining the antecedent to its relative thus, *they who despise learning, know not the value of it*. ‡ When a question is asked by *which*, the answer in French must be *celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui, celles qui*, or *celui que, celle que, &c.* Which of these two men is the tallest? the one on your right; *lequel de ces deux hommes est le plus grand? celui qui est à votre droite*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Connaitre, craindre, découvrir, dire, faire, pouvoir, and prendre.

Read, translate and parse.

Ne me refusez pas cela. Ceci est bon, mais cela est mauvais. Ce que vous voyez est à moi. Voilà deux tabatières, celle-ci est d'or, celle-là est d'argent. Celui qui aime le travail est heureux.

EXAMINATION.—261. How do you express the demonstrative disjunctive pronouns? 262. How are they declined? 263. What is the use of the particles *ci* and *là*, when joined to the demonstrative pronouns? 264. When are *ceci* and *cela* used? 266. When the demonstrative pronouns are used to avoid the repetition of a noun, how are they translated? 267. How do you translate *he who*, *she who*, &c.? 268. When the word *what* is used for *that which*, how is it rendered into French? 269. What do you observe with *ce qui*, *ce dont*, &c. in sentences of two parts? *ref.* § 3. ‡ When a question is asked by *which*, what pronoun must be used in French for the answer?

OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

270. The indeterminate pronouns are so called because they present to the mind the idea of an object used in a vague and indeterminate manner.

271. These pronouns may be divided into four classes: 1st. Those that are never joined to a noun. 2ndly. Those which are always joined to a substantive. 3rdly. Those which are sometimes joined to a noun, and sometimes not. 4thly. Those followed by *que*.

The following are never joined to a noun.

272. *Autrui*, (*others, our neighbours.*)

This pronoun is used in the genitive and dative

only, has neither gender nor number, and is said of person only.

He depends on others, *il dépend d'autrui.*

273. *Chacun*, { distributively, *each person or thing.*
collectively, *every one, every person.*

This pronoun has no plural and when used distributively is followed immediately by the preposition *de*; its feminine is *chacune*.

Every one (each) of you shall } *chacun de vous traduira une page.*
translate a page,
Examine each of these medals } *examinez chacune de ces médailles*
separately, } *séparément.*
Every one has his faults, } *chacun a ses défauts.*

274. *Personne*, { nobody, with a negation.
any body, in interrogative or
dubitative sentences.

This pronoun is always masculine singular. When it means nobody it takes *ne* before the verb.

He admits nobody to his table, *il n'admet personne à sa table.*

275. In interrogation, or in phrases denoting doubt, *personne* does not require the negative *ne*.

Would any body dare deny it, *personne oserait-il le nier?*

276. *Quelqu'un*, (somebody.)

Somebody told me so, *quelqu'un me l'a dit.*

277. This pronoun takes the gender and number; thus:

<i>quelqu'un. m.</i>	}	one out of several.
<i>quelqu'une. f.</i>		
<i>quelques-uns. m. pl.</i>	}	some, several, out of a greater number.
<i>quelques-unes. f. pl.</i>		

Some one of these gentlemen, *quelqu'un de ces messieurs.*
ladies, *quelqu'une de ces dames.*

Some people affirm, *quelques-uns affirment.*

278. *Quiconque*, (whoever, any person whatever.)

This pronoun has no plural, and refers to persons only.

Whoever told you so is wrong, *quiconque vous l'a dit a tort.*

279. *Rien*. Masculine singular—With a negation it means *nothing* and takes *ne* before the verb.

He says nothing, *il ne dit rien.*

280. When used without a negation and in sentences expressing doubt it means *something*.

I doubt whether there is any thing better calculated to make an impression than... *je doute que rien soit plus propre à faire impression que ...*

EXERCISE.

He has given a watch to each of his children—A good christian
(b)

rejoices in the happiness of others—Every body has his opinion
se réjouir de bonheur (a) (b)

None knows whether he is just before God—He is esteemed by
(c) *savoir si* *devant* *de*

nobody—Did ever any body find the true cause of the tide?—
(c) *jamais* (d) *P. trouver véritable*

I have seen somebody in the garden; was it you?—Some of the
voir (e) (f)

ancient historians relate that fact—Whoever affirms the truth of
* *rapporter fait* (g) *affirmer vérité*

the fact is wrong—He does nothing—Is there any thing in his
avoir tort *faire* (h) *y avoir* (i)

conduct which you disapprove?—Every one lives as he likes—
conduite † *désapprouver* (b) *vivre comme il lui plaît*

Every body will be rewarded according to his works—These two
(b) *selon* *œuvres. pl.*

sentences have each a different sense—Has ever any body
phrase (b) — *sens* (d)

doubted the existence of God?—I will make use of some of your
douter de _____ *se servir* (f)

books—Whoever spares the bad does harm to the good—
 (g) *épargner méchant*. pl. *faire tort* bon. pl.

Have you ever seen any thing so beautiful?—There is nothing
jamais (i) ‡ *de si* ‡ (h) *de*

noble but truth.—Was any body ever so unfortunate?
 — *que vérité*. y avoir (d) *d'aussi*

References.

(a) See 272. (b) See 273. (c) See 274. (d) See 275. (e) See 276. (f) See 277. (g) See 278. (h) See 279. (i) See 280. * This adjective before its substantive. † *Désapprouver* must be in the present subjunctive. ‡ *Personne* and *rien* require *de* before an adjective or participle: *nobody wounded*; *personne de blessé*: *nothing new*; *rien de nouveau*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Faire, savoir, se servir, vivre, and voir.

Read, translate and parse.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un de ces messieurs?
 Quiconque ne pense qu'à soi est indigne de vivre.
 Chacun a son opinion. Personne ne peut lui plaire.
 Personne a-t-il jamais su gouverner un ballon? Rien
 de si agréable que la musique de cet opéra.

EXAMINATION.—270. Why are the indeterminate pronouns so called? 271. How are they divided? Name those that are never joined to a noun. 272. In what case is *autrui* used? 273. What is the meaning of *chacun*? 274. What do you observe concerning *personne*? 275. When is *personne* used without *ne*? 276 & 277. What is the meaning of *quelqu'un*, and how is it declined? 278. When is *quiconque* used? 279 & 280. What do you observe concerning *rien*? *ref.* ‡ What pronouns require *de* before a participle or adjective?

281. *The three following indeterminate pronouns are always joined to a substantive.*

282. *Chaque, (each or every.)*

This pronoun is of both genders and has no plural.

Every sailor had a reward, *chaque matelot eut une récompense*

283. *Quelconque, (any or whatever.)*

It is of both genders and follows the substantive; its plural is *quelconques*.

He will submit to no autho- *Il ne veut se soumettre à aucune*
rity whatever, *autorité quelconque.*

284. *Quelque, (some, any.)*

This pronoun is of both genders, but agrees in number with the substantive to which it is joined.

Some accident, *quelqu'accident.*

There are some difficulties, *il y a quelques difficultés,*

EXERCISE.

Each science has its principles—They removed all obstacles

(a) ——— *principe* *ôter* ———

whatever—We have just received some books from London—

(b) ——— (c) *Londres*

There is, in every plant, a certain quality which renders it

(a) * *rendre*

wholesome or hurtful—He stops at every word—There is no

salutaire nuisible s'arrêter à (a) mot

nation whatever that has no idea of a God, Creator of the universe.

(b) *qui n'ait point*

Find me any two persons who approve of that action, and I will

trouver (b) ———

approve of it myself—Every step he takes is an imprudence—

moi-même (a) que faire ———

Have you not any answer to give me?—Each victory increased

(c) *réponse faire* (a) *p. accroître*

the glory of the nation.

....

References.

(a) See 282. (b) See 283. (c) See 284. * This adjective before its substantive.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Accroître and faire.

Read, translate and parse.

Le retour de chaque saison. Avec quelques précautions, vous réussirez. Ne lui donnez aucun secours quelconque ; il ne le mérite pas.

EXAMINATION.—281. What are the indeterminate pronouns which are always joined to a noun? 282. Of what gender and number is the word *chaque*? 283. What is the gender of *quelconque*, and what is its place in the sentence? 284. With what word does the pronoun *quelque* agree?

285. *The following indeterminate pronouns are sometimes joined to a noun, and sometimes not.*

286. *Plusieurs, (several, many.)*

This pronoun is always plural and of both genders.

Several victories,	<i>plusieurs victoires.</i>
Many think so,	<i>plusieurs le pensent.</i>

287. *Nul, aucun, pas un, pas de, point de, (not any, not one, no, not any one.)*

These indeterminate expressions take *ne* before the verb ; their feminine are *nulle, aucune, pas une*.

We have not any proof,	{	<i>nous n'avons nulle preuve.</i>
		<i>aucune preuve.</i>
		<i>point de preuve.</i>

[288. The words *nul* and *aucun* seem to be indifferently used, yet the former is more proper with sentences generally exclusive.]

289. *L'un l'autre*, (one another, each other); *l'un et l'autre*, (both); *l'un ou l'autre*, (either); *ni l'un ni l'autre*, (neither); are thus declined:

290. *L'un l'autre*, (one another.)

Masculine.

sing.	{ <i>l'un l'autre.</i> <i>l'un de l'autre.</i> <i>l'un à l'autre.</i>	plur.	{ <i>les uns les autres.</i> <i>les uns des autres.</i> <i>les uns aux autres.</i>
-------	---	-------	--

Feminine.

sing.	{ <i>l'une l'autre.</i> <i>l'une de l'autre.</i> <i>l'une à l'autre.</i>	plur.	{ <i>les unes les autres.</i> <i>les unes des autres.</i> <i>les unes aux autres.</i>
-------	--	-------	---

[291. *L'un l'autre* is used with reference to two; and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two. The verb on which these pronouns depend must be reciprocal.]

292. *L'un et l'autre*, (both.)

Masculine.

sing.	{ <i>l'un et l'autre.</i> <i>de l'un et de l'autre.</i> <i>à l'un et à l'autre.</i>	plur.	{ <i>les uns et les autres.</i> <i>des uns et des autres.</i> <i>aux uns et aux autres.</i>
-------	---	-------	---

Feminine.

sing.	{ <i>l'une et l'autre.</i> <i>de l'une et de l'autre.</i> <i>à l'une et à l'autre.</i>	plur.	{ <i>les unes et les autres.</i> <i>des unes et des autres.</i> <i>aux unes et aux autres.</i>
-------	--	-------	--

The verb must be plural; *l'un et l'autre sont bons*.

[Some difference of opinion prevails among grammarians, with respect to the number in which the verb is to be put after *l'un et l'autre*. The Academy, Marmontel, Fenelon, Boileau, Voltaire, Barthelemy, and many others have used indifferently the singular and the plural. Racine on the contrary has constantly used the plural, and the generality of modern writers and grammarians seem to favour that practice.—When the words *l'un et l'autre* follow the verb, all parties agree in making use of the plural; *ils voalaient l'un et l'autre se promener, mais ils ne se sont promenés ni l'un ni l'autre*.]

293. *L'un ou l'autre*, (either.)

Masculine.

sing. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{l'un ou l'autre.} \\ \text{de l'un ou de l'autre.} \\ \text{à l'un ou à l'autre.} \end{array} \right. \text{ plur. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{les uns ou les autres.} \\ \text{des uns ou des autres.} \\ \text{aux uns ou aux autres.} \end{array} \right.$

Feminine.

sing. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{l'une ou l'autre.} \\ \text{de l'une ou de l'autre.} \\ \text{à l'une ou à l'autre.} \end{array} \right. \text{ plur. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{les unes ou les autres.} \\ \text{des unes ou des autres.} \\ \text{aux unes ou aux autres.} \end{array} \right.$

The verb must be in the singular; *l'un ou l'autre le fera.*

294. *Ni l'un ni l'autre, (neither, neither of them.)**Masculine.*

sing. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ni l'un ni l'autre} \\ \text{ni de l'un ni de l'autre.} \\ \text{ni à l'un ni à l'autre.} \end{array} \right. \text{ plur. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ni les uns ni les autres.} \\ \text{ni des uns ni des autres.} \\ \text{ni aux uns ni aux autres.} \end{array} \right.$

Feminine.

sing. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ni l'une ni l'autre.} \\ \text{ni de l'une ni de l'autre.} \\ \text{ni à l'une ni à l'autre.} \end{array} \right. \text{ plur. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ni les unes ni les autres.} \\ \text{ni des unes ni des autres.} \\ \text{ni aux unes ni aux autres.} \end{array} \right.$

This pronoun takes *ne* before the verb.

[The verb which follows *ni l'un ni l'autre*, may be either singular or plural, for the same difference of opinion exists among grammarians as concerning the pronoun *l'un et l'autre*. It may be said however, that the plural seems proper when both subjects or nominatives concur to the action: neither have done their duty; *ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir*: and that the singular should be used if only one of the two subjects is the nominative: neither the one nor the other is my father; *ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon père.*]

EXERCISE.

I will send him none of my books—Either will reward you—
envoyer (b) (a) récompenser

We ought to assist one another—These women slander each other
*devoir se secourir (c) parler mal de * (c)*

Neither of them loves her—Both are good—No expression, no
(f) (d) (b) ——— (b)

truth of design and colouring, no stroke of genius in that work—
vérité dessein coloris (b) trait ouvrage

I love my father and mother and I wish to please them both—
voudrais plaire à (d)

Telemachus and Iphicles were both vigorous and brave, of the
Télémaque (d) *fort* *courageux*

same stature, of the same | sweet disposition, | of the same age,
même taille *douceur* _____

and both alike dear to their parents—Many poems of great merit
 (d) *en chéri de* _____ (a) *poème*

appear obscure because the reader is not | acquainted with | the
paraître *parce que* *connaître*

ancient fables, or natural objects to which the poet alludes—
 † _____ *faire allusion*

Those who apply themselves to several sciences do not succeed
s'appliquer (a) _____ *réussir*

in any—Both his brother and sister are dead—Both religion and
dans § _____

virtue are the bonds of civil society—Both houses have sent an
lien _____ ‡ *chambre*

address to the king.
adresse

References.

(a) See 286. (b) See 287. (c) See 289. (d) See 290, and observe that *both* may likewise be rendered by *tous deux* or *tous les deux*, particularly when it is not joined to any noun or pronoun, and refers to two persons; *tous deux* generally follows the verb, which must be preceded by *ils*, &c. both say it; *ils le disent tous deux*, or *tous les deux*: when *both* refers to substantives of things, it will always be safest to make use of *l'un et l'autre*. * The preposition *de* must come between the two pronouns. † This adjective to precede its substantive. ‡ When *both* comes immediately before a noun not used adjectively, it is rendered by *les deux*: both armies, *les deux armées*. § *Both* is not expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and*: both France and England, *la France et l'Angleterre*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Connaitre, envoyer, faire, paraître, plaire, and se secourir,

Read, translate and parse.

L'un et l'autre ont raison. Ils se méfient les uns des autres. Les deux frères nous ont écrit plusieurs

lettres aujourd'hui. Ni l'un ni l'autre ne dit l'avoir fait. L'un ou l'autre vous payera.

EXAMINATION.—286. How is *plusieurs* translated? 287. What do you observe concerning *nul*, *aucun*, and *pas un*? 288. May *nul* and *aucun* be indifferently used? 290. Decline *l'un l'autre*. 291. When is that pronoun used? 292. What number does the pronoun *l'un et l'autre* govern in a verb? 293. Decline *l'un ou l'autre*. 294. Decline *ni l'un ni l'autre*.

295. *The following indeterminate pronouns are always followed by que.*

296. *Qui que, (whoever, whatever person.)*

The verb must be in the subjunctive. It is said of persons only.

Whoever I may be, *qui que je sois.*

297. *Quoi que, (whatever. Thing is understood.)*

The verb must be in the subjunctive.

Whatever you may say, *quoi que vous disiez.*

It may be also rendered by :

*quelque chose que vous disiez, or
quoi que ce soit que vous disiez.*

298. *Qui que ce soit, (whoever.)*

This pronoun is used with a negation, and means *nobody whatever.*

I saw nobody whatever, *je n'ai vu qui que ce soit.*

299. *Quoi que ce soit, (whatever, whatsoever.)*

This pronoun is used with a negation.

I have found nothing whatever, *je n'ai trouvé quoi que ce soit.*

[*Qui que ce soit* and *quoi que ce soit* are not so frequently used negative sentences, as *personne* and *rien*.]

[300. *Qui que ce soit qui* is the nominative of a verb ; *qui que ce soit que* is used as accusative : whoever has done it ; *qui que ce soit qui l'a fait* : whomever you know ; *qui que ce soit que vous connaissiez*. The verb is in the subjunctive—*quoi que ce soit qui*, is likewise used as accusative : whatever he does ; *quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse*. The other cases of both pronouns are likewise used ; as, à *qui que ce soit que vous parliez*, de *quoi que ce soit qu'il s'occupe*.]

301. *Quel que*, { relating to persons, (*whoever it may be.*)
relating to things, (*of whatever kind it may be.*)

The pronoun *quel* must then agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates, and the verb is in the subjunctive.

Whatever your opinion may be, { *quelle que soit votre opinion*
or *quelle que puisse être*
votre opinion.
I except nobody, whoever he je n'en excepte personne, *quel*
may be, *qu'il soit.*

302. *Quelque que*, (*whatever be the*)

When united to a substantive it agrees with it in number, and governs the verb in the subjunctive.

Whatever fault you have committed, he will forgive you. *quelques fautes que vous ayez commises, il vous pardonnera.*

303. When united to an adjective, *quelque* is indeclinable : it governs the subjunctive.

However great your faults may be, he will forgive you, *quelque grandes que soient vos fautes, il vous pardonnera.*

[304. When *whatever*, *whatsoever*, may be turned by *all . . . which*, they are expressed by *tout* with *que* before the verb ; I shall submit to whatever terms (to all the terms which) you shall prescribe ; *je me soumettrai à toutes les conditions que vous imposerez*.—When it can be turned by *every thing*, or *all that which*, they are expressed by *tout ce qui* or *que* : I am ready to do whatever (all that which) you please ; *je suis prêt à faire tout ce qu'il vous plaira*.]

EXERCISE.

I have spoken to nobody whatever—Whatever may happen,
 (c) (b) *arriver*
 write immediately—Whatever your motives may be, your
sur le champ (c) *motif*
 conduct will be condemned—I complain of nothing whatever—
se plaindre (d)
 However amiable she may be I prefer her sister—However
 (g)
 surprising that phenomenon may be, it is not against the order of
 (g) *phénomène* *contre ordre*
 nature—Whatever services he has done me, I have paid him for
 (f) *rendre* *payer*
 them—He keeps an exact account of whatever money he receives
tenir compte (h)
 They covet whatever is new, because they have experienced
désirer (h)
 whatever is familiar—Whatever happens to him he is always the
 (h) (b) *toujours*
 same—All the nations of the earth worship a Supreme being,
adorer être
 however different their temper, manners, and inclination may be.
 (g) *caractère mœurs*
 Whatever your birth may be, whatever your elevation and glory,
 (a)
 you ought to despise nobody—Whatever talents you may have
devoir mépriser (f)
 received from nature, you may improve them by study—
reçus pouvoir perfectionner étude
 Whoever that foreigner may be, he is very amiable.
 (a) *étranger pouvoir très aimable*

References.

(a) See 296. (b) See 297. (c) See 298. (d) See 299. (e) See 301. (f) See 302. (g) See 303. (h) See 304. * *Même* the same is likewise a pronoun indeterminate, declinable before a noun; as, *le même livre, les mêmes livres, la même femme*.—Sometimes it is

used with reference to a preceding noun with which it agrees in gender and number; *cet homme n'est plus le même.*

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Se plaindre, pouvoir, and tenir.

Read; translate and parse.

Quoi que vous fassiez, vous ne réussirez pas. Quelques services que vous lui ayez rendus il en sera reconnaissant. Tout ce que vous dites est vrai. Quelque riches qu'ils soient ils ne vous donneront rien. Vos projets ne sont pas les mêmes que les miens.

EXAMINATION.—295. What are the indeterminate pronouns followed by *que*? 296. Mention the difference between *qui que*, and *quoi que*. 298. Between *qui que ce soit* and *quoi que ce soit*. 301. How is *quel que* used? 302. How is *whatever* translated when united to a noun? 303. Is *quelque* declinable before an adjective?

Of the indeterminate pronoun On.

305. *On* is used to express a vague and indefinite nominative to a verb. It is translated into English by *one, people, men, we, they, &c.*

It is said,	} <i>on dit.</i>
One says,	
People say,	
They say,	

[*On* has generally a plural meaning, but always governs its verb in the singular.]

306. When in the passive voice, it is merely said that an action has taken place, without determining

precisely by whom or what it has been done; *on* is used as a nominative in French, by changing the passive into the active voice; thus:

<i>Passive.</i>	<i>Active.</i>	
It is reported,	One reports,	<i>On rapporte.</i>
It was thought, }	One thought, }	<i>On croit.</i>
People thought, }	People thought, }	
It has been thought,	One has thought,	<i>On a cru.</i>
Letters had been written,	They or one had written letters,	<i>On avait écrit des lettres.</i>

[307. The pronoun *on* is masculine singular; yet when it evidently relates to a woman, the adjective must be feminine. It may be sometimes followed by a plural, though the verb remains singular: A woman is not always young and pretty; *on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie*: they fought like desperate men; *on se battit en désespérés*.]

308. *On* is usually repeated before every verb to which it is nominative.

They praise him, threaten him, *On le loue, on le menace, on le caresse* him, yet they cannot alter his indolent disposition. *caresse, cependant on ne peut changer son caractère indolent.*

[309. *On* is usually preceded by *l'* when it is followed by the words *et, si, où*, or any other vowel except *e* mute. It is likewise preferred after *que*, before the syllables *con* and *com* when they have a nasal sound. *On* is better at the beginning of a sentence or when followed by *le, la, les*. The law of euphony naturally rejects phrases like these: *où l'on le trouve, et l'on le lui dit*.]

EXERCISE.

One would not believe it—We ought to encourage the efforts of
 (a) (a) *devoir* —
 those who apply themselves to arts and sciences—If coquetry be
s'appliquer coquette
 a vice when a woman is young, it is a folly when she is old—
 — (c) *folie* (c)
 Nothing was heard but shouts of joy—She was of that age in
 (b) *cri* *joie* *dans l'âge*

which a woman | is past being | pretty, | though she may still be
 où (e) n'est plus mais où l'on est encore
 reckoned | handsome—I am commanded to assist you—A new
 belle (b) de aider

piece was acted yesterday at the opera—People think they have
 (b) donner (d) croire (d)

done every thing, when they have done no evil—In that house
 faire quand (d) mal dans

they laugh, play, dance, sing, in short they spend time most
 (d) rire jouer danser chanter enfin (d) passer très

agreeably—We learn easily, what we understand—
 agréablement (a) apprendre aisément ce que (e) comprendre

Rejoicings have been made on the king's birth day—Somebody
 réjouissance (b) jour de la naissance (a)

knocks at the door—It is said that he is dead—One cannot
 frapper à (b) mourir pouvoir

walk in such weather.
 se promener dans un pareil

References.

(a) See 305. (b) See 306. (c) See 307. (d) See 308. (e) See 309.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Apprendre, comprendre, croire, faire, mourir, pouvoir, and rire.

Read, translate and parse.

On aurait cru que la maison allait s'écrouler. On attribue l'invention de la poudre à un Allemand. On vous a récompensé ou l'on vous récompensera bientôt. On parle d'équiper une flotte. On dit que le roi est malade.

EXAMINATION.—305. How is *on* translated into English? 306.

When is the English passive verb changed into an active verb in French with *on* for its nominative? 307. When *on* relates

to women, what do you observe concerning the adjective or participle? 308. Is *en* always repeated before every verb? 309. What do you observe concerning *l'on*?

OF THE GERUND.

310. The gerund is indeclinable when it expresses an action.

A father loving his children, *un père aimant ses enfans.*
Children loving their father, *des enfans aimant leur père.*

311. The gerund is often used to express a quality, it then becomes a real adjective and agrees with the noun it qualifies.

An obliging answer, *une réponse obligeante.*
Surprising effects, *des effets surprenans.*

312. When the gerund is preceded by the preposition *by*, it generally denotes an action during the transaction of which another is acted by the same subject; it is then indeclinable and preceded by *en*.

We form our mind by reading *on se forme l'esprit en lisant*
good books, *de bons livres.*
Speaking thus she stabbed *en parlant ainsi, elle se*
herself. *poignarda.*

[313. The preposition *en*, in the last example, is used in the sense of *as*, *when*, *whilst*; *as she spoke these words*, or *when, whilst she was speaking thus, she stabbed herself*. The above conjunctions, when used in cases like these, should therefore be rendered by *en* with the gerund; *as he made these reflections &c; en faisant ces réflexions, il &c.*]

314. The gerund is indeclinable when it comes at the head of an incidental sentence, and is not governed by a preposition.

Agatha weeping bitterly, threw *Agathe fondant en larmes, se*
herself into her arms, *jeta dans ses bras.*

315. The English gerund coming immediately after a noun or a pronoun in the middle of a sentence is generally resolved into the present or imperfect of the indicative with the pronoun *qui* before it.

I have seen my brother play- *j'ai vu mon frère qui jouait*
ing in the garden. *dans le jardin.*

EXERCISE.

Charlotte and her brother George, perceiving a pretty butterfly
_____ (a) *apercevoir* *papillon*

endeavoured to catch it—Your sister is a charming girl—That
tâcher *de attraper* (b)

mountain commanding an extensive view, was well calculated for
(a) *commander* *étendu* *propre* à

our observations—We have obtained peace by making great
_____ *obtenir* (c) *faire*

sacrifices—We form | our mind | by reading good books—
_____ *l'esprit* (c)

Time is a real blunderer, placing, replacing, ordering,
brouillon (a) *mettre* (a) *remettre* (a) *ranger*

disordering, impressing, erasing, approaching, removing, and
(a) *déranger* (a) *imprimer* (a) *effacer* (a) *approcher* (a) *éloigner*

making all things good and bad, and almost always | impossible
(a) *rendre* *presque*

to be known again | —You will learn to speak French by writing
inconnaisable *apprendre à parler* (c) *écrire*

it—The Greeks, indeed, when they went away, left me some
Grec (d) *partir* *laisser*

provisions—These are reasons concluding the same thing—
_____ (f) *conclure*

Conjecturing that I was rich and finding that I was ignorant, he
(e) *se douter* (e) *juger*

thought it would be easy to deceive me.
P. croire (g) *facile*

References.

(a) See 310. (b) See 311. (c) See 312. (d) See 313. (e) See
314. (f) See 315. (g) See 183 page 129 and ref. || page 131.

Read, translate and parse.

Ce charmant poëme est lu de tout le monde.
 En travaillant à cet ouvrage il se proposait d'être
 utile à la jeunesse. Un homme craignant Dieu.
 La religion dominante de l'Angleterre est la Protes-
 tante.

EXAMINATION.—310. When is the French gerund indeclinable? 311. When does it become declinable? 312. When is the word *en* prefixed to a French gerund? 313. Is not the preposition *en* used in the sense of *as when, whilst*? 314. Is the gerund declinable at the head of an incidental sentence? 315. In what cases is the English gerund rendered by a tense of the indicative?

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

Participles of Active Verbs.

316. An active verb governs an accusative in French.

317. The accusative case governed by an active verb may either precede or follow that verb.

318. When the accusative follows the verb, the participle remains undeclined.

He has received a letter,	<i>il a reçu une lettre.</i>
She has received a letter,	<i>elle a reçu une lettre.</i>
They have written letters,	<i>ils ont écrit des lettres.</i>

319. If the accusative precede the verb, the participle must agree with that accusative in gender and number.

The letter he has received,	<i>la lettre qu'il a reçue.</i>
The letters she has written,	<i>les lettres qu'elle a écrites.</i>
The lesson which you have learned.	<i>la leçon que vous avez apprise.</i>

[320. The accusative preceding a verb must be either a noun with the relative *que* or pronouns *me, te, se, le, la, les, nous, vous, quel, lequel*,—or even the adverbs of quantity *que, combien*, followed by a substantive with the preposition *de*: as, I have seen her, *je l'ai vue*; I have seen them, *je les ai vus*; what house have you bought? *quelle maison avez vous achetée*? how many hours you have lost! *que d'heures vous avez perdues*!]

Participles of Reflected Verbs.

321. The participle of a reflected verb is declined whenever the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous*, are real accusatives.

Lucretia killed herself, *Lucrèce s'est tuée.*

[*Se* is an accusative: *Lucrèce a tué elle-même*, or *Lucrèce a tué Lucrèce*: therefore the participle *tué* has been made feminine according to rule 319.]

322. But when the above pronouns are in the dative case, the participle remains undeclined.

Lucretia killed herself, *Lucrèce s'est donné la mort.*

[The accusative is *la mort*, which follows the verb; *se* is instead of *à elle*, or *à Lucrèce* and therefore a dative case. Neuter verbs accidentally reflected have their participles invariable, because indeed a neuter verb cannot govern an accusative. These verbs are *se plaire, se déplaire, se complaire, se rire, se sourire, se parler, se succéder, se nuire*; *Ils se sont plu à me contrarier.*]

323. If the accusative case is a noun and precedes the verb (a construction common in the French language), the participle is declined,

The death which Lucretia gave herself, *la mort que Lucrèce s'est donnée.*

Participles of Passive, Neuter, and Impersonal Verbs.

324. The participle of a passive verb agrees in

gender and number with its nominative. (See 166, page 104.)

She is loved,	<i>elle est aimée.</i>
We are satisfied,	<i>nous sommes satisfaits.</i>
Their houses are sold,	<i>leurs maisons sont vendues.</i>

325. The participle of a neuter verb conjugated with *être* is declinable.

My sister is come,	<i>ma sœur est venue.</i>
My brothers are gone out,	<i>mes frères sont sortis.</i>

326. The two verbs, *paraître*, to appear, and *sembler*, to seem, require the following participles to be declined.

She appears afflicted,	<i>elle paraît affligée.</i>
They seem displeased,	<i>ils paraissent mécontents.</i>

[327. In the above sentences the verb *être* to be, is always understood in French. Thence this *Rule*: A participle not joined to the verb *avoir* or *être*, agrees in gender and number with the word it modifies; A mother loved by her children, *une mère chérie de ses enfans.*]

328. When the participle is part of an impersonal verb, it is never declined.

The rain which has fallen has	<i>la pluie qu'il a fait a gâté les</i>
spoiled the roads,	<i>chemins.</i>

EXERCISE.

I have just sent back the books which you had lent me—What
renvoyer (b) *prêter* (c)
 business have you undertaken?—The Amazons have acquired
affaire (b) *entreprendre* *Amazone* *acquérir*
 celebrity—The lady to whom my sister has written a letter has
 (a) *dame* *écrire* (a)
 answered her this morning—What pains I have taken!—A year
ce matin *que de* (c) *prendre* *année*
 is soon over—The wicked are always tormented by their
bientôt (h) *passer* *méchant. pl.* (g) *tourmenter*

conscience—That kingdom has been formed from the ruins of the
 _____ (g) former _____ ruins

Roman Empire— | How many | acres of land have you bought?—
 Romain _____ combien de arpent (c) acheter

How many faults you would have avoided in this exercise, if you
 _____ (c) éviter dans thème si

had attended to the directions I have given you!—The Castilians
 suivre les instructions (b) Castillans

exasperated against their king assembled—Transported with a
 (k) irriter contre s'assembler (k) d'une

cruel joy, my mother came to me—They appeared astonished at
 ‡ venir † (i) de

the reception they | met with | —She has | given herself up | to
 accueil qu'on leur faire (d) s'abandonner

despair—They have rendered themselves formidable—Men
 désespoir (d) se rendre

built themselves cities—The academies have proposed objections
 (e) se bâtir ville (e) se faire

| to one another | —The cities which those nations have built
 _____ (f)

for themselves—The chimeras which she has put into her head—
 chimère (f) se mettre dans la tête

The excessive heat which we had last summer has occasioned
 chaleur (l) faire été causé

diseases—The disputes that have occurred concerning religion,
 (b) y avoir au sujet de

have corrupted charity—The great changes which have | taken
 altérer changement (l) y avoir

place | in the administration have | given rise | to different
 donner lieu

conjectures.

References.

(a) See 318. (b) See 319. (c) See 320. (d) See 321. (e) See 323. (f) See 323. (g) See 324. (h) See 325. (i) See 326. (k) See 327. (l) See 328.

† * The preposition *with* preceded by a participle is rendered in French by *de*: a tree loaded with fruit; *un arbre chargé de fruit*.

‡ See the disjunctive personal pronouns, page 168. † This adjective precedes its noun.

Read, translate and parse.

Les mathématiques que vous avez apprises vous seront utiles. Nous avons accepté votre offre obligeante. Elle s'est dispensée de venir. Mes sœurs ont été effrayées. Ils sont descendus. Elle s'est donné de grands airs. Quelle fâcheuse aventure vous est-il arrivé ?

EXAMINATION.—316. What is the government of an active verb ? 317. What is the place of the accusative in the sentence ? 318. Is the participle declined when followed by its accusative ? 319. When is the participle to be declined ? 320. What are the words necessarily used for the accusative when it precedes its verbs ? 321. When is the participle of reflected verbs declined ? 322. When does it remain undeclined ? 323. What do you observe with respect to reflected verbs, when their preceding accusative is a noun ? 324. Is the participle of passive verbs declined ? 325. When are the participles of neuter verbs declinable ? 326. What do you observe concerning *paraître* and *sembler* ? 327. Repeat the rule for the declinability of participles not joined to *avoir* or *être* ? 328. Are participles declined with impersonal verbs ?

329. The participle is not declined when it is followed by a verb which governs the preceding accusative.

The house which I have had built, *la maison que j'ai fait bâtir*.
The rules which I have begun to explain, *les règles que j'ai commencé à expliquer*.

[In the above sentences the accusatives *maison* and *règles* are governed by the infinitives *bâtir* and *expliquer*, for we say, *j'ai fait bâtir la maison ; j'ai commencé à expliquer les règles.*]

330. By the preceding rule, the participle *dû*, *fallu*, *pu*, *voulu*, are indeclinable, because they

always have after them a verb, expressed or understood, which governs the preceding accusative.

He has made the apologies he *il a fait les excuses qu'il a dû*
ought, *(faire).*

[When *devoir* means to be indebted, its participle agrees with a preceding accusative.]

331. The participle is declinable when the following verb does not govern the preceding accusative.

I have heard her sing, *je l'ai entendue chanter.*
I saw it fall (a-house), *je l'ai vue tomber.*

[In the above sentences the infinitives express actions done by the person or thing spoken of; on the contrary in the examples to rule §29, the infinitives imply actions done on persons or things mentioned in the sentence; hence these phrases are correct, *je l'ai vu peindre*, I saw her picture drawn; and *je l'ai vue peindre*, I saw her painting, that is to say, in the act of painting.]

EXERCISE.

Imitate the virtues which you have heard praised—These are
(a) entendre louer

the books which I ordered from France—The figures which you
(a) faire venir

have learned to draw have great beauties—I have seen them
(a) apprendre à dessiner (c)

fighting—I have done you all the services I could—The language
se battre rendre (b) pouvoir langue

which you have resolved to learn, is not difficult—The reasons
(a) résoudre difficile

which he had imagined I should approve—The play which I have
(a) croire

seen acted did not succeed—We used all the means we could—
(a) jouer employer (b) pouvoir

I saw them play—These lines are beautiful, I have heard them
(c) vers (a)

recited—I have heard them recite these lines—The books
réciter (c)

which you have given me to read, have great beauties.

(a) *donner*

References.

(a) See 329. (b) See 330. (c) See 331.

Read, translate and parse.

La dame que vous avez cessé de voir est très-spirituelle. Les soldats que j'ai vus combattre. J'ai cité les plus beaux traits que j'ai pu.

EXAMINATION.—329. Is the participle declinable when it is followed by a verb governing a preceding accusative? 330. What participles are undeclinable and why? 331. When the participle is followed by a verb, in what case is it declinable?

OF PREPOSITIONS.

332. A preposition serves to express the relation which some words bear to one another. It has no meaning of itself, is indeclinable, and always precedes, in French, the word which it governs.

333. Prepositions may be divided into three classes, according to the cases they govern.

First Class.

334. *Chief prepositions governing the accusative.*

Après, after, next to
avant, before,
avec, with, against
chez, at, to, among
contre, against, near
dans, in, into
depuis, since, from,

dessus, on, upon, above
dès, from
devant, before
derrière, behind
durant, during
en, in, into
entre, between

envers, towards
environ, about
excepté, except, but
malgré, in spite of
moyennant, by means of
nonobstant, notwithstanding
outré, besides, beyond
par, by, through
parmi, among
pendant, whilst, during.

pour, for
sans, { without, were it not
 { for, but for
sous, under
selon, { according to
suivant, {
sur, on upon, over
touchant, concerning
vers, towards

Against my advice,
 Except your cousin,

contre mon avis.
excepté votre cousin.

EXERCISE.

He walked behind me—There is a deep valley between these
marcher (a) *y avoir* *†*profond* (a)

two mountains—You have left your books upon the table in my
 laisser (a) †

study, go and fetch them and put them on your shelves—You
cabinet ∞ *chercher* *mettre* (a) *tablette*

will arrive before me—Do not place yourself before that lady—
 † *se placer* †

Politeness | is better attended to | in the metropolis than in the
 règne plus † *métropole que* †

country—He was arrested yesterday and is now in prison—
province P. *hier* à *présent* †

Why do you blame my generosity towards Sophia?—They went
pourquoi § *aller*

towards the church—The enemies fortified themselves during the
 § *se fortifier* ||

whole winter—According to Locke and Condillac—A son should
 hiver ** ∞ *devoir*

behave according to the advice of his father—He came
se comporter ** *les avis* *venir*

towards night to my house—You will find your book upon the
 § *nuît*, (a) * *trouver* (a)

table—The English have great advantages over other nations—
 Anglais *avantage* (a)

I had it this morning, I have not seen it since—The hermit lived

*†

on the mountain—I shall be glad to hear by what means you
(a) *apprendre* (a) *moyen*

have acquired this quality.

acquérir

References.

(a) See 234. * *To my house* is translated by *chez moi*; *to his house*, *chez lui*, &c. † *Avant* denotes generally a proximity of time, and is used in opposition to *après*, *after*. *Devant* marks a situation, and its contrary is *derrière*, *behind*. ‡ *Dans* points out positively. *En* denotes a place in an indeterminate manner. § *Vers* is said of place or time. *Envers* is said of persons. || *During* is rendered into French both by *durant* and *pendant*, but the former denotes a continual duration. ** *Selon* is said of opinion, and *suiwant* of practice. *† This adjective before its noun.

¶*† There are seven prepositions after which the governed word may be understood: *auparavant*, before; *depuis*, since; *déhors*, out; *alentour*, round; *dedans*, within; *dessus*, over or above; and *dessous*, under: I could not get in, but I walked round it; *je n'ai pu entrer, mais je me suis promené autour*.

Read, translate and parse.

✎ In parsing a preposition mention the word it governs in the sentence.

Je me suis trompé; j'ai pris l'un pour l'autre. Il travaille toute la semaine excepté le Dimanche. On le trouva parmi les morts. Il a été ingrat envers son bienfaiteur. Cachez-vous derrière ce rideau. Il est en bonne santé.

EXAMINATION.—332. What is a preposition? 333. How are they divided? 334. Mention those which require an accusative after them. *ref.* † What is the difference between *avant* and *devant*? *ib.* ‡ Are *en* and *dans* used indiscriminately? *ib.* § What is the difference between *vers* and *envers*? *ib.* || When is *durant* preferable to *pendant*? *ib.* ** In what do *selon* and *suiwant* differ? *ib.* *† What are the prepositions that may be used absolutely?

*Second Class.***335. Chief prepositions governing the genitive case.**

<i>à cause</i> , on account of, because	<i>aux dépens</i> , at the expense of
<i>à côté</i> , by, next to	<i>aux environs</i> , round about
<i>à couvert</i> , sheltered from	<i>au lieu</i> , instead of
<i>à force</i> , by strength of	<i>au milieu</i> , in the middle of
<i>à l'abri</i> , sheltered from	<i>au moyen</i> , by means of, in
<i>à la faveur</i> , by means	virtue
<i>à la réserve</i> , except	<i>auprès</i> , next to, near, by
<i>à l'égard</i> , as to, with regard to	<i>près</i> , near, by
<i>à l'exception</i> , excepted	<i>au péril</i> , } at the peril
<i>à l'entour</i> , } about	<i>au risque</i> , }
<i>au tour</i> , }	<i>au travers</i> , through
<i>à l'insçu</i> , without the know-	<i>de</i> , of, from
ledge of	<i>en dépit</i> , in spite of
<i>à moins</i> , under	<i>faute</i> , for want
<i>à raison</i> , at the rate of	<i>le long</i> , along
<i>au delà</i> } on this side of	<i>loin</i> , at a distance
<i>en delà</i> }	<i>proche</i> , near
<i>au-delà</i> , on the other side	<i>pour l'amour</i> , for the sake of
<i>au-dessus</i> , above	<i>vis-à-vis</i> , opposite
<i>au-dessous</i> , below, under	

Near the fire, *auprès du feu.*
 Beyond the Rhine, *au delà du Rhin.*

*Third Class.***336. Prepositions governing the dative case.**

<i>à</i> , to	<i>jusque</i> , to, till, even to, as far as
<i>par rapport</i> , with respect to	<i>quant</i> , as for.
As far as Paris,	<i>jusqu' à Paris.</i>
As for me,	<i>quant à moi.</i>

EXERCISE.

We walked in the meadow along the river—From the building
 F. (a) *depuis* *fondation*
 of the city to the end of the monarchy—He will succeed by means
 (b) *jusque* *monarchie* (a)
 F r

of your advice—Do you know the lady who was seated next to
 (a) †
 me?—We live opposite the assembly room; we shall be happy
 (a) † *vis-à-vis* *salle d'assemblée* *bien-aise*
 to see you—We penetrated as far as the camp, which we
 P. (b)
 plundered—Riches | supply the place of | understanding, reason,
 P. *pillier* *suppléer à* *esprit* §
 science, and even youth and beauty—We discovered the spire
 § *même* § *jeunesse* § *beauté* *découvrir* *flèche*
 of the Cathedral above the other churches of the city—They have
 (a) *ville*
 suffered on your account—Luxury feeds the rich at the expense
 (a) pl. (a)
 of the poor—Miss C. has been to the play without the knowledge
 pl. *comédie* (a)
 of her mother—They reckon seventy miles from London to
 on * *Londres*
 Dover—For want of economy he is reduced to sell his estate.
Douvers (a) *réduire* *terre*

References.

(a) See 335. (b) See 336. * When the sentence begins with *depuis*, its corresponding preposition is *jusque*, but if it begin with *de*, the preposition *à* is used: as, From London to Paris, *de Londres à Paris*; or, *depuis Londres jusqu'à Paris*. † When *près* and *auprès* serve to denote proximity of place, the latter signifies particularly *next to*. ‡ *Vis-à-vis* governs also the accusative: we say, *vis-à-vis l'église*, or, *de l'église*. § The prepositions *de*, *à*, *en*, are repeated; the same may be said of all prepositions of one syllable—as for the others, no rules can be given, as they are liable to exceptions.

Read, translate and parse.

Par quels moyens avez-vous acquis cette qualité?
 Ils se sont révoltés contre leur souverain légitime.
 J'espère que nous irons passer l'été de l'autre côté
 des Alpes. Ces paroles pénétrèrent jusqu'au fond

de mon cœur. Buonaparté avait étendu son empire depuis le Tage jusqu'aux rivages de la mer Baltique.

EXAMINATION.—335. Mention the prepositions which require a genitive case after them. 336. What are those which govern the dative case? *ref.* * What are the corresponding prepositions to *depuis* and *de*? *ib.* † What is the difference between *près* and *auprès*? *ib.* ‡ Does not the preposition *vis-à-vis* govern two cases? *ib.* § What prepositions are repeated in the sentence?

OF ADVERBS.

337. The adverb is an indeclinable word which modifies a noun, a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

<i>noun.</i>	Always a friend,	<i>toujours ami.</i>
<i>verb.</i>	To speak eloquently,	<i>parler éloquentement.</i>
<i>adjective.</i>	Very agreeable,	<i>très-agréable.</i>
<i>adverb.</i>	Very often,	<i>très-souvent.</i>

338. Adverbs are simple or compounded, that is, are formed of one or several words.

<i>simple.</i>	Seldom,	<i>rarement.</i>
<i>compounded.</i>	This morning,	<i>ce matin.</i>

339. Adverbs are divided into the following classes, according to their meaning.

1. Adverbs of *Time*.
2. ——— *Place and Order*.
3. ——— *Quantity*.
4. ——— *Quality and Manner*.
5. ——— *Affirmation, Negation, Doubt, Comparison, and Interrogation*.

340: The adverbs of time are,

For the Present.

A présent, now, at present
maintenant, now
à cette heure, at this hour, at this time
sur le champ, immediately, directly
à l'instant, } instantly
incessamment, }
vite, quick
aujourd'hui, to-day
dès aujourd'hui, } this very day
aujourd'hui même, }
cette après midi, *cette après dînée*, this afternoon
tout à l'heure, this minute, this instant
ce matin, this morning
ce soir, to-night, this evening

For the Time Past.

Hier, yesterday
avant hier, the day before yesterday
hier au soir, last evening, last night
hier matin or *au matin*, yesterday morning
la veille, } the day before
le jour précédent, }
la veille, } the day before the eve
l'avant veille, }
anciennement, } formerly
autrefois, }
jadis, formerly (in poetry)
depuis peu, lately, of late
naguère, not long since
auparavant, before
récemment, recently
tout récemment, } very lately
nouvellement, }
la dernière fois, the last time
l'autre jour, the other day
l'année passée, } last year
l'année dernière, }
jusqu'ici, hitherto
jusqu'à présent, till now
il y a huit jours, a week ago

il y a long temps, a long time ago
il n'y a pas long temps, not long ago
il y a quinze jours, a fortnight ago
il y a quelque temps, some time ago
il n'y a qu'un moment, } just now
tout à l'heure,
dernièrement, lately
cette nuit, last night

For the Time to Come.

demain, to-morrow
après demain, the day after to-morrow
le lendemain, the next day
le sur-lendemain, two days after
le jour suivant, the following day
demain matin, to-morrow morning
demain au soir, to-morrow evening, to-morrow night
tôt, soon
bientôt, soon, very soon
tantôt, by and by
l'année qui vient, } next year
l'année prochaine,
à l'avenir, for the future
dorénavant, } henceforth
désormais,
dans peu, shortly
dans six mois d'ici, six months hence
avant qu'il soit long-temps, before long

For Time in General.

d'abord, at first
souvent, often
quelquefois, } sometimes
parfois,
rarement, seldom
jamais, never
à jamais, for ever
presque jamais, scarcely ever
plus que jamais, more than ever
toujours, always
pour toujours, for ever and ever
presque toujours, most commonly, almost always
depuis, since

à toute heure, } every moment
à tout moment, }
à tout instant, }
continuellement, continually
sans cesse, } incessantly
incessamment, }
cependant, in the mean while
d'ordinaire, mostly, most times
à l'ordinaire, as usual, usually
communément, commonly
fréquemment, frequently
la plupart du temps, most times
alors, then
pour lors, at that time
dès lors, from that time
plus tôt, sooner
au plus tôt, as soon as possible
trop tôt, too soon
tôt ou tard, sooner or later
tantôt, sometimes
tard, late
trop tard, too late
au plus tard, the latest
soudain, on a sudden
au plus vite, } with all speed
en toute diligence, }
de bonne heure, early
de bon matin, } early in the morning
de grand matin, }
pas encore, not yet
de nouveau, anew
le matin, in the morning
l'après midi, in the afternoon
de jour, by day
de nuit, by night
jour et nuit, day and night
tous les deux jours, } every other day
de deux jours l'un, }
de jour en jour, daily
en plein jour, } at noon day
en plein midi, }
tous les jours, every day
tout le jour, } the whole day
toute la journée, }
tout d'un coup, all at once

tout à coup, suddenly, all of a sudden
en moins de rien, in a trice
à temps, in time
de temps en temps, now and then
en temps et lieu, in a proper time and place
en même temps, at the same time
peu de temps après, shortly after
depuis ce temps là, ever since
à loisir, leisurely
déjà, already
au premier jour,
à la première occasion, } with the first opportunity
dans l'occasion, upon the occasion
à propos, seasonably
fort à propos, very seasonably
enfin, at last
ensuite, afterwards
au commencement, at the beginning

341. When the verb modified by an adverb is in a simple tense, the adverb is placed immediately after it.

He always speaks, *il parle toujours.*

342. When the verb is in a compound tense, the adverb generally comes between the auxiliary and the participle.

They have always spoken in *ils ont toujours parlé en*
 my favour, *ma faveur.*

[343. The following adverbs of time, *hier*, *aujourd'hui*, *demain*, *depuis*, *ensuite*, *tantôt*, *tard*, *matin*, follow the participle as in English: I should have brought it yesterday, *je l'aurais apporté hier*. In simple tenses they may either precede or follow the verb: it rains to-day, *aujourd'hui il pleut*, or *il pleut aujourd'hui*.]

[344. The adverbs, *bien*, well; *mieux*, better; *mal*, ill; *jamais*, never; *trop*, too much; are generally placed before the present of the infinitive: it is dangerous to read too much, *il est dangereux de trop lire*. *Plus* in the sense of *no more*, *no longer*, should always precede it: I am determined to see him no more, *je suis décidé à ne plus le voir*.]

[345. The English adverbs of time which are placed at the beginning of the sentence, generally keep the same place in French : then she sang the victories of Soliman, *ensuite elle chanta les victoires de Soliman.*]

EXERCISE.

I saw your brother yesterday at the play—We expected him the
voir (a) *attendre*
 day before yesterday—If you intend to go soon into the country,
 (a) *bientôt à campagne*
 come and see me before—Formerly the education of the ladies
 (a) (a) *femme*
 was neglected ; now it is attended to—Hereafter I shall not be
 (a) *on s'en occuper* (a)
 so indulgent—From that time I ceased to see him—Hitherto my
si (a) *de* (a)
 health has been very good—Mrs. N. came to see us to-day, and
très Madame (a)
 we will return her visit to-morrow—All the troops will be ready
rendre (a) *prêt*
 to march at the same time—When we were last year at Paris we
à (a) *quand* (a)
 went every day to the play, and now and then to the chamber of
 (a) *spectacle* (a)
 deputies—I got up very early to write—On a sudden we per-
ce lever (a) (a)
 ceived the enemy—This merchant is on the eve of failing—We
ennemi pl. négociant (a) *manquer*
 expect them every moment—You will see me before long—
 (a) (a)
 Henceforth you will find me at home before | five o'clock | —
 (a) *trouver chez moi* *cinq heures*
 He has been robbed at noon day—I shall do it this very day—
voler (a) *faire* (a)
 The next day Sylla proscribed forty senators, and sixteen hundred
 (a) *P.* ** cent*
 knights, and two days after, forty senators more—He has hitherto
chevalier (a) *de plus* (a)

borne his misfortunes with magnanimity—The wicked will be
supporter infortune' avec † méchant. pl.

punished sooner or later—Sometimes I write, sometimes I read,
 (a) † *tantôt* †

at other times I walk.
d'autre fois

References.

(a) See 340. * Nouns of number are indeclinable, except *quatre-vingt*, eighty, and *cent*, a hundred, when followed by a substantive; as, Eighty scholars, *quatre-vingts écoliers*; Two hundred men, *deux cents hommes*: but they are lavariable when they come before another noun of number: Two hundred and eighty six men, *deux cent quatre vingt six hommes*. In writing the date of the year, *mille* is spelt *mil*: In the year one thousand eight hundred and twenty two, *l'an mil huit cent vingt deux*. † When a substantive, together with the preposition *avec*, with, forms an adverbial expression, no article is used before that noun: with honor, *avec honneur*, that is, *honorablement*; that expression must follow the verb. ‡ When *tantôt* is alternate, it is placed before the verb.

Read, translate and parse.

✎ In parsing Adverbs only name them.

Nous dinons ordinairement à trois heures. Il va rarement à la campagne. Nous le verrons dans peu. Nous les attendons de jour en jour. Vous êtes venu trop tôt. Je la quitte dès aujourd'hui.

EXAMINATION.—337. What is an adverb? 338. How are adverbs divided with respect to their formation? 339. How are they divided with respect to their meaning? 340. Mention the adverbs of time relating to the present. To the past. To the future. To time in general. 341, 342. What is the place of the adverb in the sentence? 343. Mention those adverbs of time which generally follow the participle? 344. Enumerate those adverbs which precede the infinitive. 345. What adverbs have the same place in both languages? *ref.* * What nouns of number are indeclinable? *ib.* † Is the article used before nouns forming an adverbial expression with the preposition *avec*? *ib.* ‡ What is the place of *tantôt* when used alternately?

346. *Adverbs of place and order.*

<i>Où</i> , where	<i>à côté</i> , by
<i>d'où</i> , whence	<i>de côté</i> , aside
<i>par où</i> , which way	<i>à terre</i> , down
<i>par quel endroit</i> , through what place	<i>par terre</i> , on the ground
<i>de quel endroit</i> , from what place	<i>devant</i> , } before
<i>ici</i> , here	<i>par devant</i> , }
<i>d'ici</i> , hence	<i>sur le devant</i> , on the fore part
<i>par ici</i> , this way	<i>derrière</i> , } behind
<i>là</i> there	<i>par derrière</i> , }
<i>de là</i> , hence	<i>autre part</i> , somewhere else
<i>par là</i> , that way	<i>par tout</i> , every where
<i>là-bas</i> , yonder	<i>deçà</i> , }
<i>dedans</i> , } within	<i>en deçà</i> , }
<i>en dedans</i> , }	<i>de ce côté-ci</i> }
<i>déhors</i> , } without	<i>de-là</i> , }
<i>en dehors</i> , }	<i>en de-là</i> , }
<i>là haut</i> , above	<i>de ce côté-là</i> , }
<i>en haut</i> , up, up stairs	<i>des deux côtés</i> , } on both
<i>dessous</i> , under	<i>de part et d'autre</i> , } sides.
<i>dessus</i> , above	<i>de tout côté</i> , } on every side
<i>jusqu' où</i> , how far	<i>de toutes parts</i> , }
<i>jusqu' ici</i> , so far, down to here,	<i>d'un côté et d'autre</i> , about and
as far as this place	about
<i>jusques là</i> , so far, down to there,	<i>au même endroit</i> , in the same
as far as that place	place
<i>loin</i> , far	<i>par de là</i> , } farther
<i>près</i> , near	<i>plus loin</i> , }
<i>ici près</i> , } here near	<i>ça et là</i> , up and down
<i>près d'ici</i> , }	<i>à droite</i> , on the right
<i>tout près d'ici</i> , just by	<i>à gauche</i> , on the left
<i>ici autour</i> , hereabout	<i>à main droite</i> , on the right hand
<i>aux environs</i> , thereabout	<i>à main gauche</i> , on the left hand
<i>bien loin</i> , very far	<i>depuis le haut jusqu'en bas</i> , from
<i>bien près</i> , very near	the top to the bottom
<i>proche</i> , }	<i>en avant</i> , forward
<i>tout auprès</i> , } hard by	<i>en arrière</i> , backward
<i>tout contre</i> , }	<i>au dehors</i> , }
<i>ailleurs</i> , elsewhere	<i>dans les pays étrangers</i> , } abroad
<i>nulle part</i> , no where	<i>au dedans</i> , }
<i>quelque part</i> , somewhere	<i>dans le royaume</i> , } at home
<i>vis-à-vis</i> , over against	<i>premierement</i> , first or firstly

<i>secondement,</i>	} secondly	<i>à la fois,</i> at once
<i>deuxièmement,</i>		<i>un à un,</i> one by one
<i>en premier lieu,</i> in the first place		<i>deux à deux,</i> two and two
<i>en dernier lieu,</i> lastly		<i>en foule,</i> in a crowd
<i>alternativement,</i> alternately		<i>sens dessus dessous,</i> upside down
<i>ensemble,</i> together		<i>sens devant derrière,</i> preposterously
<i>de suite,</i>	} one after another	<i>tour à tour,</i> by turn
<i>l'un après l'autre,</i>		<i>à la ronde,</i> by turns
<i>séparément,</i> separately		<i>dernièrement,</i> lastly
<i>pêle-mêle,</i> confusedly		

347. The adverbs of order are placed either before or after the verb, or even at the head of the sentence.

At first he gave him his liberty, *d'abord il lui donna sa liberté.*
il lui donna d'abord sa liberté.

EXERCISE.

He has been killed just by—That village is not far ; do not you

(a) (a)

see it yonder?—I shall go no where to-day—Carry all that up

(a)

stairs—We left her behind—These two generals commanded by

(a) *p. laisser* (a)

turn—You may come in this way—She will go out that way—

(a) *entrer* (a) *sortir* (a)

We surrounded the enemy, and attacked them on all sides—

p. ennemi. pl. (a)

Where do you live now?—The painter had | brought together |

(a) *demeurer* *rassembler*

in the same picture, several different objects ; here a troop of

dans un tableau plusieurs (a)

bacchants, there a troop of young people ; here a sacrifice, there

bacchante (a) *gens* (a) (a)

a disputation of philosophers—How far did you go yesterday?—

dispute philosophe (a)

I went as far as London—He endeavoured to sow jealousy every

(a) *Londres* *tâcher de* (a)

where—I wish I could escape that danger, but I do not know
échapper à *savoir*

which way—Read books of instruction first, and afterwards you
 (a) (a)

may proceed to those of entertainment—Call upon my sister, she
passer *agrément* *passer chez*

lives near here—Where is my grammar? I have left it
 (a) (a)

somewhere—I cannot recollect the name of the gentleman who
 (a) *se rappeler* *monsieur*

has brought this young lady here, though we have been at school
amener (a) *quoique nous ayons été à*

together formerly—We treat one another by turns—He is below.
 (a) *se traiter* (a) (a)

Is she not up stairs?—The soldiers were scattered up and down
 (a) *dispersé* (a)

in an open camp, unarmed and without a commander.
mal gardé sans armes *chef*

References.

- (a) See 246. * *Nulle part* requires *ne* before the preceding verb.
 † This verb must be in the future.

Read, translate and parse.

Où voulez-vous aller? n'allez pas loin. Faites
 premièrement ce dont nous sommes convenus, ensuite
 vous pourrez vous promener aux environs. On le
 rencontre partout.

EXAMINATION.—346. Enumerate the adverbs of place and order.
ref. * What do you observe concerning the adverb *nulle part*?
 347. What is the place of the adverbs of order in the sentence?

348. *Adverbs of quantity.*

<i>Combien,</i>	{ how much how many	<i>suffisamment,</i>	sufficiently
<i>peu,</i>	little	<i>trop,</i>	too much
<i>un peu,</i>	a little	<i>trop peu,</i>	too little
<i>tant soit peu,</i>	ever so little	<i>tant,</i>	so much, so many
<i>beaucoup,</i>	much, a great deal	<i>autant,</i>	as much
<i>pas beaucoup,</i>	not much	<i>plus,</i>	{ more
<i>guères,</i>	but little	<i>davantage,</i>	
<i>assez,</i>	enough	<i>moins,</i>	less

349. The preceding adverbs of quantity require the preposition *de* before the next noun.

How much money?	<i>combien d'argent?</i>
Too much bread,	<i>trop de pain.</i>

350. The adverb *bien* is often used for *beaucoup*; in that sense it requires the article before the next substantive.

He has many friends,	{ <i>il a bien des amis.</i> <i>il a beaucoup d'amis.</i>
----------------------	--

351. The other adverbs of quantity are,

<i>De beaucoup,</i>	by much	<i>environ,</i>	about
<i>peu à peu,</i>	by degrees, little by little	<i>à bon marché,</i>	cheap
<i>de plus,</i>	moreover	<i>à vil prix,</i>	at a vile price
<i>tout au plus,</i>	at most	<i>combien de fois?</i>	how many times?
<i>au moins,</i>	{ at least	<i>une fois,</i>	once
<i>du moins,</i>		<i>deux fois,</i>	twice
<i>pour le moins,</i>		<i>trois fois,</i>	three times
<i>en abondance,</i>	in plenty	<i>cent fois,</i>	a hundred times
<i>abondamment,</i>	plentifully	<i>à demi,</i>	{ by half, by halves
<i>pardessus le marché,</i>	into the bargain	<i>à moitié,</i>	
<i>cher,</i>	dear	<i>d'autant plus,</i>	so much the more, the more
<i>trop cher,</i>	too dear	<i>d'autant moins,</i>	so much the less, the less
<i>à demi,</i>	by half		
<i>à peu près,</i>	<i>à peu de choses près,</i>		
	nearly, within a small matter		

EXERCISE.

How much sugar do you take?—How many lessons a week can
 (a) (a) *par pouvoir*
 you give me?—You pay little attention to what I tell you—You
faire (a) *ce que*
 see to how many dangers we are exposed—How many times did
 (a) (a)
 I tell you to write to your father?—I spoke to him only once but
 (b)
 I saw him twice—I told it you a hundred times—He has little
voir (b) (b) (a)
 money—Give him a little money; do not give him too much—
 (a) (b)*
 He gave me a quire of fine paper into the bargain—If you give
main beau (b)
 me a verb, I will learn it by degrees—There were many ladies,
 (b) (a)
 and we had a great deal of pleasure—He has increased his
 (a)
 fortune by much—My father has bought a horse very cheap—
 (b) (b)
 He has as many books as you—I was so much the more persuaded
 (a) (a)
 of what you told me, that I dismissed him immediately—We are
renvoyer
 the more to be pitied as we are poor—You have not patience
 (b) *plaindre que*
 enough—You have played enough—This picture would have
 (c) (c)
 pleased me more—Give me more time—There was in his way of
plaire † †
 living little daintiness, but much neatness.
délicatesse mais (a) *propreté*

References.

(a) See 348. (b) See 350. (c) See 348, and observe that *assez* must precede the noun, or follow the verb it modifies. * *Of* is understood in this sentence. † When the adverb *more* is joined to a noun,

it is translated by *plus de* with that noun; but when it modifies a verb or relates to an antecedent, *davantage* is proper and follows the verb or the participle.

Read, translate and parse.

Elle a bien de la bonté. Nous avons tout au plus quinze jours de bon. Combien de papier voulez-vous? Vous avez autant de patience que de talens. Vous parlez beaucoup trop. Etudiez davantage.

EXAMINATION.—349. What are the adverbs of quantity which govern the preposition *de*? 350. Does the adverb *bien* govern the same preposition as *beaucoup*? 351. What are the other adverbs of quantity? *ref. (c)* What is the place of *assez* with a noun, and with a verb? *ib. †* When is the adverb *more* to be translated by *plus* or *davantage*?

352. *Adverbs of quality and manner.*

<i>Bien</i> , well		<i>à mon gré</i> , to my mind
<i>mal</i> , bad, wrong		<i>à votre gré</i> , to your mind
<i>fort bien</i> ,	} very well	<i>au naturel</i> , to the life
<i>très-bien</i> ,		<i>à l'envi</i> , in emulation of one
<i>fort mal</i> ,	} very badly	another
<i>très-mal</i> ,		<i>de sang froid</i> , in cold blood
<i>bien mal</i> ,		<i>exprès</i> , on purpose
<i>à l'aise</i> , at ease		<i>tout de bon</i> , in good earnest
<i>à plaisir</i> , for pleasure's sake		<i>pour rire</i> , in a joke
<i>à regret</i> ,	} with reluctance	<i>pour badiner</i> , in jest
<i>à contre-cœur</i> ,		<i>en riant</i> ,
<i>de bon cœur</i> ,	} very will-	<i>en badinant</i> ,
<i>de bonne volonté</i> ,		ingly
<i>de bon gré</i> ,	} of one's own ac-	<i>au hasard</i> , at random
<i>de plein gré</i> ,		<i>par hasard</i> , by chance
	cord	<i>à tout hasard</i> , at all events

<i>au pis aller</i> , let the worst come to the worst	<i>à pied</i> , on foot
<i>goutte à goutte</i> , by drops	<i>à cheval</i> , on horseback
<i>sans faute</i> , without fail	<i>à la mode</i> , after the fashion
<i>à toute force</i> , by all means	<i>à l'Anglaise</i> , after the English fashion
<i>de manière à</i> , so as to	<i>de mieux en mieux</i> , better and better
<i>de toutes les manières</i> , all ways	<i>de pis en pis</i> , worse and worse
<i>à tous égards</i> , in all respects	<i>à peine</i> , scarcely
<i>au dépourvu</i> , unthought of	<i>presque</i> , almost
<i>sans façons</i> , } without ceremony	<i>modestement</i> , modestly
<i>sans cérémonie</i> } mony	<i>sagement</i> , wisely
<i>en diligence</i> , in haste	

Formation of the Adverbs from Adjectives.

353. The adverbs of quality and manner are formed from adjectives, in the following manner.

354. When an adjective masculine ends with a vowel, the final *ment* is added to it*; as,

Wise,	<i>sage</i> ;	wisely,	<i>sagement</i> .
Polite,	<i>poli</i> ;	politely,	<i>poliment</i> .

355. When the adjective masculine ends with a consonant, the syllable *ment* is added to its feminine termination †.

Great, *grand*, *grande*; greatly, *grandement*.

* Except *impuni*, which makes *impunément*.

The following seven take an *é* accented before the final *ment*: *aveuglément*, *commodément*, *incommodément*, *conformément*, *énormément*, *uniformément*, and *opiniâtrément*.

Nouveau, *beau*, *fou*, *mon*, make *nouvellement*, *bellement*, *follement*, and *mollement*.

† *Gentil* makes *gentiment*.

The following nine adverbs take *é* accented before *ment*: *communément*, *confusément*, *diffusément*, *expressément*, *importunément*, *obscurément*, *précisément*, *profondément*, *profusément*.

356. Adjectives ending in *ant** or *ent* form their adverbs by changing *nt* into *mment*†.

Constant, *constant*; constantly, *constamment*.
Eloquent, *éloquent*; eloquently, *éloquemment*.

EXERCISE.

Your house is very well situated—This young man has given us
(a) faire
a description to the life—The workmen did that easily—He
(a) ouvrier faire aisé(b)
denied the fact absolutely—He has acted conformably to your
absolu(b) conforme(e)
orders—I am deeply afflicted for his misfortunes—That barrister
profond(f) affliger de malheur
has pleaded very eloquently—The town was beautifully illumina-
très (d) superbe(b)
ted—They live economically—It is necessary to know the human
économique(b) falloir
heart to judge well of others—That philosopher is obstinately at-
(a) obstiné(b)
tached to his system—He is dangerously wounded, and even
dangereux(c) même
some say mortally—I had previously sold my share—We desire
quelques-uns dire mortel(c) précédent(d) part
ardently to see the end of that law suit—He sings | in tune | —
ardent(c) procès juste ‡
She sings | out of tune | —I will always blindly submit to your
faux ‡ § aveugle(e) se soumettre
decisions—Walk slowly—He has told me confidentially that he
marcher (g) confident (d) que

* Adjectives in *ant* derived from verbs, seldom have any adverbs; thus *charmingly* cannot be rendered in French by a single word, but an equivalent to it must be found; such as, *d'une manière charmante*.

† *Lent*, slow, makes *lentement*, slowly; and *présent*, present, makes *présentement*, presently. No other exception.

would not marry Miss C. before the death of her uncle—We

épouser

dine precisely at four o'clock.

précis(f)

heures

References.

(a) See 352. (b) See 354. (c) See 355. (d) See 356. (e) See note * to rule 354. (f) See note † to rule 355. (g) See note † to rule 356. † These adjectives are here used as adverbs. § When an adverb is modified by another, the modifying one is placed first; as, *Very politely, fort poliment*. The adverbs of time precede those of place, quantity, comparison, and manner; but the adverbs of affirmation, negation, or doubt, precede every other: Yes, he is almost always grossly deceived, *oui, il est presque toujours grossièrement trompé*.

Read, translate and parse.

Au pis aller nous ne perdrons que nos peines. J'ai un fort bon cheval, mais le vôtre est à tous égards préférable. Cette dame est habillée à la Française. Il consentit à mon départ à regret.

EXAMINATION.—352. Repeat the adverbs of quality and manner? 353. How are the adverbs of quality and manner formed from adjectives? 354. How are adverbs formed from adjectives masculine ending with a vowel? 355. If the adjective masculine ends with a consonant, how is the adverb formed? 356. How do adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent* become adverbs? *ref.* † What is the place of adverbs with respect to each other?

357. *Adverbs of affirmation, negation, doubt, comparison, and interrogation.*

Oui, yes

certes,

certainement,

} certainly

vraiment, truly

en vérité, indeed

à la vérité, in truth

<i>sans doute</i> , without doubt	<i>de la sorte</i> , } thus, so
<i>non, ne, ni</i> , } no, not, nor	<i>ainsi</i> , }
<i>pas, point</i> , }	<i>de même</i> , so
<i>ne plus</i> , no longer	<i>comme cela</i> , like that
<i>point du tout</i> , not at all	<i>ni plus ni moins</i> , neither more
<i>nullement</i> , by no means	nor less
<i>en nulle manière</i> , not in the	<i>plutôt</i> , rather
least	<i>pourquoi</i> , why?
<i>jamais</i> , never	<i>comment</i> , how?
<i>peut-être</i> , perhaps	<i>combien</i> , how much?
<i>probablement</i> , probably	<i>d'où vient</i> , whence comes it?
<i>raisonnablement</i> , very likely	<i>quand</i> , when
<i>aussi</i> , too, also, as	

358. The adverbs of affirmation and negation have no particular place, as they are generally used alone or in answer to what has been said before.

[359. *Observations on the government of some Adverbs.*—We have seen (349) that adverbs of quantity require the preposition *de* before a following noun. We must except *d'avantage* and *presque*, which admit of no regimen. *Loin* and *près* require *de* before a following verb in the infinitive. A few adverbs of manner ending in *ment* may have a preposition after them which is always the same as that of the adjective from which they are formed; as, *indépendamment de* . . , *préférentement à* . . , *relativement à* . .]

EXERCISE.

I think he will not willingly do it—He is a laconic man, he
(a) *faire*

always answers yes or no—If you pardon him, I will | pardon
répondre(a) (a) *si*

him | also—Perhaps you would do better not to refuse him—
(a) *faire* *de*

Why did you not write your letter?—How could you think so?
(a) (a) (a)

Whence comes it that one no longer sees that magnificence that
(a) (a)

shone every where at my departure?—Indeed you are not rea-
briller *départ* (a)

sonable—Certainly you must be tired—When shall I have the
 (a) *devoir* (a)
 pleasure of seeing you?—Yes, sister, I shall always shun the
ma sœur *éviter*
 society of that bad man—We certainly shall | go out | together—
méchant (a) *sortir*
 You will perhaps often meet him—Carthage was at last entirely
 (a) (b) *rencontrer* (b)
 ruined by the Romans—I always receive him friendly.
 (b) *amicalement*

References.

(a) See 357. (b) See reference †, page 234.

Read, translate and parse.

Comment se conduit-il à présent? Ils viendront probablement ce soir. Pourquoi vous fâchez-vous toujours? N'en doutez plus. Craignez-vous son ressentiment?—non, point du tout. Certes, ou je me trompe, ou l'affaire s'est passée ainsi.

EXAMINATION.—357. Repeat the adverbs of affirmation, negation, doubt, comparison, and interrogation? 358. Have adverbs of affirmation and negation any particular place in the sentence? 359. What sort of adverbs require a preposition after them?

Of the different degrees of signification in Adjectives and adverbs.

360. The different modifications of adjectives and adverbs are commonly called degrees of comparison.

361. The three degrees of comparison are, the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

362. The positive simply expresses the quality of a person or thing, without any increase or diminution: a fine woman, *une belle femme*.

OF THE COMPARATIVE.

363. The comparative draws a comparison between two objects.

364. When two persons or things are compared, the one is said to be equal, superior, or inferior to the other; thence three sorts of comparatives.

The comparative of equality,
The comparative of superiority,
The comparative of inferiority.

Of the Comparative of Equality.

365. The comparative of equality is formed by placing *aussi* (as) before the adjective or adverb, and *autant de* (as much) before a substantive.

Before an adjective.

The tulip is as beautiful as the rose, *la tulipe est aussi belle que la rose.*

Before an adverb.

He behaved as politely as his brother, *il se comporta aussi poliment que son frère.*

Before a noun.

He has as much politeness as his brother, *il a autant de politesse que son frère.*

366. The conjunctions *as* and *than* which join the two members of a comparison, are invariably expressed in French by *que*.

EXERCISE.

Delicacy of taste is a gift of nature as scarce as true genius—
délicatesse *don* (a) *rare* (b) *vrai*

The love of our neighbour is as necessary in society for the
 happiness of life, as in christianity for eternal salvation—Miss N.
bonheur *vie* (b) *christianisme* *salut*

has as much loveliness and gentleness as Miss P.—The colours
 (a) *amabilité* *douceur* (b)

of life in youth and age, appear as different as the face of
jeunesse *âge avancé* (a) (b)

nature in spring and winter—Your brother has as much docility
au printemps en hiver (a)

and affability as his cousin—At length this man, seeing the vessel
 (b) *enfin*

ready, descended from the craggy rocks with as much speed and
prêt *escarpé* (a) *vitesse*

agility as Apollo in the forests of Lycia flies across the precipices
 (b) *passer*

when he pursues the stags and wild boars, to pierce them with
poursuivre *sanglier* *de*

his arrows—This young hero has fought as gallantly as an old
flèche *héros* *combattre vaillamment* (b)

officer—It is as easy to do good as to do evil.
vétéran (a) *aisé* (c) *faire bien* (b) *mal*

References.

(a) See 365. (b) See 366. (c) See reference | page 181.

Read, translate and parse.

Ce livre est aussi beau que les autres. Made-
 moiselle L. est aussi grande que sa mère. Elle a
 autant d'esprit que de sagesse et de beauté.

EXAMINATION.—360. What do you mean by degrees of comparison? 361. What are the degrees of comparison, and how many are there? 362. What is the positive? 363. What do you mean by the comparative degree, and what is its office? 364. How many sorts of comparatives are there? 366. How do you translate into French the conjunctions *as* and *than*, when denoting a comparison?

Of the Comparative of Superiority.

367. The comparative of superiority is formed by placing *plus* (more) before an adjective or adverb and *plus de* (more) before a substantive.

Before an adjective.

She is more amiable than her sister, *elle est plus aimable que sa sœur.*

Before an adverb.

**She speaks more politely than
her sister.** *elle parle plus poliment que
sa sœur.*

Before a substantive.

She has more learning than *elle a plus de savoir que*
you. *vous.*

[368. The comparative degree is often formed in English by the addition of the letters *er* or *r*, to the adjective; as, *great*, *greater*; *large*, *larger*; *small*; *smaller*; as these additional letters stand for the adverb *more*, they must be rendered into French, by its corresponding adverb *plus*; as, *plus grand*, &c.

EXERCISE.

The simplicity of nature is more amiable than all the embellishments of art—Iron and steel are more useful than gold and silver—Homer was perhaps a greater genius than Virgil; b—

(a) (b) ornament
 (c) (b) utile
 (c) (b) Virgile

Virgil had incontestably more taste than Homer—The republic
 (a)
 of Athens was more illustrious than that of Lacedemon—Milton
Athènes (a) (b) *Lacédémone*
 appears to me more sublime than all the other epic poets—
paraître (a) (b) *épique poète*
 London is more populous than Paris—It is more noble to forgive
Londres (a) *peuplé* (b) (d) (a) *pardonner*
 than to avenge—They have a small fortune, and a smaller income
 * *se venger* *petit* (c)
 B. has a brighter imagination than C.—I am stronger than when
 (c) *brillant* (b) (c) *
 I was in America—My house is larger than yours—You make
Amérique (c) *grand* b
 greater progress than I should have thought.
 (c) * *penser*

References.

(a) See 367. (b) See 368. (c) See 368. (d) See reference § page 181. * When the word *than*, coming after a comparative of superiority or inferiority, serves to join two verbs together, it is expressed by *que de* before an infinitive, and by *que ne* before a verb in any tense of the indicative mood. Observe however, that *ne* is left out, when there is an adverb or a conjunction between *que* and the verb.

Read, translate and parse.

Elle est plus aimable qu'elle n'était il y a deux ans. Cette table est plus commode que la mienne. Il est plus difficile d'éviter la censure que d'obtenir des applaudissemens.

EXAMINATION.—367. How is the comparative of superiority formed? 368. What do you observe with respect to the addition of the letters *er* or *r* to some English adjectives? *ref.* * When is the word *than* coming after a comparative rendered into French by *que de*, *que ne*, or simply by *que* before a verb?

Of the Comparative of Inferiority.

369. The comparative of inferiority is formed, in affirmative sentences, by prefixing the adverb *moins* (less), to the adjective or adverb, and *moins de* to the substantive.

Before an adjective.

She is less amiable than her sister, *elle est moins aimable que sa sœur.*

Before an adverb.

She speaks less sensibly than her sister, *elle parle moins sensément que sa sœur.*

Before a substantive.

She has less avarice than her sister, *elle a moins d'avarice que sa sœur.*

370. In negative sentences, the comparative of inferiority is formed by placing *si* (so) before the adjective or adverb, and *tant de* or *autant de* (so much) before a substantive.

Before an adjective.

She is not so amiable as her sister, *elle n'est pas si aimable que sa sœur.*

Before an adverb.

She does not speak so sensibly as her sister, *elle ne parle pas si sensément que sa sœur.*

Before a substantive.

She has not so much avarice as her sister, *elle n'a pas autant or tant d'avarice que sa sœur.*

371. Three adjectives and three adverbs are irregular in the formation of their comparative.

Adj.	{	<i>bon</i> , good <i>petit</i> , little <i>mauvais</i> , bad	comp.	{	<i>meilleur</i> , better (never <i>plus bon</i>) <i>moindre</i> , or <i>plus petit</i> , less <i>pire</i> , or <i>plus mauvais</i> , worse
------	---	--	-------	---	---

<i>Adv.</i> {	<i>bien</i> , well	<i>comp.</i> {	<i>mieux</i> , better
	<i>mal</i> , bad		<i>pis</i> or <i>plus mal</i> , worse
	<i>peu</i> , little		<i>moins</i> , less.

EXERCISE.

The Thames is not so rapid as the Rhine—This fruit is good but
Tamise * *Rhin*
 this is better—Your horse is worse than mine—He is not so
 (e) (c) *
 learned as his brother—We are less happy than you think—John
savant (a) (d) *penser*
 has not so much docility and affability as his cousin—Autumn is
 (b) † *automne*
 not so varied as spring, but it is richer—A good king does not
 * *varié*
 consider so much his dignity and elevation, as the advantage and
 (b)
 happiness of his subjects—He is not so enlightened as he appears
 * *éclairé*
 | to be | —He is less polite and obliging than his sister—He
 (a) † *obligeant*
 writes less elegantly and correctly than the other—Sincere and
 (a) †
 virtuous men, who are always the same, and who subject them-
se soumettre
 selves to the rules of virtue, can never be so agreeable to princes
pouvoir *
 as those who flatter their prevailing passions—Women speak
dominant
 better than they write—Women do not speak better than they
 (c) (d) (e)
 write—The state was not then less agitated than it had been
 ‡ (a) *troublé*
 formerly.

References.

(a) See 309. (b) See 370. (c) See 371. (d) See reference * page 240. * In these and similar sentences *aussi* may be used instead of *si*: the ear must be consulted. † The adverb of comparison must be

repeated before every adjective or adverb compared, but before a substantive the preposition *de* is generally sufficient. † *Ne* is not used before the second verb when the first part of the sentence is negative.

Read, translate and parse.

Nous sommes moins attentifs que vous ne pensez.
L'Espagne n'est pas si tranquille que l'Angleterre.
Vous écrivez avec moins d'attention que votre sœur.
aussi faites-vous moins de progrès. Mademoiselle
S. a moins d'agrémens naturels que son amie, mais
elle est plus douce et plus aimable.

EXAMINATION.—369. How do you form the comparative of inferiority in affirmative sentences? 370. And in negative phrases? 371. Mention the adjectives and adverbs that form their comparative irregularly. *ref.* † Must the adverb of comparison be repeated before adjectives or adverbs compared? *ib.* † Is *ne* always used before the verb in the second member of a sentence?

OF THE SUPERLATIVE.

372. The superlative expresses the quality of a person or thing in a very high, or in its highest degree; hence two sorts of superlative, *the absolute* and *the relative*.

373. The superlative absolute is formed by prefixing to the adjective or adverb, one of the words, *très, fort, bien, infiniment, extrêmement, &c.* It is called absolute because it does not express any relation to any other object.

London is a very large city, *Londres est une très-grande ville,*
I am very happy, *je suis fort heureux.*
This book is extremely fine, *ce livre est extrêmement beau.*

374. The superlative relative is formed by prefixing the article, *le, la, les*, to the comparative of superiority or inferiority. It is called relative because it expresses a relation to other objects, and always implies a comparison.

London is the largest of cities, *Londres est la plus grande des villes.*
The least advantageous, *le moins avantageux.*

[375. This superlative is often formed in English by the addition of the syllables *est* or *st* to the adjective or adverb ; as, *great, greatest* ; *soon, soonest* : it is always rendered in French, by *le plus, la plus, les plus*, before the adjective or adverb ; as, *le plus grand, le plus tôt.*]

376. The following superlatives (adjectives and adverbs) are formed irregularly.

	Adjective.	Adverb.
The best,	<i>le meilleur</i>	<i>le mieux.</i>
the worst,	<i>le pire or le plus mauvais</i>	<i>le pis or le plus mal</i>
the least,	<i>le moindre or le plus petit</i>	<i>le moins.</i>

377. When the superlative relative precedes its substantive, the article serves for both ; if placed after it, the article must be repeated before each.

The handsomest women, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{les plus belles femmes.} \\ \textit{les femmes les plus belles.} \end{array} \right.$

[378. After a pronoun possessive the article is omitted ; as, my best friend, *mon meilleur ami.*]

EXERCISE.

The castle is the highest part of the city—The least excusable of
(c) ville (d) —————
all errors is that which is wilful—That landscape is very much
tout *volontaire* *paysage* (a) *ou*
varied, and infinitely agreeable—Artful men had found the key to
varié (a) *artistiques* *claf de*
his heart, and drew from it the most important secrets—Charity
tirer (b)
is the greatest virtue of a christian—His best friends know no-
(c) (e) *savoir*

thing of his secrets—The shortest follies are the best—M. is the
(c) *court* (d)

greatest miser in England—The Alps are the highest and steepest
(c) *avars* * *Alpes* (c) *haut* (c) *escarpé*

mountains in Europe—Alas ! said he, am I the son of the wisest
* ——— *hélas ! dit-il* (c)

and most patient of men ?—He is the most wicked and ignorant
(b) (b) †

of his family—The most ancient and general idolatry was the
(b) † ———

worship rendered to the sun—Self-love is the most persuasive
culte *amour-propre* (b)

of all flatteries—The most able men are not always the most
. (b) *habile gens* (b)

virtuous—You have done your duty without the least attention—
devoir sans (d) ———

Your excuse is bad, but hers is the worst that could be given—
(d)

Of all flowers, the anemone pleases me most—She is not the
anémone

most unhappy of the three sisters—She has the art of shedding
verser

tears when she is the least afflicted.

‡ *affligé*

References.

(a) See 373. (b) See 374. (c) See 375. (d) See 376. (e) See 378 and 376. * After a superlative *in* is rendered by *du, de la, and des*. † *Le plus, le moins, &c.* must be repeated before every adjective. ‡ The article before the superlative, remains undeclined, whenever there is no comparison implied.

Read, translate and parse.

Rome est la ville la plus célèbre du monde. Voilà le plus beau de vos ouvrages. Le style de Bossuet est extrêmement élevé, mais il est quelquefois dur et

rude. Je préfère une maison de campagne au plus beau palais.

EXAMINATION.—372. What do you mean by superlative? How many sorts of superlatives are there? 373. How is the superlative absolute formed, and why is it so called? 374. How is the superlative relative formed, and why is it called relative? 375. Is not the English superlative formed by the addition of *st* or *est*? 376. Enumerate those adjectives and adverbs which form their superlative irregularly? 377. In what case is the article repeated with a superlative? 378. Is the article used before a superlative when accompanied by a possessive pronoun? *ref.* ‡ When is the article undeclined before a superlative?

GENERAL EXERCISE

On the Comparative and Superlative Degrees.

Riches are more dangerous than poverty is troublesome—I am
(a)

more satisfied with his conduct than with yours—The most beauti-
de *

ful that there is, perhaps in any language, is that which Pope has
qu'il y ait *langue*

drawn from the Alps, in his essay on criticism—He is more inclined
tirer *essai critique* *disposé*

to hurt than to oblige—A good child is not less respectful to his
à nuire (b) *envers*

masters than to his parents—I am taller than you by two inches.
* *grand* † *de* *pouce*

The way from London to Paris by Brighton and Dieppe is shorter
route *par*

than by Calais, by ninety miles—The more you will study, the
† *de* *mille* ∞ ‡ *étudier* ∞

more you will improve—The shorter the day is, the longer is the
 ‡ *profiter* ∞ ‡ ∞ ‡

night—The fewer desires, the more peace—The more I know
 ∞ ‡ *moins* ∞ ‡ ∞ ‡

mankind, the less I value life—He has a daughter the most amiable
les hommes ∞ ‡ *estimer* §

able—He urged reasons the most powerful—She saw in their
faire valoir § *fort* ¶

situation, danger the most alarming, and in the behaviour of G.
 §

selfishness the most inexcusable—An apprehension the most
égoïsme § *crainte*

painful took possession of Cecilia—The more I read the works of
vif ¶ *s'emparer* ∞ ‡

alchymists, the more I am persuaded they are equally obscure,
 ∞ ‡ *se persuader*

and that it is impossible to understand them, even when
même dans les endroits où

they are the most explicit—The best instruction we can give to
 (c) *clair*

our children, is good example.

References.

(a) See ref. * page 240. (b) See ref. * page 240. and observe that when the first infinitive is preceded by *à*, the word *than* is rendered by *qu'à*. (c) See ref. ‡ page 245. * When an adjective used comparatively requires a preposition before the next substantive, the same preposition is repeated after *que*. If the second part of the comparison is dependent on the same adjective. † The preposition *by* is expressed by *de* after a comparative. ‡ *The more, the less*, either repeated, or used by opposition to each other are not translated in French by the superlative but by the comparative, *plus, moins*: the more I know him, the less I esteem him; *plus je le connais, moins je l'estime*. When the comparison is made with two substantives or two adjectives, the order of the words is as follows, 1. *plus* or *moins*; 2. the nominative to the verb; 3. the verb; 4. the adjective or substantive governed by the verb: the more difficult a thing is, the more honorable, *plus une chose est difficile, plus elle est honorable*: these kind of sentences are susceptible of a different translation, by transposing the two members, and placing the adverb *d'autant*, before the first comparative, and *que* after it; as *une chose est d'autant plus honorable qu'elle est plus difficile*. § The article definite must precede the substantive in French, before a superlative.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

379. The conjunction is an indeclinable part of speech, which serves to join words or sentences together: as, *Cæsar and Alexander were two great captains; the father or son will do it; I give you warning, that you may be ready; I shall give it you if you come.*

[In the above sentences the words *and*, *or*, *that*, and *if*, which join the different parts or members of sentences, are conjunctions.]

380. A French conjunction always governs one mood in preference to any other.

381. *The following conjunctions govern the indicative mood.*

<i>A cause que</i> , because	<i>puisque</i> , since, as
<i>à condition que</i> , on condition that	<i>lorsque</i> , } when
<i>à ce que</i> , according as	<i>quand</i> , }
<i>ainsi</i> , thus	<i>mais</i> , but
<i>ainsi que</i> , }	<i>néanmoins</i> , nevertheless
<i>de même que</i> , } as, just as	<i>ni</i> , neither, nor
<i>à cause que</i> , }	<i>non seulement</i> , not only
<i>parce que</i> , }	<i>ou</i> , or
<i>car</i> , }	<i>outre que</i> , }
<i>à mesure que</i> , in proportion as	<i>d'ailleurs</i> , }
<i>après que</i> , after that, when	<i>par conséquent</i> , consequently
<i>au reste</i> , as for the rest	<i>pendant que</i> , }
<i>attendu que</i> , as	<i>tandis que</i> , }
<i>autant que</i> , as much as	<i>peut-être</i> , perhaps
<i>aussitôt que</i> , }	<i>pourquoi</i> , }
<i>sitôt que</i> , }	<i>que</i> , }
<i>dès que</i> , }	<i>que</i> , that
<i>d'abord que</i> , }	<i>selon que</i> , }
<i>d'autant que</i> , whereas, for as much as	<i>suivant que</i> , }
<i>au lieu que</i> , whereas	<i>surtout</i> , especially
<i>comme</i> , as	<i>si</i> , if
<i>comme si</i> , as if, as though	<i>sinon que</i> , except that
<i>depuis que</i> , since, ever since	<i>sinon</i> , else
	<i>tant que</i> , as long as

<i>toutefois,</i>	} yet, however	<i>joint que,</i> added to that
<i>pourtant,</i>		<i>aussi long-temps que,</i> as
<i>cependant</i>		long as
<i>vu que,</i> seeing that		

EXERCISE.

Form your mind, heart, and taste, while you are young—You
(a)

have had several proofs of my affection, because you have done
plusieurs preuves (a) *faire*

your duty—I was vexed at her impatience, yet I granted her
piqué de (a) *r. accorder*

request—I have not seen him since his return—Since affectation
demande (a) (a)

is a fault, avoid every thing that may have the appearance of it.
défaut *pouvoir*

He not only maintained the tenets of the church because they
(a) *défendre* *dogme* (a)

were ancient, but he adhered to them with the zeal of a theolo-
(a) *adhérer*

gian—If you are convinced of the necessity of these two
(a) *convaincre*

accomplishments, my admonitions are unnecessary—While they
talent *avis* *inutile* (a)

were abroad, a dreadful plague depopulated the cities at home—
au dehors *terrible peste ravager* *au dedans*

I learn from the letters of my friends, as well as by common
par *aussi bien que* *publique*

report, that you are indefatigable in all kinds of good offices—
rumour (a) *genre*

He knows your partiality to his enemy, nevertheless he has ac-
connaître *partialité pour* (a)

cepted your mediation—He has neither friends nor foes.
(a) * *ennemi*

References.

(a) See 381. * This conjunction requires *ne* before its verb ; the noun which follows this conjunction takes no article.

Read, translate and parse.

✎ In parsing a conjunction, mention the mood it governs.

Aussitôt que vous aurez reçu sa lettre, mandez-le moi. Il n'a ni esprit ni jugement. Vous me l'avez dit et cependant vous le niez.

EXAMINATION.—379. What is a conjunction? 381. What are the conjunctions that govern the indicative mood? *ref.* *
What is to be observed with respect to the conjunction *si*?

382. Conjunctions governing the subjunctive mood.

<i>Que</i> , that, (in order that)	<i>non que</i> ,	} not that
<i>afin que</i> ,	<i>non pas que</i> ,	
<i>pour que</i> ,	<i>ce n'est pas que</i> ,	} I grant that
<i>avant que</i> , before	<i>à la bonne heure que</i> ,	
<i>jusqu'à ce que</i> , till	that	
<i>quoique</i> ,	<i>hors que</i> ,	} save that
<i>bien que</i> ,	<i>hormis que</i> ,	
<i>encore que</i> ,	<i>excepté que</i> , except that	
<i>pourvu que</i> ,	<i>supposé que</i> , suppose that	
<i>moyennant que</i> ,	<i>Dieu veuille que</i> , God grant that	
<i>au cas que</i> ,	<i>plaise à Dieu que</i> ,	} would to
<i>en cas que</i> ,	<i>plût à Dieu que</i> ,	
<i>soit que</i> , whether	<i>à Dieu ne plaise que</i> , God forbid that	
<i>sans que</i> , without	<i>à moins que</i> , unless	
<i>sinon que</i> , but that, except that	<i>de peur que</i> , lest	
<i>loin que</i> ,	<i>de crainte que</i> , for fear	
<i>bien loin que</i> ,	<i>pour peu que</i> ,	} if ever so
<i>nonobstant</i> ,	<i>si peu que</i> ,	
<i>malgré que</i> ,	little	

EXERCISE.

The general began the action though he had not yet assembled
r.engager (a) *

all his troops—I shall not set out till I have dined—I will go to
partir (a) à
 town to-morrow provided you accompany me—Though you study
Londres (a) (a)
 much and take great pains, you make very little progress—I
†beaucoup *progrès*
 shall not yet finish this book, unless you advise me—God grant
† *conseiller* (a)
 you may succeed—For fear it should rain, I will take the carri-
réussir *†* *
 age—If you should see your sister and speak to her, give her my
 (b) *†*
 compliments—Though you should have the best master in Eng-
 (a) *
 land, if you do not learn your grammar well, you will never speak
 (b) *apprendre*
 good French—God forbid I should blame your conduct—He dares
 (a) *
 not do it for fear she should be scolded—We will not go unless
† * *grondé* *†*
 she invites us—I am going to write to your sister, though she
 * (a)
 never answers me—I will explain to you every difficulty, that you
 * *toutes les* (a)
 may not be disheartened in your undertaking—In case you
 * *décourager* *entreprise* (a)
 want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you.
 **avoir besoin de*

References.

(a) See 382. (b) See 381. * When the verb of the principal proposition is in the present or future, the verb governed in the subjunctive must be in the present if we mean to express a present or future, or in the perfect if we mean to express a past: I wish he may come, *je désire qu'il vienne*; I do not believe he has received his money, *je ne crois pas qu'il ait reçu son argent*.—When the first verb is in any of the past tenses or conditional, the second verb must be in the imperfect subjunctive, when we wish to express a present or future, but the pluperfect subjunctive is used to express a past: I was afraid that you would come too late, *je craignais que vous vinsiez trop tard*; I did not know that you had studied astronomy, *je ne savais pas que vous eussiez étudié l'astronomie*. † The conjunction *que*

is elegantly used after *et* in the second part of a sentence, instead of repeating the conjunctions *puisque*, *quand*, *quoique*, *si*, &c.—In that case *que* always requires the subjunctive. † The conjunctions *à moins que*, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, require *ne* with the verb, which in English is not negative, and *ne pas* when the verb is negative; unless he comes, *à moins qu'il ne vienne*; unless he does not come, *à moins qu'il ne vienne pas*.

Read, translate and parse.

Soit que je lise ou que j'écrive, je ne puis souffrir qu'on fasse du bruit auprès de moi. Quoiqu'elle ait deux ans de moins que sa sœur, elle a beaucoup plus de talens. Supposé qu'il se soit trompé, ce n'est pas sa faute.

EXAMINATION.—382. Repeat the conjunctions which govern the subjunctive mood in French. *ref.* * What tense of the subjunctive do you use after a conjunction? *ib.* † What conjunction is used instead of repeating the preceding one, in the second part of a sentence? *ib.* ‡ What are the conjunctions which govern *ne* before the next verb?

383. Conjunctions governing the infinitive.

[384. Such conjunctions as are distinguished from prepositions only by being followed by a verb, and those ending in *de* require the infinitive.]

385. The present of the infinitive is always used after the following conjunctions.

<i>A,</i>	} to, in, of	<i>jusqu'à,</i>	} save
<i>de,</i>		<i>sauf à,</i>	
<i>pour,</i>	} to, for, in order to	<i>de peur de,</i>	} for fear of
<i>afin de,</i>		<i>de crainte de,</i>	
<i>après,</i>	after	<i>faute de,</i>	for want of
<i>sans,</i>	without	<i>au lieu de,</i>	instead of
<i>par,</i>	by	<i>bien loin de,</i>	very far from

<i>excepté de,</i> except to	<i>à moins de,</i> }	unless
<i>avant de,</i> }	<i>à moins que de</i> }	
<i>avant que de,</i> } before	<i>plutôt que de,</i> rather than to	

386. The two conjunctions *for* and *after*, generally require the verb in the perfect of the infinitive.

He has been punished for having *il a été puni pour avoir négligé ses devoirs.*

387. When both verbs have the same nominative, that which comes after the conjunction, expressed or understood, is elegantly put in the infinitive, and the conjunction *que* is changed into *de*.

I shall see him before I go into the country, *je le verrai avant d'aller à la campagne* (instead of *avant que j'aille.*)

[388. The French can never say *d'ayant, sans ayant, après s'étant, pour l'ayant fait*; for such like expressions the infinitive present is used, *d'avoir, sans avoir, après s'être, pour l'avoir fait.*]

EXERCISE.

We cannot betray truth without rendering ourselves guilty—
trahir (a) *coupable*

What pleasure I took in hearing her!—If I have not accepted
* *entendre*

the bargain, it was for fear of losing—At last I began to long
marché (a) P. (a) *désirer*

for my native country, that I might repose after my travels
de revoir natal (c) *pouvoir se reposer voyage*

and fatigues, in the places where I had spent my earliest years,
lieu premier

and gladden my old companions with the recital of my adventures.
réjouir par

After having examined my legacy with more attention than it
(b) *n'en*

deserved, I left it to the relations who had envied it so much—
mériter P. abandonner

He is continually playing instead of learning his lesson—Their
(a)

conversations frequently turn upon the delicacies of their language;
souvent rouler *langue*

and they have an academy which is employed in fixing it—After
* (b)

I had done my exercise I went away.

thème *r. s'en aller*

References.

(a) See 385. (b) See 386. (c) See 387. * In coming before a verb, is generally expressed by *à*.

Read, translate and parse.

On ne peut être heureux sans pratiquer la vertu.
Au lieu de vous abandonner à la douleur, roidissez-
vous contre votre mauvaise fortune. Nous nous re-
tirâmes de peur d'être surpris. Il le fit pour le con-
trarier.

EXAMINATION.—384. What conjunctions are always used with the present of the infinitive? 386. What tense of the infinitive do you generally use with the conjunctions *for* and *after*? 387. When both verbs have the same nominative, is not the infinitive elegantly used instead of the subjunctive after the conjunction?

Of the Conjunction que.

389. The chief use of the conjunction *que*, is to unite two propositions, the *principal* with the *subordinate*. In this sentence: *Je crois qu'il est savant*; *je crois* is the principal, and *il est savant* is the subordinate, proposition; *que* is the conjunction which unites them.

390. When the idea expressed by the subordinate proposition implies certainty with respect to the principal proposition, the verb that follows *que* must be in the indicative; if it implies uncertainty, the subjunctive must be used.

I think he will come, *je crois qu'il viendra.*
 I question whether he will come, *je doute qu'il vienne.*

[391. The uncertainty implied in the subordinate proposition proceeds, either from the principal verb expressing it itself, or from that verb being used negatively or interrogatively.]

392. If any verb whatever be used either negatively or interrogatively, the subjunctive will always follow the conjunction *que*.

I do not think he will come, *je ne crois pas qu'il vienne.*
 Do you think he will come? *pensez-vous qu'il vienne?*

[393. If however the interrogation expresses neither doubt nor uncertainty, the indicative is to be used: thus we say, *croyez-vous qu'il pleuvra?* *ne croyez-vous pas qu'il pleuvra?* but if the subjunctive be used, thus, *croyez-vous qu'il pleuve?* *ne croyez-vous pas qu'il pleuve?* the idea of doubt is implied; and these four sentences may be explained thus, 1st. I know it will rain, don't you think so too? 2nd. It will certainly rain, why will you not believe it? 3rd. I know not whether it will rain, what is your opinion? 4th. I doubt whether it will rain or no, what do you think of it? The construction of such phrases depends therefore on the sense intended to be conveyed by the speaker, as for instance; *j'aspire à une charge qui est agréable*, *j'aspire à une charge qui soit agréable*; *préférez des expressions où la naïveté est unie à la beauté*; *préférez des expressions où la naïveté soit unie à la beauté*, &c.]

394. The conjunction *que* governs the subjunctive after verbs implying *wish* and *desire*, *will*, *command*, *permission*, *consent*, *denying*, *prohibition*, *intention*, *doubt*, *fear*, *surprise* and *astonishment*, *joy*, *sorrow*, *regret*, *despair*, and, more generally speaking, after verbs which express some passion or sentiment of the mind (the verb *to hope* excepted), and after tho

hearts are over, before you return to Venice—I insist that you
chaleur passé (k) Vénise prétendre(c)

should submit to it immediately—Whether God sends us affliction
soit que (k)

tions, or overloads with prosperity, we must equally bless his
‡ combler de ————pl. devoir

providence—I did not know that the king was ill—The king knows
§ ignore § ignore

that the minister is guilty—I am sure nobody will pity him—
(a)

If I perceive that you frequent bad company, you will lose my
mauvaise compagnie

friendship—The Egyptians did not doubt that certain plants were
(f)

divinities—He does not deny that he is your friend.
(f)

References.

(a) See 390. (b) See 392. (c) See 394. (d) See 395. (e) See 396. (f) See 398. (g) See 396 and 397. (h) See 390 and 392. (i) See 392 and 393. (k) See 392. * When the conjunction *que* begins the sentence, and the verb by which it is governed comes after it, the subjunctive must be used. † The conjunction understood in the English must be expressed in French. ‡ The conjunction must be expressed in French by *que*; see reference † page 251. § The verb *ignorer*, not to know, having a negative meaning governs the subjunctive when used without a negation: when employed negatively, the sense becomes affirmative, and therefore the indicative is used. || The conjunction *que* governs the subjunctive when it comes after *if* or *whether*.

Read, translate and parse.

Je vous promets que vous le verrez. Je tremble qu'il ne périsse. Si je croyais qu'il fît beau-temps, j'irais à la campagne. Supposé qu'il se soit trompé, ce n'est pas sa faute. Loin que cela soit vrai, rien n'est plus faux. Je doute que vous y gagniez beaucoup.

EXAMINATION.—389. What is the chief use of the conjunction *que*? 390. When does it govern the indicative, and when the subjunctive? 391. Whence does that uncertainty proceed? 392. Is not the subjunctive always used after verbs used negatively and interrogatively? 393. Are there no instances in which either the subjunctive or indicative may be used? 394. What are the verbs which require the subjunctive when followed by *que*? 395. Enumerate those impersonal verbs which require the subjunctive. 396. What do you observe concerning the verbs *empêcher* &c.? 398. Mention the verbs which, though negatively used, require *ne* before the subjunctive. *ref.* * When the conjunction *que* begins the sentence, what do you observe? *ib.* § What is the irregularity concerning the verb *ignover*?

Of the Subjunctive after the relative qui, &c.

399. When the relative pronoun and its antecedent come both between two verbs, the second should be used in the subjunctive.

He looks for a tutor that can teach French, *il cherche un précepteur qui puisse enseigner le Français.*

400. When the relative has for its antecedent a pronoun indeterminate, such as *personne, aucun, rien, qui que ce soit*, the subjunctive must be used, as in the preceding rule.

I have seen nothing reprehensible in his conduct, *je n'ai rien vu qu'on puisse blâmer dans sa conduite.*

401. When the pronouns *qui, que*, have for their antecedent a noun in the superlative relative, or these adjectives, *le premier, le dernier, l'unique*, the next verb must be in the subjunctive.

He is the most learned man I know, *c'est l'homme le plus savant que je connaisse.*

My son is the only person on whom I can rely, *mon fils est le seul sur qui je puisse compter.*

[Several grammarians are of opinion that in this case the indicative may be used with equal propriety.]

402. The indicative or subjunctive are indifferently used after *qui*, in exclamative sentences, when the antecedent comes after the verb *to be* preceded by *quel*.

What is the nation that has no religious worship? *quel est le peuple qui n'a point or n'ait point, de culte religieux?*

EXERCISE.

I have always looked upon gratitude as the most exalted principle
regarder sublime

ple that can actuate the heart of man—We wish for a peace with
(c) animer désirer

which all parties may be satisfied—There is nothing in all this
dont (a) parti

which ought to offend you—I know very few people who can do
(a) devoir peu de (a)

it—I know nobody who is more capable of it—This is the best
(b) (c)

reason you have given me—This flower is the finest that I have
(c)

ever seen—There is nothing good of which God is not the author.
(b) de dont

I could not forbear laughing heartily at your letter, and the com-
† s'empêcher

missions you are pleased to honour me with; you desire me to
dont vouloir bien

buy you a Greek slave who is master of a thousand good qualities.
(a) avoir excellent

I know no nation that has a better government—Of whomsoever
point de (b)

you speak, avoid slander—What man, that has any learning, does
quel est l'homme un peu instruit qui

not know these privileges have been surreptitiously obtained?—
(d) par surprise

This author is the first that mentions it—He is the most conceited
(c) faire mention de suffisant

man I ever met with.
rencontrer

References.

(a) See 399. (b) See 400. (c) See 401. (d) See 402. * The rule 398 also applies to nouns taken indeterminately. † After the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, and *pouvoir*, the second negation *pas* or *point* is often elegantly suppressed.

Read, translate and parse.

Vous méritez un cœur qui soit tout à vous. Il ne trouve aucun domestique qui veuille le servir. C'est le seul, l'unique souvenir qui puisse nous consoler. Il est peu de plaisirs qui ne soient suivis de quelques remords.

EXAMINATION.—399. On what occasions do the relatives *qui*, *que*, govern the subjunctive? 400. Is the verb used in the subjunctive after an indeterminate pronoun and the relative *qui*? 401. Does the superlative require the subjunctive after it? 402. In what case is the subjunctive or indicative indifferently used? *ref.* † What are the verbs after which the second negation may be omitted?

OF INTERJECTIONS.

403. Interjections are words which express the passions or emotions of the mind. The principal are,

Of grief, *ah! hélas!*
 of fear, *ha! hê!*
 of joy, *ah! bon! O!*
 of aversion, *fi! fi donc!*
 of applauding, *bravo!*

[An essential point in the use of interjections, is never to place them between words which custom has made inseparable.]

[404. *Ah!* is used for almost all the emotions of the mind, but it is differently uttered according to the emotions which it expresses.]

EXERCISE.

How ! said I, is it not possible to make people obedient, without
 (a)*eh quoi!* P. *de soumettre* (b)
 starving them to death ?—I searched every corner of that savage
faire mourir de faim P. *de tous côtés*
 and frightful island, but alas ! I found in it nothing but sorrow—
horrible (a)*hélas !* P. *douleur*
 Sir, said I, I do not desire to give this poor woman any further
 P. *qu'on fasse* * *de la*
 trouble—For shame, said he, a man of your humanity would make
peine à *fi donc* P. *vous avez de l'humanité vous ne seriez*
 a bad trooper ; I must acquit myself of my commission—For
pas bon à faire un exempt *de*
 heaven's sake, I replied, have some regard to entreaty, and abate
grâce (a) P. *égard* *rière se relâcher*
 a little of your severity, in consideration of the present, which
devoir *favor*
 this lady will offer—Oh ! that is another affair, said he, that is
ou vous offrir (a) *voilà*
 what we call a figure of rhetoric well placed ; now let us see ;
ce qui s'appelle (a)*eh bien ! voyons*
 what has she to give me ?

References.

(a) See 403. (b) See 385. * This adjective before its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

Fi du plaisir que la crainte peut corrompre ! He
 bien ! mon enfant, comment se porte ta mère ? Eh !
 Seigneur, excusez sa jeunesse imprudente ! Ah ! je
 respire, enfin. Oh ! jeunesse imprudente ! Hélas !
 petits moutons, que vous êtes heureux !

EXAMINATION.—403. What is an interjection ? 404. What
 are we to observe with respect to their places in the sentence ?

A P P E N D I X :

*Containing Exercises, on some of the Peculiarities
of the French Language; with explanatory
Notes, at the end of each Exercise.*

EXERCISE 1.

Prince Gallitzin resigned the command of the army to Count
 (a) *remettre* (a)
 Romanzow, and returned to Petersburg—Racine's *Andromache*
 (f) *Andromaque*
 is the first tragedy in which a modern author has shewn himself
se montrer
 the rival of the great tragic writers of Athens—Miltons are
Athènes (d)
 scarce now-a-days—Learn, Mr. Philosopher, that it is too late
 (a) *il n'est plus temps*
 for reflection when the folly is committed—The language of
de réfléchir *faire une sottise*
 Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, will live for ever in their writings.
 (c) . . (c) *Virgile* (c) *éternellement par écrit*
 We had no personal acquaintance with the Pinkertons—Prince
connaître personnellement (b)
 Alexander, brother to the two Sobieskis, who had been carried
 (a) *de* (b) *enlevé*
 away from Poland, demanded satisfaction for the injury done to
en Pologne demander satisfaction *affront*
 his family—Tasso's *Jerusalem Delivered*, and Ariosto's *Orlando*
 (e) (f) *Délivrée* (e) *Roland le*
Furieux, are two poems which will be for ever the glory of
à jamais

Italy—A parity of sentiments often bring together men of a very
ressemblance des sentimens rapprocher
different condition ; | that is the reason why | Augustus, Mæcenas,
voilà pourquoi (c) Auguste, (c) Mécène,
Scipio, Richelieu, and Condé, | lived in the greatest intimacy |
(c) Scipio (c) vivre familièrement
with men of genius—Saint Huberti charmed all Paris by the
gens d'esprit (g)
melody of her voice—The Rhone is the most rapid river in
(h)
Europe—The eruption of Vesuvius is often the cause of great
(h) Vésuve causer souvent
devastations—I have passed through Holland, Germany, and
ravage (h) Hollande (h) Allemagne
Poland—Genoa is a maritime country—Geneva was a small
(h) Gènes Genève
republic between France, Switzerland, and Savoy—Olympus,
(h) Suisse (h) Savoie (h) Olympe
Pindus, Parnassus, and Helicon, are famous mountains among
(h) Pinde (h) Parnasse (h) célèbre
poets—I intend to go to Italy in the spring—I hope to go next
avoir dessein (k) au
year to the East Indies, to Indostan; from thence I will go to
(l) Indes Orientales (l)
Mexico and Virginia, afterwards I shall return to France—He
(l) Mexique (l) (k)
is a man who likes to travel; he was last year in Italy; he
voyager (k)
comes now from Russia; he will stay this winter in England;
(k) rester (k)
and he will go next spring to Germany; after which he intends
Allemagne
to set sail for America, and after having spent two years in
mettre à voile (h) Amérique
Mexico, Peru, and Brazil, he will thence set out for China and
(l) (l) Pérou, (l) Brésil (h)

Japan—The emperors of Germany and Russia, with the king of
 (h) *Japon* (m) (m)
 Prussia, are gone to the Congress—Flanders has often been the
Congrès (h) *Flandre* sing.
 theatre of war between France and Germany; and the territory
 (h) (h)
 of Mantua, Milan, and Parma, have often been desolated
 (h) *Mantouan* (h) *Milanaïs* (h) *Parmesan* *ravager*
 by the wars between France and Austria—Sicily is the granary
 (h) *Autriche* (h) *Sicile* *grenier*
 of Italy—Touraine is considered as the garden of France—The
 (h) (h) *Touraine* *regardé comme* (h)
 Apollo di Belvedere and the Venus di Medici are valuable
Apollon de *Vénus de Médicis* *précieux*
 remains of antiquity—Admiral Vernon, a man of more courage
 (a) (a) (a) *brave*
 than experience, was sent to command a fleet in the West Indies,
expérimenté *Indes occidentales*
 to distress the enemy in that part of the globe—Maaillons
harasser *sur* (d)
 are very uncommon at this time—The impious writings of
rare
 Leucippus and Diagoras have perished with them—Now that we
 (c) *Leucippe* (c)
 possess the art of immortalizing the follies of the human mind,
éterniser *extravagances*
 the dangerous dreams of Hobbes and Spinoza will never be forgot-
rêverie (c) (c) *rester à jamais*
 ten—A foreigner who was at the Parisian Opera, otherwise
étranger *Opéra de Paris*
 called the Royal Academy of Music, thought the ladies who
croire
 composed the academy, were among the first at court—Having
être des premiers *de*
 desired his neighbour to tell him the names of those ladies of
prier de *apprendre* *dame de*
 fashion, the latter answered, the queen of Crete is Pelissier; she
condition *celui-ci* (m) (g) *son*

was originally a stocking-mender : the other, who represents the
premier état était d'être ravaudeuse

princess her sister, is Hermance ; her father was a cobbler—I
 (g) *savetier*

have crossed the Thames several times in a boat—Europe is
traverser (h) *Tamisse* (h)

bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north, by Asia on the east,
au (h) *Asie à*

by the Mediterranean Sea on the south, which divides it from
Méditerranée

Africa, and by the Atlantic Ocean on the west, which separates it
 (h) *Afrique Atlantique ouest*

from America.

(h) *Amérique*

References.

(a) The article definite precedes nouns of dignities, titles, and liberal professions, followed by proper names, or preceded by the words, *my lord, my lady, &c.* : Admiral Nelson, *L'Amiral Nelson* ; My Lord Archbishop, *Monseigneur l'Archevêque*. (b) Proper names of persons, though applied to several, do not take the sign of the plural when they only serve to name persons ; I did not see the Delvilles ; *Je n'ai pas vu les Delville*. (c) The article plural is emphatically used before names of men famous in history ; but the names do not take the sign of the plural : the greatest orators, such as Cicero and Demosthenes, *les plus grands orateurs, tels que les Cicéron et les Démosthène*. (d) Proper names take both the article and the sign of the plural when they are employed as common substantives : Virgils are scarce now-a-days, *les Virgiles sont rares à présent*. (e) The article definite precedes the names of some Italian poets and painters, *Le Tasse, l'Arioste, le Titien, &c.* some are used without, as *Métastase, Raphaël, &c.* No rule can be given. (f) When a proper name is used to denote an individual distinction, they are preceded by the article definite ; The *Méropé* of Voltaire, *La Méropé de Voltaire*. (g) The article *la* is sometimes used before the names of actresses and dancers, when they are spoken of rather in a contemptuous manner, otherwise *Madame* and *Mademoiselle* is preferred. (h) The names of the four parts of the world, of countries, provinces, rivers and mountains, take the article in French ; France is a beautiful kingdom, *la France est un beau royaume*. (i) Provinces, kingdoms, &c. having the same name with their capital cities, do not take the article ; Naples is a delightful country, *Naples est un pays délicieux*. (k) When the sentence expresses the going to a country, (in Europe) the living in it, or the coming from it, the article is supplied by the prepositions *en* and *de* ; we live in England, *nous demeurons en Angleterre* : I came from Portugal, *Je viens de Portugal* : we are going to Switzerland, *nous allons en Suisse*. (l) If the country mentioned is not in Europe, the article is used ; they go to China, *ils vont à la Chine* : we arrive from Jamaica,

nous arrivons de la Jamaïque. (m) Nouns of countries are used without any article after a noun of dignity or title; the king of France, *le roi de France*: or more generally after the names of commodities, as *wines, silks, &c.*, the noun is then used adjectively; Italian silk, *les soies d'Italie*.

EXERCISE 2.

This lace cost me a guinea a yard—Eggs have been sold as
dentelle guinée (a) verge se vendre

high as two shillings a dozen—We give our servant twenty
*jusqu'à (a) dousains * domestique*

guineas a year—My master comes twice a week—As soon as he
(b) an deux fois (b)

could mount his horse, he resumed his wonted labours, always
pouvoir monter à cheval reprendre ordinaire fatigue

rising before the sun, tiring three horses a day, and exercising
lasser (b) faire faire l'exercice à

soldiers—She gives her music master a guinea a lesson—This
maître de musique (b) leçon

lodging is too dear at three guineas a week, but I will take it at
logement (b)

ten guineas a month—Corn usually sells by the bushel, cloth by
(b) grats (c) boisseau drap

the yard, and sugar by the pound—Five hundred men are con-
(c) verge (c) livres

stantly employed in Mr. R's manufactory; those who work by
manufacture

the day receive, each of them, one guinea a week for their salary;
(c) (b)

but those who work by the piece, receive no less than six pounds
(c) de

a month—Wine which sold last year for two shillings a bottle,
(b) se vendre (a)

sells now for half a crown—Jealousy is a confused mixture of
un petit écu mélange

love, hatred, fear, and despair—If I were to give my opinion
(d) désespoir devoir

upon such an exhausted subject, I should join to his other
épuisé
 qualifications, an evenness of behaviour—Cicero was no less a
qualité égalité (d) caractère (e)
 philosopher than an orator—He is an unhappy Frenchman who
(e) c'est (e) Français
 seeks an asylum where he may end his days in peace—An author
chercher
 complained one day, that his bookseller only gave him a crown
se plaindre de ce que ne que donner un écu
 a sheet for his novels : that is shocking, answered his friend,
de la feuille de affreux
 I think you disgrace the profession, by lowering it to a crown a
deshonorer ravalier six francs
 sheet ; it would be better to starve——When they are at
(a) valoir mieux mourir de faim à
 work, or when they bring their goods to market, their hair is
travailler dures elles enveloppent
 confined with a silk net ; but on holidays, they dress in a very
leurs cheveux de (f) filet les jours de fête de
 picturesque manner—Have the goodness to bring my work-bag ;
pittoresque (f) sac
 I left it in my room—If you remember Ovid's *Metamorphoses*,
se souvenir
 you knew Procris, the fond wife of Cephalus, made her husband
tendre épouse Céphale faire présent (g)
 a present of an unerring javelin—Mere societies of
qui ne manque jamais son but simple (d)
 merchants have sometimes fitted out large fleets, and brought
équiper opérer
 about the most important revolutions.

References.

(a) The article indefinite, which is used in English before nouns of measure, weight, and number, is translated into French by the definite article ; he sells his tea eight shillings a pound, *il vend son thé huit shillings la livre*. (b) The preposition *par* (per) is used instead of the article indefinite, before substantives that denote time, or in mentioning what is paid for salary, wages, attendance, and admittance to public places ; three guineas a month, *trois guinées par mois* : so much a lesson, *tant par leçon*. (c) When the price

of the thing sold or hired is not mentioned, the preposition *by*, used in English, must be rendered by the definite article, in the dative case; to work by the hour, by the day, *travailler à l'heure, à la journée*: to sell by the pound, *vendre à la livre*. (d) A substantive used to qualify a preceding noun, is joined to that noun by the preposition *de*; a day of happiness, *un jour de bonheur*. (e) A substantive used adjectively takes no article, except when it is itself qualified by an adjective, or preceded by the impersonal *c'est*; his father is a physician, *son père est médecin*: his father is a skilful physician, *son père est un médecin habile*: he is an officer, *c'est un officier*. (f) In English the qualifying substantive is often used before the qualified, and the preposition *of* is omitted; as, *silk stockings*; in French, the order must be altered; *des bas de soie*. When upon the order of the substantives being inverted in English, the sentence requires one of the prepositions *with* or *for*, they are rendered by *à*; the powder-mills, that is, the mills for powder, *les moulins à poudre*. (g) The French language does not admit the suppression of the preposition *à* before a noun in the dative, in the same manner as *to* is left out in English, when that noun is followed by the accusative of the verb.

EXERCISE 3.

Nobody was satisfied; father, uncles, and brother, all thought
 (a) (a) (a) *se croire*
 themselves neglected—I have traversed these desolate countries
négligé *parcourir* *provinces ruinées*
 and have beheld nothing but solitude and desertion—Bribes,
voir (a) *abandon* (a) *present*
 promises, threats, all the arts which influence popular assemblies,
 (a) (a) *moyen* *déterminer*
 were used to gain members—Citizens, how long will you support
 (b) *jusqu'à quand* *soutenir*
 the most dangerous enemy of your constitution?—They have
 overturned religion, morality, government, sciences, fine arts, in
renverser (a) (a) (a) (a) (a) *beaux-arts*
 a word, every thing which constitutes the glory and strength of a
faire
 nation—This man has neither vices nor virtues; neither talents
état (a) (a) (a)
 nor defects, nor passions of any kind—Weak mortals as we are,
 (a) *défaut* (a) (b)

we pretend to decide boldly on the most intricate questions, and
vouloir épineux

do not reflect that in the most common actions in which we think
où

ourselves right, other mortals, as vain as ourselves, loudly con-
le plus autorisé

demn us, and are, in their turn, condemned by others—Nations,
(b) peuples

with whom kings do now what they please, read your history—
chez qui ordonner aujourd'hui vouloir

A Roman History from the foundation of Rome to the destruction
Romain depuis jusqu'à

of the Roman Empire—Leo the Tenth, to whom we owe the
Léon (c)

revival of good tragedy as well as good comedy, never supposed
renaissance ne devinait pas qu'un jour

that the descendants of the Celts and Goths would think them-
Celte

selves authorised | to throw a disgrace upon | what he so much
en droit de flétrir

esteemed—You will find this passage, chapter the ninth, section
honorer (c)

the fourth—Philip the second, king of Spain, and son to the
(c) Philippe (c) (d) de

emperor Charles the fifth, married Mary queen of England—This
(c) épouser (d)

artist has obtained five hundred guineas, a reward which he well
(e)

deserved—The traitor was hanged; a punishment he deserved—
mériter (e) supplice

Augustus retired to Thorn, an ancient city of Royal Prussia,
Auguste se retirer

situated on the Vistula, which was then under the protection of
Vistule

the Poles—Pompey, after having been at the head of the
Polonais Pompée

republic, could not even find a grave in a foreign land, where he

was murdered ; a dreadful instance of the vicissitudes of fortune.
(e) *exemple*

Scipio Æmilianus destroyed Carthage, a city that had rivalled
Scipion l'Emilien (d)

Rome for above a hundred years—The king has granted him
pendant plus de (g) *faire*

his pardon—Have pity on my weakness ; you are all my
grâce (g) *avoir pitié de*

comfort ; and if | you have any regard for my life | do not refuse
consolation *ma vie vous est chère*

me your assistance—Your reflections are just ; and | I am very
réflexion *voir avec*

glad to find | that you not only read, but that you reflect upon
plaisir *non-seulement*

what you read—A common reader is satisfied with heaping facts
ordinaire *se contenter de* *entasser fait*

upon facts, and loads his memory without exercising his judg-
(f) *charger* *exercer*

ment—Hiero, king of Syracuse, intreated the aid of the Romans,
Hiéron (d) *implorer* *secours*

against the Mamertines, a little people of Sicily—Raphael
Mamertin (d) *Sicile*

excelled in expression, a rare talent among painters—The Gods
dans (e) *chez*

who pitied her fate changed her into a laurel.
plaindre *changer* *en* (h) *laurier*

References.

(a) When several substantives are enumerated, the article may be used, but its suppression is not less emphatical in French than in English, and the last substantive need not be preceded by the conjunction *et* ; games, conversation, spectacle, nothing diverts her, *jeux, conversation, spectacle, rien ne la distrait*.—It often takes place after *ne que*, in the sense of *nothing but* ; in this case the conjunction *et* is used before the last substantive. In enumeration of substantives, if the first in English is preceded by *neither*, they must all in French be preceded by *ni* ; he has neither gold nor silver, *il n'a ni or ni argent*. (b) Nouns in the vocative have no article in both languages ; Soldiers, stand firm ! *Soldats, tenez ferme !* (c) No article is used before the title of a book, or any other performance ; the history of England, *Histoire d'Angleterre* : an essay on taste, *essai sur le goût*. The same may be observed with respect to ordinal numbers used in quotation, or after the name of a sovereign ; book

the first, *livre premier* : chapter the second, *chapitre second* : section the third, *section troisième* : George the Fourth succeeded his father, George the Third, *George Quatre succéda à son père, George Trois*. } After the names of sovereigns, the French requires the cardinal ; these two only excepted, the *first* and the *second* ; as Henry the First, *Henri Premier* : Charles the Second, *Charles Second*. Instead of *cinq*, the fifth, we make use of *quint*, with the two following names, *Charles Quint*, Charles the Fifth (Emperor), and *Sixte Quint*, Sixtus the Fifth (a Pope). (d) The article is omitted before a substantive which serves to characterize another spoken of before ; the Duke of York, a prince of the blood, *le Duc d'York, prince du sang*. (e) The article is omitted before a substantive beginning an incidental sentence, which is an observation upon what has been said ; the Cardinal had already secured fifteen voices, a number sufficient to exclude any other candidate, *le Cardinal s'était déjà assuré du quinze voix, nombre suffisant pour exclure tout autre candidat*. (f) No article is used before a substantive, which is repeated with prepositions : promises upon promises, *promesses sur promesses* : foot to foot, *piéd contre piéd* : from age to age, *de siècle en siècle*. (g) No article is used before nouns joined to a verb, with which they form but one idea, and of which they are the complement : *prendre soin*, to take care of. (h) Nouns governed by the prepositions *en, sans, avec*, used in a vague and indeterminate sense, take no article before them : he is without friends, *il est sans amis* : to sit in a circle, *être assis en cercle* : he acts like a king, *il agit en roi*.

EXERCISE 4.

Rousseau, endowed with a strong and fiery imagination, was all
doué (a) bouillant

his life subject to frequent fits of misanthropy, and liable to all
enclin (b) accès sujet (b)

the variations attendant upon it—You are not able to construe
qui en sont la suite capable (a) expliquer

that author—Voltaire was always greedy of praise and insatiable
avide (a) l'ouange pl.

of glory—He is insensible to all the remonstrances of his friends.
(a) (b)

The ancient and modern writers are not agreed upon that point—
(c) ancien (c) moderne s'accorder

We ought to frequent good, and shun bad company—Great and
falloir (c) (c) (c)

vigorous thoughts were always the offspring of genius—Sylla
(c) fort fruit

gained in Rome an absolute power and authority—There are in
s'acquérir (d)

Gessner's Idylls, sentiments and a grace altogether affecting—
idylle tout à fait (d) touchant

Could you believe that Milton has been one of the warmest
(e) ardent

abettors of the murderers of Charles the first—I made profound
défenseur (e)

bows to every body present, and in particular to the person I
révérence personnage

concluded was called to consult with me about the distemper
juger qu'on avait appelé sur

of the patient—He displayed astonishing courage and intrepidity.
dont il s'agissait montrer (d) étonnant

This room is fifty feet long and sixteen wide—Mr. Mongolfier's
(f) longueur largeur

aerostatic machine was made of cloth; it had the form of a tent,
drap pavillon

sixty feet high, and forty six in diameter—The largest of those
(f) hauteur de

islands is not more than twelve leagues in circumference, and the
(f) de

others are much smaller—You will be stopped in your march by
 a river three hundred feet broad—It is one of the finest stones

(f) largeur

that was ever seen; it is twenty feet long and six thick—
qu'on ait jamais vues (f) longueur (f) épaisseur

California is properly a neck of land, which proceeds from the
Californie pointe sortir

northern coasts of America; it is washed on each side by the
septentrional baigné de

Pacific Ocean—The part that is known, is three hundred leagues
Mer Pacifique (f) lieux (f)

long, and ten, twenty, thirty, or forty, broad—Courage and
longueur (f) (f) large

prudence united, constitute a good general—Garrick acted with
(d) réunir faire le jouer

a charming taste and dignity—The walls of Algiers are sixteen
(d) goût noblesse Alger (f)

feet thick, and thirty feet high—He runs through the streets like
épaisseur(f) hauteur courir ∞

a madman, bare-foot and bare-headed—His legs were bare—
fou (g) nu (g) tête il avait les jambes(g)

Give me half a guinea, and then you will only owe me a guinea
(g) guinée ∞ ne devoir plus que

and a half—The late queen was an accomplished woman.
(g) (g)

References.

(a) French adjectives expressing *plenty, satisfaction, desire, knowledge, &c.* require the preposition *de* after them; worthy of reward, *digne de récompense*. (b) Adjectives denoting *fitness, unfitness, inclination, habit, disposition*, require the preposition *à* after them.—(See Gram. ref. (g) p. 164.)—*useful to man, utile à l'homme*. (c) When two adjectives express opposite qualities, the article must be repeated before each adjective; the old and new regiments, *les vieux et les nouveaux régimens*; but the article must not be repeated if the adjectives are nearly synonymous; *le sage et pieux Fénelon*.—If the adjectives are different without being opposite, some authors repeat it, and others not; *le savant et le pieux personnage*, or *le savant et pieux personnage*. (d) When an adjective qualifies several substantives of inanimate objects and of different genders, forming the government of a verb, custom allows to make the adjective agree with the last only, if it is feminine; *elle avait les yeux et la bouche ouverte*.—But when the adjective or participle used adjectively denotes the union of all the substantives, it follows the rule; pains, conduct, and fortune, joined together, &c. *le travail, la conduite, et la fortune, joins ensemble, &c.* (e) Many adjectives, among those which come after their substantives, must precede it, when used in a figurative sense; so we say, a ripe fruit, *un fruit mûr*: a mature deliberation, *une mûre délibération*. (f) There are three different ways of translating into French the adjective of dimension: as in this sentence, a wall twenty feet high, *un mur de vingt pieds de haut*, or *un mur haut de vingt pieds*, or even, *un mur de vingt pieds de hauteur*. The English construe the nouns of dimension with the verb *to be*, the French generally prefer the verb *avoir*; but when the verb *être* is used, it must be immediately followed by the preposition *de*; the ditch is forty feet long and three broad, *le fossé a quarante pieds de long*, or *longueur, sur trois de large*, or *largeur*; or *le fossé est de quarante pieds de long*, or *longueur, sur trois de large*, or *largeur*.—These adjectives are more elegantly rendered by their substantive, and the conjunction *and* by *sur*. (g) The adjectives *nu*, bare; *demî*, half; are not declined before a substantive, but the agreement takes place if they are placed after the noun; half an hour, *une demî heure*; an hour and half, *une heure et demie*.—*Few*, late, is also irregular; the late queen, *feu la reine*, or *la feue reine*.

EXERCISE 5.

It would be better for a man to lose his life than to forfeit his
valoir mieux . qu'il (b) que de (b)

honour by a criminal action—He has lost his sight—Mr. B. can-
(b)

not walk out ; the gout has swelled his feet—I have a pain in my
sortir goutte (a) avoir mal à (b)

side—I fear very much lest the bad examples, which he has before
obté

his eyes, should make him forsake the path of virtue—My sister
(b) abandonner sentier

cannot work, for she has pricked her finger with her needle—In this
se piquer (a)

battle, he received | a wound by a shot | in his right arm, and
un coup de feu à (b)

another in his left leg ; by dint of care his arm was saved, but it
à (b) à force on lui sauva le bras

was necessary to cut off his leg—My gout does not allow me a
falloir lui couper (b) (c) laisser

moment's repose—Whose beautiful coach is this ? It is ours—I
carrosse (d)

have found to-day a book of yours among mine—Newton could say
(d) pouvoir dire

the discovery of attraction was his—An uncle of mine, who was
(d) (d)

Governor of the Spanish Colonies in the Philippine Islands, made
Espagnol

me a present of this ruby, which the jewellers value at three
estimer

hundred pistoles—This man must have lost his brains, to act in
(b) cervelle sing. agir de

this manner—Twenty thousand men lost their lives in that battle.
(b)

The seventeenth and eighteenth centuries have exhibited the
siècle sing. présenté

dreadful spectacle of two powerful kings who had their heads
terrible puissant (b) tête sin.

cut off on a scaffold—A long beard hangs down upon his breast—She
trancher *descendre* (e) *poitrine*

desired her son not to grieve and with her own hand wiped his tears.
dit à son fils de s'affliger de (e) *essuyer*

Lisbon is a large city; its situation is very convenient for
Lisbonne ville (f) *commode*

trade—How do like this country-seat? Is not its situation
commerce (f)

pleasing?—London has its beauties; I admire the width of its
charmant Londres (g) (g)

streets; its regular buildings please at the first sight; its ships
au premier coup d'œil (g)

bring to it the riches of all countries; its trade produces immense
apporter (g)

resources—There is a very large orchard behind the house; its
verger (f)

trees are very well planted; its fruits excellent—It is a small
 (f)

house, which has its advantages—Those trees spread their
 (g) *voilà des arbres qui étendre* (g)

branches very far—This plant is very common; yet I do not
 know its properties—A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt;
 (f) *vertu*

| for which reason | there never was a people that preserved so
aussi † *conserver*

long its customs, its laws, and even its ceremonies—Those who
 (g) (g) (g)

read Milton's Paradise Lost, are not always capable of feeling its
 (f)

beauties—The gallantry which reigned at the court of Charles the
galanterie

Second was less reserved, and | too much indecency | debased
la grossièreté *avilir*

its pleasures—This fine country is justly admired by foreigners;
 † *avec raison*

its climate is delightful; its soil fruitful; its laws wise, and its
 (f) (f) *terroir* (f) (f)

government just and moderate.

References.

(a) When the possessive pronoun is joined to a noun denoting a part of the possessor's body, such as the *head*, the *arm*; or any thing which may be considered as belonging to it, as the *life*, the *voice*, &c. that possessive pronoun is generally changed into a personal conjunctive pronoun, and the definite article is prefixed to the noun; they broke his arm, *ils lui cassèrent le bras*, not *son bras*: she cut her finger, *elle s'est coupé le doigt*. (b) The personal pronoun is supplied by the article definite, when the possessor is nominative to a verb, which is not reflected; as, the general had his head carried off, *le général eut la tête emportée*: my head aches, *j'ai mal à la tête*. (c) In order to remove an ambiguity, the possessive pronoun must be joined to the noun, we say, *je vois que ma jambe s'enfle*: I see that my leg is swelling, because I may see the leg of another person swelling.—The pronoun possessive is also used when we speak of an habitual distemper known to the person we speak to; my head-ache is returned, *ma migraine m'a repris*. (d) The possessive pronouns *mine*, *thine*, &c., coming after a tense of the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, are not rendered by *le mien*, *le tien*, &c. but must be turned into a personal pronoun in the dative; this book is mine, *ce livre est à moi*, or *ce livre m'appartient*.—In phrases like these, he is a relation of mine; it is a book of yours, &c. the following turn must be given; *c'est un de mes parens*; *c'est un de vos livres*. (e) It is sometimes optional to use the article or the pronoun possessive, as, he cried out as he raised his head above the water, *il s'écria en élevant sa tête*, or *la tête*, *au dessus de l'eau*.—But in many instances, when the noun is governed by a preposition, the pronoun possessive must absolutely be used; he expressed great joy on his countenance on seeing, &c., *il montra sur son visage une joie sensible de voir*, &c.—The pronoun possessive, and not the article definite, is also used in some idiomatical expressions: these will be found in the *Exercises on French Conversation*, which form a continuation and completion to this Grammar. (f) The possessive pronouns *its* and *their* are expressed by *en* placed before the verb, with the definite article prefixed to the noun, whenever the possessor being mentioned in the first member of a sentence, the possessive and the thing possessed are in the second member; the Thames is a fine river; its channel is deep enough to admit large vessels; *la Tamise est une belle rivière; le lit en est assez profond pour admettre de gros vaisseaux*.—In that case, *its* or *their* can be rendered in English by *of it*, *of them*, or *thereof*. (g) In all other cases these pronouns are rendered in French by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leurs*, as, that city has its beauties; its squares appear to me beautiful, and I particularly admire the regularity and cleanliness of its streets; *cette ville a ses beautés; ses places me paraissent superbes; j'admire surtout la régularité et la propreté de ses rues*. * This adjective to precede its substantive. † The following conjunctions and adverbs, *aussi*, *peut-être*, *en vain*, *vainement*, *à peine*, *du moins*, *au moins*, *encore*, and *rarement*, admit in French of the sentence being in the interrogative form, though there is no question asked, *ces marchandises sont belles, aussi se vendent elles bien*. ‡ Contrary to reference (f) *its* may be rendered by *y* when it relates to places.

EXERCISE 6.

You and your cousin shall accompany me to the play this evening.
(a) *comédie*

You and I are good friends—You, your friends, his cousins, and
(a)

I, were reading together the new pamphlet—In the long winter
(a) *brochure*

evenings, my father, my brothers, and I, used to spend two hours
soirée. pl. (a) *passer*

in the library—He and you are the only persons whom I visit—
bibliothèque (a) *fréquenter*

| If that be the case, | said my comrade, I congratulate you upon
cela étant (b) *féliciter en*
it; and am very proud that Signor Gil Blas and I have the
ravi Seigneur (a)

honour to breakfast with a person of such importance—Neither
de personnage d'une si grande

you nor I, have passed through the great trials of envy and am-
(a) *par épreuve*

bition; or perhaps we should have been, as well as so many
peut-être que

others, false friends and base flatterers—You see, said he, the
lâche (b)

frightful condition to which I am reduced—Why, answered I,
affreux état (b)

did you not tell it me sooner?—I could not inform you of it
dire

before, replied he to me—Nevertheless, retorted I bluntly, you
(b) *répliquer cependant* (b) *repartir*

have seen me often—Oh! continued he, I never dared to do it.
plusieurs fois (b) *oser*

You should, pursued I with warmth, be bolder with the best of
poursuivre

your friends—Ah! exclaimed he with an emotion of the liveliest
(b) *s'écrier*

gratitude, you have rendered me too many services, for me to
presume to ask another—His talents, his honesty, and even
oser demander un nouveau

his ever good nature, make him beloved and sought after by
bonhommie (c) aimer rechercher

every body—Do not think, my daughter, that thy candour, thy
tout le monde croire

ingenuousness, or even thy taste so delicate and nice, can
franchise goût fin pouvoir

shelter thee from censure—Your mien, your deportment,
mettre à l'abri ce air démarche

your voice, your language, every thing betrays you—Either
(c) trahir

persuasion or terror has drawn him into the party of the rebels —
séduction (d) entraîner parti

The army have lost all their baggage and ordnance—Notwith-
(e)
 standing the danger of their position, the senate remained firm in
(e)

their maxims ; and the decree which they issued, not to grant any
(e) rendre

thing by force, passed as a fundamental law of the Roman
pour

policy—One half of his salary is appropriated to | the discharge
police la appointemens(f) destiné à payer
 of | his debts—A part of the baggage had fallen into the hands
(g)

of the enemy—The people wish for peace, but the parliament, who
(e) parlement

know better the interests of the nation, have voted for the
(e) (e)

continuation of the war—A crowd of people ran to see the
foule (g)accourir

ceremony—A company of young Phœnicians of uncommon beauty,
troupe Phénicien rare

danced a long while the dances of their country—An infinite
(g)

number of birds made the groves resound with their tuneful notes.
(g) résonner doux chant

References.

(a) When a verb has several nominatives of different persons, the verb must be plural and agree with the first person rather than the

second, and with the second rather than with the third; you and I are of different opinion, *vous et moi pensons différemment*. These pronouns are generally resolved into one of their plurals *nous*, *vous*, and the others may be placed at the beginning or at the end of the sentence; *vous et moi nous pensons différemment* or *nous pensons différemment vous et moi*.—The pronoun *nous* or *vous* is generally left out when the different nominatives come immediately before the verb, and are joined by *ni*; neither you nor I have seen that book, *ni vous ni moi n'avons vu ce livre*. (b) The following seven verbs require the nominative after them, when they are used by way of parenthesis, though the sentence is not interrogative; *dire*, *répondre*, *répliquer*, *repartir*, *continuer*, *poursuivre*, *s'écrier*; wait for us, said I; I cannot, replied he; I am going directly; *attendez-nous, lui dis-je; je ne puis, répliqua-t-il; je pars tout à l'heure*. (c) When the last of several substantives, nominatives to a verb, is preceded by one of these expressions, *mais*, but; *même*, even; *en un mot*, in a word, or when they are summed up by *tout*, all; *rien*, nothing; the verb must agree with that substantive; not only his riches but his honour vanished away, *non seulement ses richesses, mais aussi son honneur s'évanouit*. (d) When two substantives singular are joined by *ou*, or, the verb is generally in the singular; either courage or despair saved them, *le courage ou le désespoir les sauva*. (e) When a verb has for its nominative a noun collective general, it must be in the singular; the people wish for it, *le peuple le désire*. (f) When a collective partitive denotes a determinate quantity, being preceded by the article definite, or a noun demonstrative, the verb must agree with that collective; half of the soldiers were killed, *la moitié des soldats fut tuée*; the two-thirds of the houses were burnt, *les deux tiers des maisons furent brûlés*; the greatest number of the tribunes of the people were opposed to the law, *la plus grande partie des tribuns s'opposait à la loi*. (g) When the collective denotes an indeterminate quantity; the most general practice is, to make the verb, adjective, and relative agree with the genitive that follows that collective, particularly if that collective be preceded by the indefinite article; a great number of learned men maintain, *un grand nombre de savans soutiennent*; we found a part of the palace burnt, *nous trouvâmes une partie du palais brûlé*. Yet we read in some good writers, *une foule d'auteurs a écrit; une troupe de nègres se fit voir*, which last sentence is certainly right, as it gives the idea of a whole being. ¶ Observe that the noun that follows these three collective partitives, *une infinité*, *un grand nombre*, *la plupart*, is often left out; in that case the verb is always plural; a vast number of people fancy, *une infinité s'imaginent*; instead of *une infinité de gens s'imaginent*. * When a collective governs a noun in the singular, the pronoun referring to that collective must be in the singular.

INDEX.

A

A (preposition)—Serves to form the dative case of nouns and of some pronouns, *page* 9, 11, 13, 14, 36, &c. Before *de, les*, contracted into *au, aux*, 10. Cannot be suppressed before a noun in the dative, governed by a verb, as in English, 269. Corresponds with *de*, 218. Governed by some adjectives, 164, 274: by an infinitive, 164: by an adverb, 235: by a reflected verb, 113: by a neuter verb, 126: by some verb, which may likewise take *de*, but to express different ideas 113. Governing the dative case, 217.

A or **An**, the English article indefinite; how translated, 11. When rendered by the definite article, 247. When by *par*, 268.

Ablative case; what it is, 5. How formed with the article definite, 8.

Aboyer, verb, irregular in its orthography, 136.

Abstraire; observation on that verb, 141.

Accidents of Nouns, what is meant by, 3.

Accroître; remarks on that verb, 141.

Accroître; forms its compound tenses with *avoir* or *être*, 125.

Accusative case; what it is,

5. Its place in the sentence, 5, 208. How to distinguish it, 5.—of the article definite, 6. Governed by an active verb, 208.—by prepositions, 214. Never follows a neuter verb, 124, 209. When it precedes a verb it must be either a noun or a pronoun, 209.—Of reflected verbs, *ibid.*

Active; what is an active verb, and how known, 44. Governs an accusative case, 208. Active verbs can alone become passive, 104.

Adjective; definition of, 25. Indeclinable in English, but declinable in French, *ibid.* Formation of their feminine, 26 to 32. Five adjectives have two masculines, 31. How their plural is formed, 19 to 22. Adjectives in *al*, several have no masculine plural in use, 34. How to Frenchify many English adjectives, 25. Agrees in gender and number with the noun it qualifies, 25. Agrees with the nominative to the verb *être*, 64. When *vous* is used in the sense of *tu*, the adjective remains singular, 64. *Demi, nu, feu*, are exceptions to this rule, 274. Its place with respect to the noun it qualifies, 26. A few always precede, 26. When several adjectives qualify a substan-

tive, 34. When one of the adjectives belongs to those which precede its noun, and to the other to those which follow, 34. Place of those used in a figurative sense, 274. Used adverbially, 233. Ending in *ant*, derived from verbs seldom have any adverb, *ibid.* Comparison of, 236. Three adjectives are irregular in the formation of their comparative, 241: of their superlative, 244. Government of, 164, 274. When preceded by an impersonal verb, or by *il est*, *il éloit*, it requires *de* before an infinitive, 131. Expressing opposite qualities, take the article before each, 274. When the qualities are nearly synonymous, the article is not repeated, *ibid.* When the adjectives express different qualities, without being opposite, is the article repeated? *ibid.* Of dimension—there are three different ways of translating them, *ibid.* Which require a disjunctive personal pronoun after them, 169. *Seul* is preceded by a disjunctive personal pronoun, *ibid.*

Adverbs; definition and function of, 219. How many kinds there are, *ibid.* Adverbs of time, 220: of place and order, 226: of quantity, 229: of quality and manner, 231: of affirmation, negation, doubt, comparison, and interrogation, 234. How formed from adjectives, 232, 233. Expressions equivalent to adverbs, 225, 233. Their places with simple tenses, 223: with compound tenses,

ibid. Place of some adverbs of time, 223, 224: of manner, 223: of place and order, 227. Why adverbs of affirmation and negation have no fixed place in the sentence, 235. Place of an adverb modifying another adverb, 234. Place of adverbs with respect to each other, *ibid.* Adverbs seldom formed from verbal adjectives ending in *ant*, 233. Observation on the government of some adverbs, 235. Adverbs of quantity require the preposition *de* before a noun, 229. Comparison of, 236. Adverbs irregular in the formation of their comparative, 242: of their superlative, 244. Adverbs of comparison are repeated before every adjective or adverb compared, 242. In what case the repetition is unnecessary, *ibid.* Adverbs which take an *é* accented before *ment*, 232. Adverbs after which the verb may take the interrogative form, 277.

Adverbial phrases, equivalent to adverbs, 225, 233.

After; generally governs the perfect of the infinitive, 253.

Again; translated by *re*, before the verb, whenever it implies a reduplication of action, 84.

Agréer; orthography of that verb, 136.

Aïeuls, *aïeux*, their difference, 22.

Aïl; how nouns ending in *aïl* form their plural, 22.

Aimer; model for the conjugation of verbs in *er*, 67.

Al; how to form the plural

of nouns of that termination, 22. Some adjectives in *al* have no masculine plural in use, 34.

alentour; after this preposition, the word it governs may be omitted, 216.

Aller; remarks on the use of the auxiliaries with which its compound tenses are formed, 141. Its imperative *va* sometimes takes *s* before *y*, sometimes not, 142.

Alphabet; the French alphabet has neither *k* nor *w*, 1.

Alphabetical list of all the irregular verbs of the French language, 140.

Answer to questions; observation on, 174.

Ant; formation of the plural in words of that termination, 19. When is the suppression of the *t* inadmissible? *ibid.* Verbal adjectives ending in *ant* seldom form their adverb from that termination, 233.

Any body; how rendered, 192.

Any, or whatever; how rendered, 195.

Any, used for *some*, in interrogative & negative phrases, 12.

Any; an indeterminate pronoun, how translated, 195.

A peine; the verb following may take the interrogative form, 277.

Apparaître; observation on the conjugation of its compound tenses, 142. In what it differs from its primitive, *paraître*, *ibid.*

Appeler; irregular in its orthography, 138.

Appréhender; when does that verb require the subjunctive and *ne* before it? 256. When is *ne* to be suppressed? *ibid.* When are both *ne* and *pas* used? *ibid.*

Agüer; orthography of this verb, 136.

Article; how many there are, 6. Agreement of the article with its substantive, 12.

Article definite; why so called, 6. How translated into French in the nominative and accusative cases, *ibid.* Rules for the genitive and ablative, 8. The article with prepositions serves to form the cases of nouns, 4. Rules for the dative case, 9. Article and preposition, when contracted, 8, 10. Expressed in French before nouns taken in a general sense, 7. Used before nouns of dignities, &c. 266. Emphatically used before celebrated names, *ibid.*: or to denote an individual distinction, *ibid.*: used before nouns of countries, *ibid.* NOT USED when the country we come from, or go to, is in Europe, *ibid.*: or when the country takes its name from its capital, *ibid.*: between a noun of dignity and country, *ibid.*: when the noun of country is taken adjectively, *ibid.*: before common substantives taken adjectively, 269: before the title of a book, 271: before ordinal numbers joined to the names of sovereigns, 271: before a noun which characterizes a foregoing substantive 272: before a noun beginning

an incidental sentence, 272 : before a noun repeated with a preposition, *ibid* : before a noun joined to a verb with which it forms but one idea, *ibid* : before nouns governed by *en*, *sans*, *avec*, used indeterminately, *ibid* : after a pronoun possessive and a superlative, 244 : after the conjunction *ni*, 249. May be elegantly suppressed in the enumeration of substantives, 271. Often suppressed after *ne que*, *ibid*. The article definite is repeated when the noun follows a superlative, 244. It is repeated before adjectives expressing opposite qualities, but not if these qualities are nearly synonymous, 274. Repeated or not when the adjectives are different without being opposite, *ibid*. The article definite *le* remains indeclinable before a superlative not implying comparison, 245. Used for the indefinite, *a* or *an*, 268.

Article indefinite ; what is meant by, 11. How translated, *ibid*. When rendered in French by *le*, *la*, *les*, 268. Translated by *par*, 268.

Article partitive ; definition, 12. How expressed in French, *ibid*. Cannot be suppressed in French, as it is in English, 13.

As ; how translated in the second member of a comparison, 237.

s'Assoir ; orthography of that verb, 142.

Asses ; its place in the sentence, 230.

Attrains ; observation on that verb, 143.

As, aux ; (to the) contraction of *à le*, *à les*, 10.

Aucun ; differs from *nul*, 196. Takes *ne* before the verb, *ibid*.

Après ; differs from *près*, 218.

As moins ; the following verb may take the interrogative form, 277.

Amperavant ; after the preposition, the word it governs may be left unexpressed, 216.

Aussi ; the next verb may take the interrogative form, 277. May be used for *si* in comparative sentences, 242.

Autrui ; its use is confined to the genitive and dative singular, 191.

Auxiliary verbs : how many, 45. *Avoir* conjugated, 50. What verbs it serves to conjugate, 57. *Etre* conjugated, 60. What verbs it serves to conjugate, 65.

Avant ; differs from *devant*, 216.

Avec ; with a noun, often forms adverbial phrases, 225. Used indeterminately it requires no article before the following noun, 272.

Avoir ; conjugated, 50.

Avoir peur ; when does that verb require the subjunctive with *ne* ? when is *ne* to be suppressed, and when are both *ne* and *pas* used ? 256.

Avancer ; conjugation of, 135.

Ayer : verbs of that termination have an irregularity in their orthography, 136.

B.

Beaucoup ; adverb, differs from *bien*, 229.

To be; before a verb in the infinitive how translated, 89. When that verb becomes impersonal in French, 183. When translated by *faire*, 129. When preceded by *there*, 130.

Benir; observation on the participle of that verb, 143.

Bien; differs from *beaucoup*, 229.

Both; how translated when it is not joined to any noun or pronoun, 199. When referring to a substantive, *ibid.* When it precedes a noun, *ibid.* When it precedes two nouns, *ibid.*

Bruyant; often used as an adjective, 143.

By; How expressed after passive verbs, 107. After a comparative, 247. When translated by the article definite in the dative case, 268.

C.

Of Cases; there are six cases, 4. How formed, *ibid.* How to distinguish them, *ibid.*

Ce; demonstrative conjunctive pronoun, becomes *cet*, *cette*, *ces*, 41. When used for *il*, with the verb *être*, employed impersonally, 129. Sometimes used before an adjective, 130. When followed by a noun with *ci* or *là*, 41.

Ceci, *cela*; often used for *voilà*, *voilà*, 188.

Cer; verbs of that termination are irregular in their orthography, 135.

Cesser; may be used without the second negation, 261.

Cevoir; verbs of that termination are irregular in their orthography, 84.

Celui qui, *celle qui*, &c.; answer to question asked by *which*, 190.

Cent; when it takes an *s*, 225.

Ce qui, *ce que*, *ce dont*, *ce à quoi*, in the sense of *what thing*, 188.

Ce qui, *ce dont*, with sentences of two members, 189. When is *ce* repeated in such sentences, *ibid.* When is *ce* suppressed, *ibid.*

Ce sont, *c'étaient*, *ce furent*; when used for *c'est*, *c'était*, *ce fut*, 131.

Chacun; when is it followed by *de*, 192.

Chaque; how rendered, 195.

Choir; supplied by *tomber*, 144.

Ci and *là*; used after a demonstrative pronoun and a noun, 41. After a demonstrative disjunctive pronoun, 187.

Ciel; in what case *ciele* is used in the plural, 22.

Clore; this verb is supplied by *Fermer* and *Boucher*, 144.

Comparaitre; takes both auxiliaries for its compound tenses, 125, 144.

Comparison of adjectives and adverbs, 236. How many degrees of comparison are there? 237. Comparative degree, *ibid.* Three sorts of comparatives, 237. Comparative of equality, *ibid.* How formed, *ibid.* Comparative of superiority, how formed, 239. Comparative of inferiority, 241. In affirmative sentences, *ibid.* In negative sentences, *ibid.* Irregularity of three adjectives and three adverbs in the formation of their comparative, *ibid.* Compara-

tive of superiority ending in *r*, or *er*, how translated, 239. When is *than* translated by *que de*, *que ne*, or only by *que*, 240. When, in comparisons of inferiority, *aussi* may be used for *si*, 242. When the verb in the second member of a comparison requires *ne* before it, 242. When is *ne* unnecessary? *ibid.* The verb in the second member of a comparison requires *qu'à* before it, if the first verb is preceded by *à*, 247. Comparisons with *the more*, *the less*, how expressed in French, *ibid.* *se Complaire*; the participle of that verb is invariable, 200.

Concord; of the article with its substantive, 6; of the adjective with its substantive, 25; with the nominative to the verb *être*, 64; of the verb with its nominative, 56; of the participle in passive verbs, 104; in reflected verbs, 108; of the participle of active verbs with a preceding accusative, 208, 213; of the participle of a reflected verb with a preceding accusative, 209; participles of neuter verbs conjugated with *être* agree with the nominative to the verb, 210.

Conjugation; what is meant by, 46. Different manners of conjugating the same verb, *ibid.* Conjugation of the auxiliary *avoir*, 50; of *être*, 60. Conjugation of the verb *Aimer*, as a model for conjugating verbs ending in *er*, 67: *Punir* for verbs ending in *ir*, 76: *Devoir*, for verbs in *avoir*, 81: and *Rendre*, for verbs in *re*,

84. Important observation on the conjugation of regular verbs with respect to the variable and radical letters, 72. Conjugation of a verb used negatively, 90; of a verb used interrogatively, 96; of a verb both interrogative and negative, 100; of a passive verb, 104; of a reflected verb affirmatively used, 109; negative, 118; interrogative, 121; interrogative and negative, 122. Conjugation of a reciprocal verb, 124; of the impersonal verb *pleuvoir*, 129; *y avoir*, 130; *falloir*, 132; *valoir mieux*, *ibid.*; *suffire*, 133. Of all irregular verbs, 140 to 160.

Of Conjunctions; 248; governing the indicative, *ibid.*: the subjunctive, 250; the infinitive, 252. A conjunction understood in English must be expressed in French, 258. How some conjunctions are distinguished from prepositions, 252. Of the conjunction *que*, 251. After a few conjunctions the following verb may take the interrogative form, 277.

Craindre; When it requires the subjunctive and *ne*, 256. Observation on that verb, *ibid.*

Crainte de (de) When does that conjunction require *ne* before the subjunctive? When is *ne pas* used, 252.

Continuer; sometimes requires its pronoun nominative after it, 280.

Convenir; takes *avoir* or *être* for its compound tenses, 136, 145.

D.

Dans ; differs from *en*, 216.

Dative case ; definition, 5 : of the article definite, 9.

Davantage ; When is it preferable to *plus de*, and what is its place ? 231.

De ; (preposition) loses the *e* before a vowel, 11. Serves to form the genitive of nouns, 8. Before the article definite, *le*, *les*, it is contracted into *du*, *des*, 8. Forms alone the genitive of the partitive article, 13. Used instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, before an adjective preceding a noun in the partitive sense, 29. After a negation it is used before a noun taken in a limited sense, 94. *De* used as the government of reflected verbs, 113. *De* or *à* used after some verbs, but with a different meaning, *ibid.* Serves as the government of some neuter verbs, 124. When preferred to *par*, after passive verbs, 107. When used before the present of the infinitive, 167. Governed by a verb or an adjective is the sign of the supplying pronoun *en*, 174. *De* corresponds with *à*, 218. *De* precedes a noun which modifies a preceding substantive, 269.

Déchoir ; defective verb, supplied by *baisser* & *décliner*, 146

Déclore ; defective verb, supplied by *ouvrir*, 146.

De la ; article definite, genitive case, feminine singular, 8. Nominative or accusative of the article partitive singular, 13. *De là*, adverb of place, 226.

Degrees of comparison ; See comparison.

Demi ; adjective, undeclined before a noun, 274.

Demonstrative conjunctive pronouns ; why so called, 41. Agree in gender and number with the following substantive, *ibid.* Declension of, 42.

Demonstrative disjunctive pronouns ; 187. Agree with an antecedent noun, *ibid.* How declined, *ibid.* When opposed to each other, 188. When they serve to shew an object without naming it, *ibid.* When used to avoid the repetition of a noun antecedent, *ibid.* When followed by *qui*, *ibid.*

se Déplaire ; the participle of this verb is invariable, 209.

Depuis ; corresponds with *jusqu'à*, 218.

Désespérer ; when followed by *ne* and the subjunctive, 257.

Des ; contraction of *de les*, genitive plural of the article definite, 8. Nominative or accusative plural of the partitive article, 13.

Devant ; differs from *avant*, 216

Did ; not expressed in French with verbs negatively used, 155. Nor in interrogation, 160.

Dire ; in what instance does that verb take the interrogative form, in affirmative sentences ? 277.

Disconvenir ; followed by *ne* and the subjunctive in the subordinate proposition, 257.

Disparaître ; takes *avoir* or *être* for its compound tense 125.

Dissyllable ; what it is, 1

Do ; not expressed in French with verbs negatively used, 155 ; nor in interrogation, 160.

Dout ; its place, 181.

Douter ; when followed by *ne* and the subjunctive, 257.

Du, for *de le* ; genitive masculine singular of the article definite, S. Nominative or accusative masculine singular of the article partitive, 13.

Du moins ; after that conjunction the verb may take the interrogative form, 277.

Durant ; differs from *pendant*, 216.

E.

E ; that letter receives the acute accent whenever it terminates a verb interrogative in the first person singular of the present, 96 ; in some adverbs, 232.

Each, or *every* ; how translated, 195.

Eau ; formation of the plural of nouns in *eau*, 20.

s'Ebattre ; supplied by *se divertir*, or *se réjouir*, 148.

Eclorre ; *s'ouvrir* and *paraître*, supply the tenses wanting, 148.

s'Ecrier ; the verb is sometimes followed by its nominative pronoun, 280.

Eder ; verbs of that termination are irregular in their orthography, 137.

Eer ; verbs ending in *eer* have an irregularity in their orthography, 136.

Either ; how translated, 197.

Eler ; verbs in *eler* irregular in their orthography, 137.

Elision ; what is meant by

it, and when used 6, 164. When does it not take place before a noun, *ibid* : before an imperative, 167.

Emer ; The verbs of that termination have an irregularity in their orthography, 137.

Empêcher ; When does that verb require the subjunctive with *ne* ? 236.

Employer ; irregular in its orthography, 136.

En ; a supplying pronoun, 172. Its place, 173, 174. Often supplies the place of a whole sentence, 190. *L'en, t'en, leur en*, to be avoided at the end of a sentence, 180. Used indeterminately takes no article, 272. Used for the English possessive pronoun *its, theirs*, 277. Inseparable preposition in the verb *s'en aller*, 142. *En* is the only preposition which can precede a gerund, 206. Differs from *dans*, 216.

Enclore ; this verb is supplied by *entourer* and *renfermer*, 149.

Encore ; after this word the verb may elegantly take the interrogative form, 277.

Ener ; verbs of that termination are irregular in their orthography, 137.

s'Ensuir ; observation on that verb, 149.

s'Enquérir ; supplied by *s'informar*, 149.

Ent ; may the *t* be suppressed in the formation of the plural, 19.

Enumeration of substantives ; may the article be used, 271. Is not the suppression of the

article generally elegant? *ibid.* When the first noun is preceded by *neither*, they must all be preceded by *ni*, 271.

Envers; differs from *vers*, 216.

Er; termination of the regular verbs of the first conjugation. Model of that conjugation, 67.

Erer; verbs in *erer* are irregular in their orthography, 137.

Il est, il était, &c. followed by an adjective, require *de* before an infinitive, 131. *C'est, c'était, &c.* and a noun, require *de* before an adjective, *ibid.*

Est-ce que? when used, 96. With some verbs this mode of interrogation indispensably necessary, *ibid.* *N'est-ce pas que,* when preferred to the simple interrogation, 100.

Et; conjunction that joins like cases in nouns and pronouns, 15, 94.

Eter; when do verbs in *eter* double the *t*? 94, 127.

Etre; conjugation of that auxiliary, 60. Verbs which it serves to conjugate, 65. The adjective following immediately must agree with the nominative to the verb, 64. Becomes impersonal when followed by an adjective used in an indeterminate sense, or denoting the time of the day, 129. When supplied by *faire*, *ibid.* When is that verb preceded by *ce*? *ibid.*

Ew; formation of the plural of nouns ending in *ew*, 20.

Eur; how to form the femi-

nine of adjectives ending in *eur*, 30.

Every; when rendered by *chaque*, 195.

Every body, every one, how translated, 192.

Ever; verbs of that termination have an irregularity in their orthography, 137.

Exercice on the article definite—On the nominative and accusative case, 7. On the genitive and ablative cases, 9. On the dative case, 10. On the article indefinite, 11. On the partitive article, 14. On proper names, 15. General exercise on the three articles and proper names, 18. On the formation of the plural of nouns, 19, 21, 23. On the formation of the feminine of adjectives, 26, 29, 30, 32. General exercise on the formation of the feminine of adjectives, 33. On possessive conjunctive pronouns, 36. On relative possessive pronouns, 39. On the demonstrative conjunctive pronouns, 42. General exercise on the preceding pronouns, 43. On the auxiliary *avoir*, 57. On *être*, 65. On the first conjugation in *er*, 72. On the second in *ir*, 79. On the third in *oir*, 83. On the fourth in *re*, 86. General exercise on the verbs, 88. On negation, 92. On interrogation, 97. On interrogation and negation, 101. On passive verbs, 105. On reflected verbs affirmative, 115. Negative, 119. Interrogative, 123. Interrogative and negative, 123. On neuter verbs,

126. On the impersonal verbs, 130—134. General exercise on the irregular verbs, 160. On the personal conjunctive pronouns, 164. On the personal disjunctive pronouns, 168, 171. On supplying pronouns, 173. On the place of the personal conjunctive pronouns with simple tenses of verbs, 176. With the compound tenses of verbs, 177. With reflected verbs in their simple tenses, 178. With the compound tenses of reflected verbs, *ibid.* On the place of several personal conjunctive pronouns with an imperative, 180. On relative pronouns, 182. On interrogative pronouns, 185. On the demonstrative disjunctive pronouns, 189. On the indeterminate pronouns, 193, 198, 202. On the indeterminate pronoun *on*, 204. On the gerund, 207. On the participle, 210, 213. On prepositions, 215, 217. On adverbs of time, 224: of place and order, 227: of quantity, 230: of quality and manner, 233: of affirmation, negation, interrogation, and comparison, 235. On the comparison of equality, 238: of superiority, 239: of inferiority, 242: on the superlative, 244. General exercise on the comparative and superlative, 246. On the conjunctions governing the indicative, 249. On the conjunctions governing the subjunctive, 250. On the conjunctions governing the infinitive, 253. On the conjunction *que*, 257. APPENDIX—Exercise 1st, 263: exer-

cise 2nd, 267: exercise 3rd, 269: exercise 4th, 272: exercise 5th, 275: exercise 6th, 278.

Extraire; this verb may be supplied by *faire un extrait*, or *dépeuiller*, 150.

F.

Faillir; observation on that verb, 150.

Faire; used before an adjective denoting the disposition of the weather, 184.

Falloir; conjugated, 132. Implies necessity, obligation, 133. Signifying *want*, *ibid.* Governs the second verb without a preposition, 134.

Fatal; has no masculine plural, 34.

Feminine; in adjectives formation of, 26—32. In participles, 104.

Feu; observations on that adjective, 274.

**Fleurir*; observation on that verb, 150.

Formation of the plural of substantives and adjectives, 19—24. Of the feminine of adjectives, 26—32. Of the tenses from five primitive terminations, 67—71. Of the adverbs from adjectives, 332.

Frise; how are the tenses wanting supplied, 150.

Fuir; observation on that verb, 151.

Future; what is implied by future absolute, 58: by future anterior, *ibid.* Of the idiomatical future tenses, 54, 55. The present subjunctive implying a futurity, corresponds with the future of the indicative, 251.

For; this conjunction generally governs the perfect of the infinitive, 253.

Gender; only two in French 21. The gender of inanimate objects may be known by their termination, 22.

Genitive case; What is meant by it, 32. When formed in English with 's, how translated, 15. Of the article definite, 6. After reflected verbs, 113.

Ger; Verbs of that termination are irregular in some of their tenses with respect to their orthography, 76.

Gerund; when indeclinable, 206. When declined, *ibid*; preceded by the word *by*, *ibid*. At the head of an incidental sentence, *ibid*. When it must be translated by a tense of the indicative, 207.

Government; of passive verb, 107. Of reflected verbs, 113. Of active verbs, 208. Of neuter verbs (which cannot be an accusative, 173) 126. Of the verb *jouer*, 127. Of the impersonal *il y a* before a participle, 131. A noun of number requires *de* before the next participle, *ibid*. *Falloir* governs no preposition before the next verb, 134. Of prepositions, 214, 217. Of adverbs of quantity, 229. Observations on the government of some verbs, 174.—of some adjectives, 274.—of some adverbs 235. Of conjunctions, 248, 250, 252.

H

Haïr; orthography and pronunciation of that verb, 151.

House; to my house, to his

house, to her house, &c. these expressions are translated by *chez moi, chez lui, chez elle, &c.* 216.

I

Ier; verbs of that termination have an irregularity in their orthography, 135.

If; when that conjunction (*si*) governs the subjunctive in French, 258.

Ignorer; peculiarities concerning that verb, 258.

Il, ils; personal conjunctive pronouns of the third person masculine—its place in the sentence affirmative, 163. In interrogations it follows the verb, 96—and after a few verbs, 280. When this pronoun singular is to be preceded by *-t-*, 96. *Il* when changed into *ce*, 185. In impersonal verbs this pronoun has no relation to a substantive, 128.

Il y a; verb impersonal conjugated, 130. Governs *de* before the next participle, 131.

Il est, il était; followed by an adjective requires *de* before an infinitive, 131.

Il convient, il appartient; followed by an adjective requires *de* before an infinitive, 131.

s'Imaginer; does not govern either *de* or *à*, 179.

Imperfect tense; its signification as a tense of the indicative, 51. How formed from the gerund, 67. Corresponds with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, 251.

Imperative; what it expresses, 47. Has only one tense, 48. When used affirmatively what is the place of the pronoun

it governs, 165. When used negatively, *ibid.* When two imperatives are joined by a conjunction what the places of the pronouns are, 166. No elision of the pronouns *le* or *la* takes place after an imperative before a vowel, 167. Verbs of the first conjugation add an *s* to the second person singular of the imperative, before *y*, 180.

Impersonal verbs; why so called, 45. Their nominative *il* cannot be supplied by a substantive, 128. List of the impersonal verbs, 128. Many personal verbs may become impersonal, *ibid.* Conjugation of *pleuvoir*, 129,—*il y a*, 130,—*falloir*, 132,—*valoir mieux*, 132,—*suffire*, 133. Observation on *falloir*, *ibid.* *Etre* is sometimes impersonal, 129. *Faire* supplies the place of *être* with adjectives denoting the disposition of the weather, 129. Participles of impersonal verbs are indeclinable, 210.

In; before an English gerund this preposition is translated by *à* with an infinitive, 164. After a superlative how translated, 245.

Incidental sentences; When an incidental sentence begins with a substantive no article precedes it, 272.

Indefinite article; How rendered into French, 11. When translated by the definite in French, 247.

Indeterminate pronouns, 191. Why so called; *ibid.* How divided, *ibid.* Some are never joined to a noun, *ibid.* Some are always joined to a substantive,

195. Some are sometimes joined to a noun and sometimes not 196. Some are always followed by *que*, 200. Of the indeterminate pronoun *on*, 203.

Indicative mood; what it expresses, 46. Why are verbs interrogative only used in the indicative, *ibid.* Tenses of the indicative, 48. Correspondence of these tenses with those of the subjunctive, 251. Conjunctions which govern that mood, 248. In what case must the indicative be preferred to the subjunctive after an interrogation, 255.

Infinitive mood; What that mood expresses, 46. Its tenses, 47. Its four terminations *er*, *ir*, *avoir*, or *re*, form the four different conjugations of all French verbs, 6—84, and 140—160. Takes the preposition *de* before it when preceded by an impersonal verb, or *il est*, *il était*, and an adjective, 131. Is preceded by *de* when used after *c'est*, *c'était*, &c. and a noun, *ibid.* Governed by some conjunctions, 252. The infinitive is sometimes elegantly used for the subjunctive, 258. Of reflected verbs. What pronouns they take before them when governed by a preceding verb, 108.

Infinité; what number the verb takes after that collective partitive, 280.

Interjection; what is meant by that part of speech, 261. Place of the interjection, *ibid.*

Interrogation; how formed, 95. Model of a verb used interrogatively, 96. How are

reflected verbs made interrogative? 121. Verbs both interrogative and negative, 100. Reflected verbs interrogative with a negation, 122. Of interrogative pronouns, 184. How declined, *ibid.* Verbs which require the interrogative form, 280. Conjunctions after which the interrogative form may be elegantly used, 277. *Est-ce que*, when used to ask questions, 96. When preferable to the usual form of interrogation, *ibid.* When is *n'est-ce pas que* used? 100. -

Irregular verbs; alphabetical list of them, 140.

It; as a personal pronoun, how expressed, 163.

It is, *it was*, &c.; how expressed when followed by a substantive plural in the nominative, 131.

Its; pronoun possessive, how expressed before a noun, 35. When relating to a noun, 38. When is it expressed by *en*? 277. When is it translated by *y*? *ibid.*

J.

Jouer; government of that verb, 127.

L.

La; article definite, feminine singular, in the nominative or accusative case, 6. Loses the *a* before a vowel, *ibid.* Pronoun personal, accusative case, feminine, 163. Loses the *a* before a vowel, except after an imperative, 167. Its place, 163, 176. With an imperative, 165, 166.

Le; article definite, masculine singular, nominative or accusative case, 6. Loses the *e* before a vowel, except before a few words, *ibid.* Remains undeclined before a superlative when there is no comparison implied, 245. Pronoun personal, accusative masculine singular, 163. Its place, 163, 176. With an imperative, 165, 166. A supplying pronoun—when undeclined, 173. When declinable, 174.

Les; article definite, plural of both genders, nominative or accusative case, 6. Pronoun personal, accusative plural of both genders, 163. Its place, 163, 176. With an imperative, 165, 166.

Lequel, laquelle, &c. relative pronoun, when preferred to *qui*, 182. Interrogative pronoun, used when a comparison is implied, 185.

The less, the more; how translated, 247.

Let; when translated by *laisser* and an infinitive, 167.

Leur; a pronoun possessive, 35. When relating to a noun, 38. Pronoun personal, 163. Its place, 163, 170, 176. With an imperative, 165.

L'on; pronoun indeterminate, when preferred to *on*, 204.

Lui; pronoun personal, 163, 168. Its place, 163, 170, 176. With an imperative, 165.

L'un l'autre; pronoun indeterminate, declined, 197. The verb on which it depends is reciprocal, 197. When supplied by *entre*, 124.

L'un et l'autre declined, 197.
Is the verb to be in the singular or plural, *ibid.*

L'un ou l'autre declined, 198.
The following verb must be singular, *ibid.*

M.

Ma, ta, sa ; pronouns possessive, conjunctive feminine singular. When supplied by *mon, ton, son*, 35.

Mademoiselle ; used when addressing an English young lady, but not used when speaking of her, 59. Now used before the names of actresses instead of *le*, 266.

Mais ; when the last of several substantives in the nominative is preceded by *mais*, the verb agrees with that substantive, 280.

Many ; indeterminate pronoun, how translated, 196.

Me ; personal conjunctive pronoun, dative or accusative case, first person singular, 163. Its place in the sentence, *ibid.* Loses the *e* before a vowel, 164. Changed into *moi* after an imperative affirmative, 165, except before *en*, 179.

Meilleur ; comparative of *bon*, 241, differs from *mieux*, comparative of *bien*, 242.

Même ; pronoun indeterminate, 202. Declinable before a noun, *ibid.* When it refers to a preceding noun, 203.

Ment ; adverbs of that termination are generally formed from adjectives of quality and manner, 232.

Mille ; when it should be spelled *mil*, 225.

Mine, thine, &c. ; when relating to a preceding noun, 38. When used in the sense of *to belong*, how translated, 277.

Miss ; not always translated by *Mademoiselle*, 59.

Moins, le moins, le plus ; when repeated, 245.

Mon, ton, son ; when used instead of *ma, ta, sa*, 35.

Monosyllable ; what it is, 1. Monosyllables forming words in *ant*, or *ent*, do not lose the *t* in the plural, 19.

Moods in verbs ; what is meant by it, 46. How many, *ibid.*

More ; how translated when joined to a noun, 231. When it modifies a verb or relates to an antecedent, *ibid.* *The more, the less*, how rendered, 247.

Must ; when rendered by *falloir*, 191. Its construction in French, *ibid.*

My, thy, &c. ; how rendered before a noun, 35.

My own, thy own, &c. ; how translated when they supply the possessive relative, *mine, thine, &c.* 40.

N

Names ; names of countries, provinces, &c. take the article definite in French, 266. They sometimes reject the article, *ibid.*

Names (proper) ; the article definite is used before the proper names of some Italian poets and painters, 266. See *Proper*.

Ne; when used with *pas* or *point*, in negative sentences, 89. Without *pas* or *point*, *ibid.* May be elegantly used without *pas* or *point*, with the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, 261. Its place with verbs used interrogatively and negatively, 100. When used before the second verb of a comparison, 240. When suppressed, 243. Used after some conjunctions, 252. After the verbs *empêcher*, *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, when is *ne* used? 256: when is it suppressed? *ibid.* When is *ne* followed by *pas*, or when is *ne* sufficient with a verb in the subjunctive, *ibid.* When is *ne* used after *douter*, *désespérer*, *nier*, *disconvenir*, 257.

Ne pas; see *Ne* and *Negative phrases*.

Ne plus; followed by *de* before a noun, 94.

Negative phrases; how formed, 89. Place of the two negatives, *ibid.* *Ne pas* or *ne point*, are not separated with an infinitive, 90; separated or not with a verb in the perfect of the infinitive, *ibid.* Models of verbs conjugated negatively, 90; negatively and interrogatively, 100. Reflected verbs used with a negation, 118; interrogatively and with a negation, 122.

Neither, nor; the verb must be preceded by *ne*, 249.

N'est ce pas que; when used 100.

Neuter verb; definition of, 44. Its different kinds, *ibid.* Some reflected verbs are neuter

45. Cannot govern an accusative case, and why, 124. Some neuter in one sense and active in another, *ibid.* Generally conjugated with *avoir*, 125. Some conjugated with *être*, *ibid.* Some conjugated with *avoir* or *être*, *ibid.* When conjugated with *être*, the participle is declinable, 125, 210. Government of neuter verbs, 126, 127.

Never; used as a negative, 89.

Ni; when several verbs are joined by *ni*, what is the construction, 279. In enumeration of the substantive, when is *ni* to be repeated? 271. The noun that follows *ni* takes no article, 249.

Ni l'un ni l'autre; declined, 198. Is the verb that follows this pronoun to be singular or plural? *ibid.*

Nier; when followed by *ne*? 257.

Nobody; how translated as a negative expression, and its place 89: as an indeterminate noun, 192.

Nominative case; what it is, 4. Its place, *ibid.* How to distinguish it from other cases, *ibid.* Of a noun with the article definite, 6. The nominative of a verb either a noun or a pronoun, 44. Two or more nominatives require the verb to be plural, 56; except in cases explained page 280. When the nominative is a substantive the pronoun is omitted, *ibid.* The nominative pronoun, its place in interrogative sentences 95, 185. When the nominative is a noun its place in the sen-

tence, which is interrogative, 96, 185. When several nominatives of different persons govern a verb, 279. When several nominatives are joined by *ni* (neither), what is the construction, *ibid.* When several nominatives are summed up by *tout* or when the last is preceded by *mais*, in what number must the verb be, 280. When a collective, general, or partitive is nominative to a verb, what is the agreement, *ibid.*

No more; used as a negation, 89.

Nor; requires *ne* before the verb, 249.

Not any, not anyone, not one; how translated, 196.

Nothing; how translated, as a negative expression, 89; as an indeterminate pronoun, 192.

Notre, Votre, &c. possessive conjunctive pronouns, 35. How declined, 36.

Le nôtre &c.; relative possessive pronouns, 38. How declined, 39.

Noun; definition of the, 2. How to distinguish it from another part of speech, *ibid.* Noun common, *ibid.*; how divided, *ibid.* Proper, *ibid.* Collective nouns, 3; how divided, *ibid.* How to frenchify many English Nouns, 16. Proper names of persons or nations, *ibid.* Compound nouns how to translate them into French, 19. Formation of the plural nouns, (adjective and substantive) 19. Nouns ending in *s, x, z*, *ibid.*; nouns ending in *ant, ent*, *ibid.*; nouns ending in *au, eu, ou, on*,

20: Nouns in *al, ail, ibid.* a few irregular nouns in the formation of their plural, *ibid.* Some nouns have no plural other no singular in use, 23., Formation of the plural of compound nouns, 24. Nouns ending in *teur* have a feminine termination, 32. An English noun qualifying another noun, with which it forms as a compound word. How translated, 269. A noun in the vocative has no article, 271. A noun qualifying another noun is preceded by *de*, *ibid.* A noun which characterises another noun takes no article, 272. At the beginning of an incidental sentence, the noun takes no article, *ibid.* Nouns repeated in a sentence with a preposition, do not take the article, *ibid.* A noun forming but one idea with a verb, has no article before it, *ibid.* When several nouns are nominatives to a verb, that verb agrees with the last if preceded by *mais*, or if they are all summed up by *tout, rien, &c.* 280. Nouns of number require *de* before a participle, 131. Indeclinable, except *quatre-vingt*, and *cent*, 225. Nouns of dignities, title, &c. receive the article in French, 266. Noun collective, general, and partitive, their government of verbs, 280. *Nous*; pronoun personal conjunctive. Its place, 163, 164. As a pronoun personal disjunctive, 167.

Nouvelle; substantive, observation on this word, 99.

Nu; adjective, indeclinable

before a noun, 274.

Number ; how many, and what is meant by it, 3 : in verbs, 48. Nouns of number indeclinable, except *quatre-vingt* and *cent*, before a substantive, 225. Observation on the orthography of the word *mille*, *ibid.*

Se nuire ; its participle is indeclinable, 209.

Nul ; used as a negation, 89. Indeterminate pronoun takes *ne* before the verb, 196 ; differs from *aucun*, *ibid.*

Nulle part ; requires *ne* before the preceding verb, 228.

O.

Of ; (a preposition) the sign of the genitive case, 8. How translated when followed by the article definite, *ibid.* Cannot be omitted in French, 15.

On ; a pronoun indeterminate, which may be translated many different ways, 203. Governs its verb in the singular, *ibid.* Serves to turn the English passive into the active voice in French, 204. It may have a feminine adjective after it, when it evidently refers to a woman, *ibid.* *On* is repeated before every verb, *ibid.* *L'on* is sometimes used for *on* ; when that alteration takes place, 204.

One another ; how rendered into French, 197.

Onze, onzième ; the elision of the *e* or *a* of the article definite does not take place before these words, 6.

Oser ; after that verb the second negation, *pas, point*, may be understood, 261.

Others, our neighbours ; pronoun indeterminate ; how translated, 191.

Ou ; a conjunction, when it joins two nominatives singular, the verb is generally in the singular, 280. *Où*, pronoun, may be indifferently used for *lequel*, 183.

Oui ; this adverb, when used substantively, does not require the elision of the *a* or *e* in the article definite, *le, la*.

Ouir ; observations on that defective verb, 158.

Our ; pronoun possessive conjunctive, how rendered, 35. Declined, 36.

Ours ; pronoun possessive relative, how translated, 38. Declined, 39.

Our neighbours, others ; an indeterminate pronoun, how rendered, 191.

Own, my own, thy own, &c. ; are expressed as *mine, thine, &c.* 40.

Oyer ; verbs ending in *oyer* have an irregularity in their orthography, 136.

P.

Pâître ; a defective verb : the tenses wanting may be supplied by *manger* and *nourrir*.

Par ; when *par* is to be preferred to *de*, as the government of passive verbs 107. Preposition governing the accusative, 215.

Paradigm showing the similarity of verbs in their final syllables, 140.

Se parler; its participle is invariable, 209.

Parsing; method of parsing an article and a noun, 7: an adjective, 27: a pronoun, 37: a verb, 59: a preposition, 216: an adverb, 255: a conjunction, 250.

Participle; primitive termination of a verb, which serves to form the compound tenses, 67. When employed without an auxiliary the participle is declined, 210. Participles of active verbs, 208. When declined, 208—213. When undeclined, 208—212. Participles of passive verbs agree with the nominative to the verb, 104, 209; when it refers to the pronoun *vous*, masculine singular, the participle remains undeclined, 110. Participle of neuter verbs conjugated with *être* are declinable, 125, 210. Participles of reflected verbs, when declined, 108, 209; when undeclined, 110, 209; participles of neuter reflected verbs remain invariable, 209. The participle of an impersonal verb remains undeclined, 210. A list of participles which are invariable, 212. The participle is preceded by *de* after the impersonal verb *il y a*, 131; likewise after a noun of number, *ibid.* A participle followed by *with* in English is generally followed by *de* in French, 211.

Parts of Speech; what they are, 2.

Pas; that negative is preceded by *ne*, 89. Its place with respect to the verb, *ibid.*; differs

from *point*, 90: when preferred to *point*, *ibid.* May be omitted after some verbs, 261.

Passer; observation on the conjugation of that verb, 125.

Passive verbs; definition, 44. How formed, 104. Its participle agrees in gender and number with the nominative, *ibid.* Conjugation of a passive verb, *ibid.*: its government, 107. When is *de* preferred to *par* after a passive verb, *ibid.*

Payer; this verb is irregular in its orthography: conjugated as a model of verbs in *ayer*, 136.

Pendant; this preposition differs from *durant*, 216.

Perfect tenses; *perfect definite*, its import, 51: one of the primitive terminations, 67: Serves to form the imperfect subjunctive, 71: *Perfect indefinite*, when used, 52: how formed, *ibid.* *Perfect anterior*, definition of, 52. How formed, *ibid.* In what that tense differs from the pluperfect, 53. Generally used after a conjunction, 52. Not used in verbs conjugated interrogatively, or interrogatively with a negation, 98: *Perfect subjunctive*, how formed, 71: when used, 251.

People; how translated, 203.

Perir; takes both auxiliaries, 125: difference between *il a péri* and *il est péri*, *ibid.*

Person; in verbs, said of animate and inanimate objects, 44. They take the number, 48. There are three persons, *ibid.*: the first person, *ibid.*: the second person, 49. The second per-

son plural is used for the singular through politeness, *ibid.* Observation on the use of the adjective, when the second person plural is used for the second person singular, 64. Third person, 49. Sometimes used in addressing persons, and why, *ibid.*

Personal pronouns; how divided, 163. Personal conjunctive pronouns declined, *ibid.* Their place with respect to the verb, *ibid.* with an imperative affirmative, 165: with two imperatives joined by *and*, or, 166: with respect to each other, 175: with respect to each other with verbs in the imperative affirmative, 179: with reflected verbs, *ibid.* when supplied in French by the article definite, 277. *Personal disjunctive pronouns*, 167: declined, *ibid.* used when governed by reflected verbs, 168: after a few other verbs, *ibid.* in answer to questions, 169: in elliptical sentences, when no verb is expressed, *ibid.* The adjective *seul* is usually preceded by a disjunctive personal pronoun, *ibid.* After a pronoun of the first or second person in the accusative, if a pronoun is used in the dative, that pronoun is a disjunctive, 170. When they denote opposition, *ibid.*; order, 172: after prepositions, *ibid.* when compounded with *même*, 170: after reflected verbs which govern a preposition, *ibid.* *personal pronoun*, *soi*, declined, 172: when used, *ibid.*

Personne; a pronoun inde-

terminate, 192. When used with a negative, *ibid.* In interrogative or dubitative sentences, 192. This pronoun requires *de* before an adjective or participle, 194.

Peut-être; with this word the verb may take the interrogative form, 277.

Se plaire; the participle of that verb is invariable, 309.

Plevoir; conjugation of that impersonal verb, 129.

Ployer; this verb is irregular in its orthography, 136.

Pluperfect of the indicative, Its function, 52; differs from the perfect anterior, 53; how formed, 68; *pluperfect* of the subjunctive, when used, 251

Plural; what is meant by it, 3. Formation of the plural of nouns, substantives, and adjectives, 19—24. Generally formed by adding an *s* to the singular, 19; of nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, *ibid.*; of nouns ending in *ant*, *ent*, *ibid.*; of nouns in *au*, *eu*, *œu*, *ou*, with their irregularities, 20; of nouns in *al*, *ail*, and a few irregulars, 23; of compound nouns, 24; a few words have no singular, others have no plural in use, 23. Some adjectives ending in *al* have no masculine in use, 35. Plural in verbs, 48. When a verb is to be used in the plural, 56. Is the verb to be singular or plural with the pronoun *l'un l'autre*? 197. With *l'un et l'autre*, what is the general practice of good authors, 197. With *ni l'un ni l'autre*, 198. Of the plural of participles, 104. Num-

ber of the verb with collective nouns, 280.

Plus de ; differs from *davantage*, 231.

Le plus, le moins ; when to be repeated, 245.

Plusieurs ; an indeterminate pronoun, 196.

Point ; differs from *pas*, 90. When preferable to *pas*, *ibid.*

Polysyllable ; what is meant by it, 9.

Positive sense in adjective, what is meant by it, 237.

Possessive Pronouns ; 34. *possessive conjunctive pronouns*,

35. Agree in French with the thing possessed, *ibid* ; declined

36. When the English possessive pronouns are to be translated by the personal pronouns in French, 277 ; when by the supplying pronoun *en*, *ibid.*

Possessive relative pronouns, 38. Declined, 39. When used after a tense of the verb *to be*, how translated into French, 277

Poursuivre ; this verb sometimes requires to be followed by its nominative, 280.

Pouvoir ; the second negation may be omitted with that verb, 261. Is *je peux* or *je puis*, used indiscriminately, 154. *Je ne puis* synonymous with *je ne saurais*, 157.

Prepositions ; serve to form the cases of nouns, 4 ; definition of, 214. Chief prepositions governing the accusative case, *ibid* ; the genitive case, 217 ; the dative case, *ibid.* Prepositions after which the governed word may be left un-
'hood, 214. What preposi-

tions are repeated, 218. When repeated in comparative sentences, 247. Observations on several prepositions, 216.

Près and *auprès* ; their difference, 218.

Present ; a tense of the infinitive and the root of the verb, 47. A tense of the indicative, 48 ; of the subjunctive, *ibid.* Definition of, 51. Serves to form other tenses of the verb 67. Correspondence between the present of the subjunctive and the tenses of the indicative, 251.

Prier ; this verb is irregular in its orthography, 135.

Pronouns ; their different kinds, 34. Pronouns conjunctive possessive, 35. Possessive relative pronouns, 38. Demonstrative pronouns, 41. Demonstrative disjunctive pronouns, 187. Personal conjunctive pronouns, 163. Personal disjunctive pronoun, 167. supplying pronouns, 172. Relative pronouns, 181. Pronouns interrogative, 184. Pronouns indeterminate, 191. (*See these several words in their alphabetical order.*)

Pronominal Verbs, 45. See Reflected verbs, *ibid.*

Proper names ; definition of, 2 How declined, 14. How to frenchify many proper names of persons and nations, 16. Christian English proper names, not always translated into French, 59. Proper names preceded by a noun of dignity require the article definite, 266. Though applied to several do not take

the sign of the plural, 270. When they must both take the sign of the plural, and the article plural, *ibid.* When used to denote an individual distinction, *ibid.* Proper names of Italian Poets and Painters, sometimes will have the article sometimes not, *ibid.* Proper names of actresses and dancers are sometimes preceded by the article *la*, *ibid.*

Puisque; elegantly supplied by *que*, 251. Differs from *depuis que*, 248.

Q.

Quand, conjunction; elegantly supplied by *que* after *et*, 251.

Quantity (adverbs of), 229—see *Adverb*.

Que; accusative case of the relative pronoun *qui*, 181. Accusative case of the interrogative pronoun *qu'est-ce qui*, 184. When a question is asked by *que*, 185; by *qu'est-ce que*, *ibid.* *Que* joins the two members of a comparison, 237. *Que* is elegantly used instead of repeating some conjunctions, 251. *Que*, when followed by the indicative, 254; by the subjunctive, 255. Requires the subjunctive, after a negation or interrogation, *ibid.*; except when no doubt is expressed by the interrogation, *ibid.*

Que governs the subjunctive after the conjunctions *if*, *whether*, 258; after some verbs, *ibid.*; after some impersonal verbs, 256; after the verb *to be* and a substantive used adjectively,

ibid.; after some verbs with *ne* before them, in affirmative sentences, and without *ne* in negative and interrogative phrases, *ibid.* *Que* beginning the sentence requires the subjunctive, 258. *Que de* (than) in comparative of superiority is used before an infinitive, 240. *Que ne* (than) in comparative of superiority is used before any tense of the indicative, *ibid.* *Que*, is used before the second verb of a comparison of equality, with an adverb or a conjunction, *ibid.*

Quel; an interrogative pronoun. How declined, 185.

Quelconque; how rendered, 195.

Quelque; an indeterminate pronoun; how translated, 195.

Quel que agrees with the noun to which it relates, 201; undeclined when united with an adjective, *ibid.*

Quelque . . . que; an indeterminate pronoun, 201.

Quelqu'un; how translated into English, 192; takes the gender and number, *ibid.*

Quelque chose que . . .; an indeterminate pronoun, 200.

Quérir; observation on that verb, 155, 162.

Qui; a relative pronoun, 181. How declined, *ibid.*; relates to persons and things, *ibid.*; but *lequel*, &c. is used to avoid an ambiguity, 182.

De qui and *à qui* relate exclusively to persons, 181. Place of *qui* as a relative pronoun, 183. *Qui*, an interrogative pronoun, declined, 18

Only refers to pronouns, *ibid.* *Qui est-ce qui*, or *qui est-ce que*, seldom used but to express surprise, *ibid.* When must the verb that follows *qui* be in the subjunctive? 259. When it comes after a superlative, the verb is in the subjunctive, *ibid.* In exclamative sentences, what is the construction after *qui* preceded by *quel est*, 260.

Quiconque; only said of persons, 193.

Qui que; pronoun indeterminate, 200.

Qui que ce soit; generally used with a negation, 200; oftener supplied by *personne*, *ibid.* Its different cases, 201.

De Quoi, à quoi; often used for *duquel, auquel*, 183.

Quoique; a conjunction elegantly supplied by *que* after *et*, 251.

Quoi que; indeterminate pronoun, 200.

Quoi que ce soit; when used, 200. As a negative it is oftener supplied by *rien*, *ibid.* Declined, 201.

R.

Radical letters in a verb, what they are, 72. Invariable throughout the conjugation, *ibid.*

Re; model of verbs of that conjugation, *Rendre*, 84.

Reading, translating, and parsing lessons; on the nominative and accusative cases of the article definite, 7; on the genitive and ablative cases of the article definite, 9; on the dative case of the article definite, 11; on the article indefinite, 12; on the partitive arti-

cle, 14; on proper names, 15; on the plural of nouns, 20, 21, 23. On the formation of the feminine of adjectives, 27, 29, 31, 32. On the possessive conjunctive pronouns, 37; on possessive relative pronouns, 40; on the demonstrative conjunctive pronouns, 42; on negation, 95; on interrogation, 99; on interrogation with a negation 103; on the passive verbs, 107; on reflected verbs 117, 120, 122, 124; on neuter verbs, 127; on the impersonal verbs, 131, 134; on personal conjunctive pronouns, 165, 167; on the personal disjunctive pronouns, 169, 172; on supplying pronouns, 175; on the place of pronouns with an imperative, 180; on relative pronouns, 183; on interrogative pronouns, 187; on the demonstrative disjunctive pronouns, 190; on the indeterminate pronouns, 194, 196, 199, 203; on the pronoun *on*, 205; on the gerund, 208; on the participle, 211, 214; on prepositions, 216, 218; on adverbs of time, 225; of place and order, 228; of quantity, 231; of quality and manner, 234; of affirmation, negation, interrogation, and comparison, 236. On the comparative of equality, 238; of superiority, 240; of inferiority, 243. On the superlative, 245. On conjunctions governing the indicative, 250; governing the subjunctive, 252; governing the infinitive, 254. On the government of the conjunction *que*, 258.

Reciprocal verbs; definition of, 45. How conjugated, 124.

Reflected verbs; definition of, 45. Differ in their conjugation from other verbs, 108. When governed in the infinitive by a preceding verb, *ibid.*; form their compound tenses with *être*, *ibid.*; model of their conjugation, 109; generally followed by *de*, 113. Some govern a dative case, *ibid.*; some take *de* or *à*, but to express a different sense, *ibid.*; some have no government after them, 179; their participles agree in gender and number with the nominative to the verb, 108, (see *Participle* for the exceptions). A list of those verbs which are reflected in French and not in English, 114. What sort of verbs may become reflected in French, 117. A reflected verb conjugated negatively, 118; interrogatively, 121; interrogatively with a negation, 123.

Relative pronouns; see *Pronouns*.

Renvoyer; irregular in its orthography, 136.

Repartir; observation on the conjugation of that verb, 156. This verb in some particular instance requires its nominative pronoun after it, 280.

Repetition of the article; before a noun that follows a superlative, 244; before adjectives expressing opposite qualities, 274; repeated or not before adjectives expressing different qualities without being opposite, *ibid.* In enumeration of substantives, the repetition is

often elegant, 271. *Of the Adverb*; adverbs of comparison are repeated before every adjective or adverb compared, 242; When is that repetition unnecessary, *ibid.* *Of Prepositions*; what are those usually repeated? 218. *Of Conjunctions*; the repetition of conjunctions is often elegantly avoided by *que*, 251. The pronoun *on* is repeated before every verb to which it is nominative, 240.

Répliquer; this verb sometimes requires to be followed by its nominative pronoun, 280.

Répondre; in some particular instances this verb takes the interrogative form, though used affirmatively, 280.

Résoudre; observation on its participle, 156.

Rester; when we must say *est resté*, 125.

Rien; when used with the negative *ne*, 193. In sentences expressing doubt, *ibid.* *Rien* requires *de* before an adjective or participle, 194. When several substantives are summed up by *rien*, the verb agrees with the last, 280.

S

Se rire; its participle is invariable, 209.

Saillir; its conjugation, 157.

Sans; used indeterminately, takes no article before the next noun, 272.

Savoir; observation on the conditional of that verb when used with a negation, 157.

Self; how translated, 170.

Selon; preposition, differs from *suiwant*, 216.

Seoir ; remarks on the conjugation of that verb, 257. *Aller bien, convenir* may supply it in the sense of *to become, to fit well*. When it means to be situated, its participle *sus* is better supplied by *être situé*, *ib.*

Seul when preceded by a disjunctive personal pronoun, 169.

Several ; how translated into French, 196.

Should ; when expressing duty, how translated, 89.

Si ; may this conjugation be used for *aussi* in some comparative sentences ? 242. It is elegantly supplied by *que*, 252. In the sense of *if, whether*, and preceded by *que*, it requires the subjunctive, 258.

Singular ; substantives which have no singular, 23. Adjectives which have only the masculine singular in use, 34. The verb must remain singular after *on*, 204. After a collective general the verb is singular, 230. after some collective partitives, *ibid.* ; after several substantives the last of which is preceded by *mais, même, en un mot*, or when they are summed up by *tout, rien* ; *ibid.*

Soi ; pronoun personal, 171 ; relates to an antecedent masculine. *ibid.*

Some ; as a partitive article, it is always expressed in French 13.

Somebody ; how translated, 192

Something ; How translated, 193

Son, sa ; pronoun possessive conjunctive, which must agree

with the following substantive, 35.

Se sourire ; its participle is invariable, 203.

Soustraire ; this irregular and defective verb is often supplied by *ôter*, 158.

Subjunctive ; of that mood, 47. Its tenses, 48 ; governed by some conjunctions, 250. The tenses of the principal proposition regulate the use of those of the subjunctive, 251. When the subjunctive is used after *que*, 255. Some verbs require the subjunctive after them 255, 256.—after the relative *qui*, 259.—after some indeterminate pronouns, *ibid.*—after a superlative, *ibid.* In exclamative sentences when is the subjunctive or indicative indifferently used ? 260.

Substantive ; see *noun*.

Se succéder ; the participle of that verb is invariable, 209.

Suffire ; as an impersonal, conjugated, 133,—as a personal verb, 158.

Suis ; with passive verbs *je suis* and a participle denotes a present ;—with neuter verbs a perfect indefinite, 127.

Suivant ; a preposition which differs from *selon*, 216.

Superlative ; what is meant by, 243. How many sorts, *ibid.* How the superlative absolute is formed, *ibid.* How the superlative relative is formed, 244—often formed in English by the addition of *est* or *st* to the adjective, *ibid.* When the superlative relative precedes its substantive in French, what is

the construction, *ibid.* When it follows its noun, *ibid.* After a superlative, how is the word translated into French? 245. When the superlative relative does not imply comparison, is the article definite declinable, 245. In what case is the subjunctive used after a superlative, 259.

Supplying pronouns, en, y, 172; their places with a verb in the indicative, 173; after an imperative, *ibid.* Use of the supplying pronoun *le*, *ibid.*

Surseoir, this verb may be supplied by *suspendre, remettre, différer*, 158.

Syllable; what it consists of, 1.

T.

T; the euphonic letter *t*, placed between two hyphens, thus (-t-) is used in some particular cases to prevent the meeting of two vowels, 96.

Ta; when is this pronoun supplied by *ton*, 35.

Tantôt is repeated when alternate; its place, 225.

Than; how expressed in comparisons, 237. When it serves to join two verbs together in comparisons of superiority, how translated, 240. When it is rendered by *qu'à* before a verb in the second member of a comparison, 247.

That; as a relative pronoun, how translated, 181. As a demonstrative conjunctive or disjunctive pronoun, (see *This*.) As a conjunction, and in the sense of *in order that*, it go-

vern the subjunctive, 250. Often understood in English when it serves to join a principal to a subordinate proposition, 254, and following pages. Must be expressed in French, *ibid.*

Te; a personal pronoun, 163. Its place in the sentence, *ibid.* With other pronouns, 176. Loses the *e* before a vowel, 164. Is changed into *toi*, after a verb in the imperative affirmative, 165; except before *en*, 179. *T'en* is generally avoided at the end of a sentence, 180.

Tenses; definition of tenses, 47. Tenses of the infinitive, *ibid.*; of the indicative, *ibid.*; of the imperative, *ibid.*; of the subjunctive, *ibid.* Idiomatical tenses, 48. Use of the tenses, (See the words *present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, future, and conditional*). Formation of the tenses, 57 to 71. Irregular in verbs in *avoir*, 81. Tenses of the subjunctive when used, 251.

The; how translated into French, 6. (See *Article definite*.)

Their; a possessive pronoun, how translated, 35, 36. When expressed by *en*, 277.

Theirs; a relative possessive pronoun, 38, 39.

There; followed by the verb *to be*, forms an impersonal verb rendered by *il y a*, 186.

These, those; plural of *this*. (See the following word.)

This, that, these, those; demonstrative pronouns, used before a noun, how translated, 41. As disjunctive pronouns,

187. When expressed by *celui-ci, celle-ci, &c. ibid*; by *ceci, cela*, 188; by *celui, celle, &c. ibid*. When followed by *qui, ibid*.

To; sign of the dative case, 9. Before an infinitive when expressed by *pour*, 164; when expressed by *à, ibid*; when translated by *de*, 166.

To the; how translated, 9.

Toi; a personal pronoun, used for *te*, 166. A disjunctive personal pronoun, 168. (See *Personal Pronouns*.)

Tout; its plural, 22.

Tout . . . que; an indeterminate pronoun, 201.

Tout ce qui, tout ce que, a pronoun indeterminate, 201.

Traire; an irregular and defective verb, which may be supplied by *tirer*, 159.

Tu; a pronoun personal, second person singular, nominative case, 163. Often supplied by *vous*, through politeness, 49, but then the adjective remains singular, 64.

Trisyllables; what is meant by it, 1.

U.

Uer; verbs of that termination are irregular in their orthography, 136.

Un, une; article indefinite, 10. How declined, 11.

Uyer; the verbs in *uyer* are irregular in their orthography, 136.

V.

Va; second person singular of the imperative of the verb *aller*, 141. Is it always writ-

ten *vas* when followed by *y*?

142. If another verb follows *y, va* does not take the *s. ibid*.

Vaincre; observations on that verb, 159.

Vainement; with this adverb, the verb may take the interrogative form, 277.

Valoir mieux; impersonal verb, conjugated, 132.

Variable letters of a Verb; what is meant by, 72.

Venir; this neuter verb takes the auxiliary *être* in its compound tenses, 125.

Verb; one of the parts of speech, 2: its definition, 44: different kinds of verbs, *ibid*: of *moods, tenses, persons, and number*, in verbs, 46, 47. (See these words.) What is meant by conjugation, 46. Of verbs *active, passive, neuter, reflected, reciprocal, and impersonal*. (See these words.) Regular verbs conjugated, 67—84. Auxiliary verbs conjugated, 50—60. A list of all the irregular verbs, 140. Some verbs are irregular in their orthography only, 135—139. Different manner of conjugating the same verb, 46, 67, 90, 96, 100. A verb agrees with its nominative in person and number, 56. When a verb has several nominatives of different persons, with which does it agree? 279. When does the verb agree with the last of several nominatives? 240. When the nominative is a collective noun, general or partitive, what number must the verb take? 280. How to Frenchify many English verbs,

76. What verbs do not form the interrogation in the first person singular of the present, by placing *je* after them? 96.

What verbs may take the interrogative form after some conjunctions and adverbs, 277.

Which verbs require the interrogative form though used affirmatively, 280. Verbs, which

with a following noun form but one idea, 272. Verbs which require the subjunctive after the conjunction *que*, 255, 256,

257. Verbs which govern an accusative, 208. Neuter verbs governing the dative case, 126.

Passive verbs, their government, 107. Reflected verbs generally govern the preposition *de*, 113. Some govern *à*,

ibid. Some either *à* or *de*, but with a different meaning, *ibid.*

Some are used absolutely, that is, are not followed by any noun or preposition, *ibid.* A

list of verbs which are reflected in French but not in English, 114. Different sorts of English verbs may become reflected in

French, 117.

Vers; a preposition which differs from *envers*, 216.

Vétir; this verb may be better supplied by *habiller*, 160.

Vocative case; when used, 5. The same as the nominative, *ibid.*

Nouns in the vocative take no article, 271.

Voici, voilà; used for *ceci* and *cela*, 188.

Vouloir; observation on that verb, 160.

Vous; pronoun personal, 163; its place, *ibid.* Often used for

tu, through politeness, 49; the adjective must then remain singular, 64. *Vous*, a personal disjunctive pronoun: (see that word.)

Vowel; what is a vowel? 1.

In what does it differ from a consonant, *ibid.*

W.

Want (to); This verb may be rendered by *Falloir*, 133.

What; a relative pronoun, 181. In the sense of *that which*,

188. An interrogative pronoun, 184. Used in the sense of *what thing*, *ibid.*; in the sense of

what sort, how rendered, 185. When before the verb *to be*,

and referring to a substantive, 186. *What* in the sense of *which thing*, how translated, *ibid.*

With reference to the word *something*, or to a whole sentence, *ibid.*; after a preposition,

ibid.; with the verbs *servir* and *importer*, *ibid.*; when used interjectively, *ibid.*

What is it; how translated when it refers to the word *something*, 186.

Whatever, whatsoever; how translated, 200. When they

may be turned by *all...which*, how expressed in French, 201.

Whatever be the....; how translated, 201.

Whether, followed by *que*, governs the subjunctive, 258.

Which; a relative pronoun, how translated, 181; as an interrogative pronoun, 185; expresses a comparison, *ib.*

After a preposition, 186. Whenever a question is made by *which*.

the answer in French is made by *celui qui*, &c., 190.

Who ; a relative pronoun, how declined, 181 ; an interrogative pronoun, declined, 184. Refers to persons only, *ibid.*

Whoever ; how translated in the sense of any person whatever, 193 ; in the sense of *whatever person*, 200.

Whoever it may be ; how rendered into French, 201.

With ; after a participle it is generally rendered by *de*, 211.

Y.

Y ; a supplying pronoun, 172 ; its place, 173 ; after *ne*, 174. Sometimes omitted, 176. Its place with another pronoun, 175, 179. After the imperative of *aller*, 142 ; omitted before the future and conditional of *aller*, as unnecessary, 476 ; likewise omitted before *en* when the sense is sufficiently determined *ibid.*

Yeux ; when is the plural *œils* used instead of *yeux* ? 22.

END OF THE INDEX.



